Content | A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW X5.



Online Edition for Part no. 01405B9DF56 - VI/26

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with the vehicle, the better control you will have on the road.

Read the Owner's Manual before you start driving your new vehicle. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of your vehicle's technical features. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of the vehicle.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B9DF56 - VI/26

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Notes

Information 6

Quick reference

Getting in 16
Set-up and use 19
On the road 22

Controls

Dashboard 30
Cameras and sensors 34
Operating state 44
Display and operating concept 48
Software Updates 85
Personal settings 91
Opening and closing 100
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 135
Driving 151
Light and view 170
Driving assistance 184
Assistance camera views 213
Parking assistance 234
Driving comfort 255
Climate control 260
Interior equipment 279
Storage compartments 288
Cargo area and transport 292
Trailer and rear carrier 299

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B9DF56 - VI/26

Safety

Transporting children safely 306
Airbag system 313
Driving stability control systems 319
Active safety systems 323
Accident safety 345
Breakdown Assistance 351

Mobility

Refueling 358
Saving fuel 360
Wheels and tires 365
Hood 395
Operating fluids 399
Preventive maintenance 407
Replacing components 409
Vehicle care 414

Reference

Technical data 420
Appendix 423
Everything from A to Z 424

© 2026 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English IDCEvo VI/26, -
Printed on chlorine-free bleached and recyclable paper.

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

General information

This Owner's Manual is provided by BMW of North America, LLC (BMW NA), the exclusive distributor of BMW vehicles and parts in the United States, to new BMW motor vehicle purchasers in the United States.

When the term Vehicle manufacturer or a similar reference is used in this Owner's Manual, that term is intended as a reference to BMW NA.

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend reading the Quick Reference Guide in the Owner's Manual.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

Depending on the national-market version, there may be differences between the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual due to updates made after going to print.

Depending on national-market version, information on updates may be provided in the appendix to the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual or in the Safety Booklet.

After a software update in the vehicle

After updating the vehicle software, e.g., via Software Update, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information according to national-market version.

Before setting off, make sure that the Integrated Owner's Manual is available and up-to-date.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from an authorized service center.

Depending on national-market version, these topics are also covered in the Integrated Owner's Manual for your vehicle.

Media at a glance

Principle

The Owner's Manual and information about the vehicle are provided in various ways. Depending on national-market version, the Owner's Manual is provided as follows:

- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Safety booklet.

Depending on availability in the respective country, additional information about the vehicle is provided via the following media:

- Online: driversguide.bmw.com.
- In the app: BMW Driver's Guide.

The current version can be printed out directly, or a printable version of the Owner's Manual can be downloaded.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be shown on the central display.

Functional requirements

The Integrated Owner's Manual is provided depending on national-market version.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. To select the Integrated Owner's Manual, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Owner's Manual".
2. Select the desired method for accessing the contents.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Selecting context help from a menu

1. To bring up the Context Help menu, press and hold the desired menu option.
2. "General help"

Selecting context help from a Check Control message

Directly from the Check Control message on the central display:

"Owner's Manual"

After a software update in the vehicle

After updating the vehicle software, e.g., via Software Update, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information according to national-market version.

Before setting off, make sure that the Integrated Owner's Manual is available and up-to-date.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a Safety Booklet may be provided with the vehicle instead of the printed Owner's Manual. If necessary, the printed Owner's Manual can be obtained from Service.

Safety Booklet

The Safety Booklet contains important general instructions and specific safety information.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a printed Owner's Manual may be provided in the vehicle instead of the Safety Booklet.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

The BMW Driver's Guide website shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific mod-

els. The BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Printable Owner's Manual

The current version can be printed out directly from the following media:

- Online: driversguide.bmw.com.
- In the app: BMW Driver's Guide.

When a software update is offered in the vehicle, the contents of the BMW Driver's Guide app and the BMW Driver's Guide website are also updated.

In addition, a printable version of the Owner's Manual can be downloaded, which reflects the production status of the vehicle.

Supplementary documentation

The media included with the Owner's Manual is supplemented by additional documents, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, brochures, or inserts. Supplementary Owner's Manuals or brochures contain, for example, information on special models or information that must be communicated in printed form due to legal requirements. Inserts may include different information than that given in the media included with the Owner's Manual. Follow all additional documents that may be enclosed with the onboard literature.

Additional sources of information

Authorized service center

An authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center, will be happy to answer any questions you may have.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, e.g., on technology, are available online: www.bmwusa.com.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Manual

Icon	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
♻	Recycling information.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. These steps must be carried out in the order shown.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Bulletpoint lists

Items or actions without strict order or alternative options are shown as a bulletpoint list.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Icons on vehicle parts

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models, i.e., model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates equipment, systems and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example due to the following situations:

- Selected optional equipment.
- National-market version or national-market equipment.
- Options for later release and software update.
- Limited period of use.

This also applies to safety functions and systems.

Before starting a journey, verify whether the described equipment or function is available in the vehicle. For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Information on reactivation or the current status of a user authorization can be found in the ConnectedDrive Store.

A claim for the availability of equipment, a system or a function in the vehicle cannot be derived based on the description in the Owner's Manual.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any equipment and models not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to any supplementary documentation included, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, inserts.

An authorized service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of the vehicle pursues a policy of constant development to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may deviate from those in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

Depending on the national-market version, there may be differences between the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual due to updates made after going to print.

Depending on national-market version, information on updates may be provided in the appendix to the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual or in the Safety Booklet.

After a software update in the vehicle

After updating the vehicle software, e.g., via Software Update, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information according to national-market version.

Before setting off, make sure that the Integrated Owner's Manual is available and up-to-date.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual and Safety Booklet, if applicable.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Preventive maintenance and repair

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The vehicle manufacturer therefore recommends having corresponding work performed by an authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center. If a different repair shop is selected, BMW recommends selecting a workshop that performs corresponding work such as preventive maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Manual, such workshops are referred to as another qualified service center or repair shop.

If work is not carried out properly, for instance preventive maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damages and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can lead to a failure or fault of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety hazard.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from an authorized service center.

BMW parts and accessories were tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California the California law requires vehicle manufacturers provide the following warning:

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State

of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW maintenance system.

  Maintenance, refer to page 407.
- Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain your vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some con-

trol units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance while driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

BMW of North America, LLC collects, uses, discloses, or otherwise processes your personal information in accordance with its privacy policy, which is available at https://my.bmwusa.com/privacypolicy.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other ways to associate data collected from the vehicle with the driver or vehicle owner, e.g., the ConnectedDrive account used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

This includes, for example:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel RPM, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged seat belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself while the vehicle is being operated. Data is not stored beyond the operating time.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:

- Operating states of system components such as fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions on important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data in event or fault memories for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The diagnostic socket required by law in the vehicle is used to read out data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Vehicle fault and event memories can be reset by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop when performing repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

This includes, for example:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle operating elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile devices can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile devices at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance, position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, it will enable data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's web page. You may find out more about BMW of North America, LLC privacy practices on our website, specifically https://my.bmwusa.com/privacypolicy. BMW of North America, LLC may collect, use, disclose, or otherwise process your personal information to provide you with its services. However, you may deactivate optional information collection using your vehicle's Data Privacy menu or completely disable all infor-

mation collection by calling BMW of North America, LLC.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of this component is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period from up to 30 seconds, typically less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record the following data, for example:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Data from the event data recorder are recorded by the vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e. g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the recorded data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read the recorded data, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located in different places on the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Right nameplate



The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate



The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield



The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Vehicle key



Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock the vehicle.
	Lock the vehicle. Pre-conditioning.
	Open the cargo area.
	Pathway lighting. Depending on vehicle equipment: Automatic doors.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting.

Access to vehicle interior

Unlocking with the vehicle key



To unlock the vehicle using the vehicle key, press the unlock button on the vehicle key.

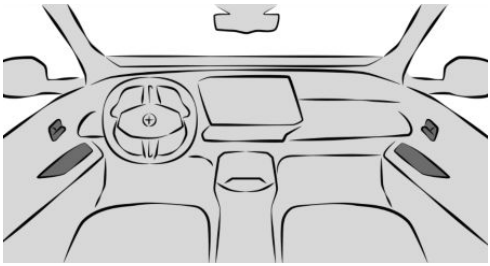
If only the driver's door has been unlocked due to the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Locking with the vehicle key

1. To lock the vehicle using the vehicle key, close the driver's door.
2.  Press the lock button on the vehicle key.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front doors.



The lock button.



The unlock button.

Locking the vehicle from inside



To lock the vehicle from the inside, press the lock button on one of the front doors when closed.

Unlocking the vehicle from inside

To unlock the vehicle from the inside, press the unlock button on the front door.

Opening the door

1. To open a door, stop the vehicle.
2. Press button on the door.

   Depending on the vehicle, press the button once or twice for a rear door.

   The door is unlocked and slightly open.
3. Push the door outward.

Panic mode

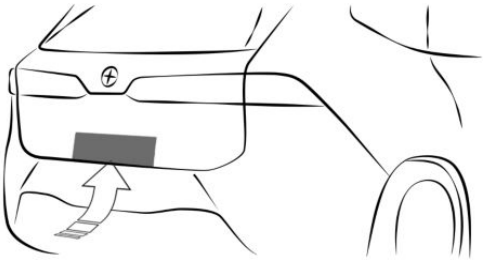
You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press and hold the panic mode button on the vehicle key for at least three seconds.
- Press the panic mode button on the vehicle key three times in quick succession.

To switch off the alarm: Press any button.

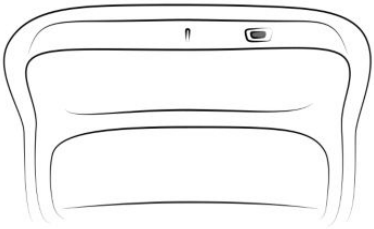
Access to the cargo area

Opening the cargo area



- Unlock the vehicle. To open, press the button on the outside of the cargo area.
- On the vehicle key, press and hold the open/close button for the cargo area for approx. one second.

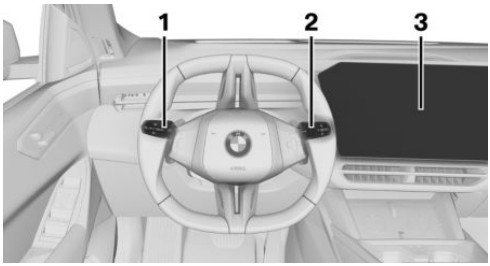
Closing the cargo area



- Press the button for closing the cargo area on the inside of the tailgate.
- On the vehicle key, press and hold the button for opening/closing the cargo area until the cargo area closes.

Displays, operating elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



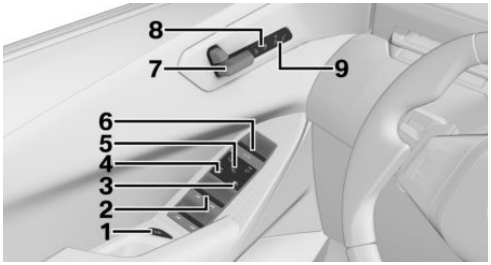
1 Turn signal lever, light
2 Wiper lever
3 Central display

Indicator lights and warning lights

The indicator lights and warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Driver's door



1 Opening the door
2 Power windows
3 Doors and windows menu
4 Safety switch
5 Exterior mirror adjustment button
6 Cargo area
7 Seat settings
8 Seat settings menu
9 Buttons for the central locking system

Switch console



1 Start/Stop button
2 Hazard warning system
3 Selector lever
4 Defrost function
5 Volume button
6 Rear window defroster
7 Parking brake

BMW iDrive

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept.

Depending on equipment, the vehicle has the following display areas:

- Central display.
- BMW Panoramic Vision.
- BMW 3D Head-up display.
- The BMW Passenger Screen

These display areas can be operated in various ways:

- Touchscreen:
- Operating elements on the steering wheel.
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions.

Activating the voice control system

1.  Briefly press the microphone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say the desired command.

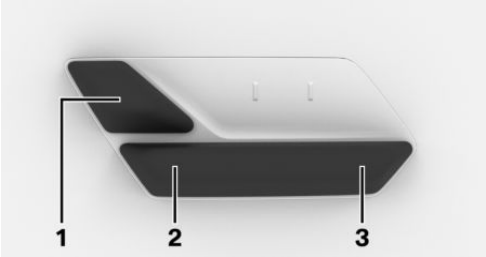
Canceling voice control

-  Press the microphone button on the steering wheel again.
- Say the following command: ›Cancel‹

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

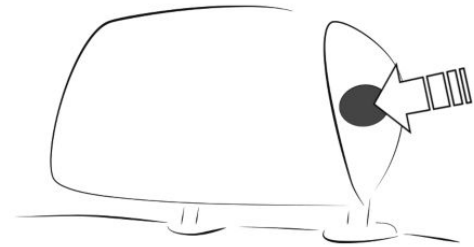
Adjusting the seats



1 Backrest tilt
2 Height/longitudinal direction
3 Seat tilt

Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height



- To lower the head restraint, press the release button on the head restraint then push the head restraint downward.
- To raise the head restraint, press the release button on the head restraint then push the head restraint upward.

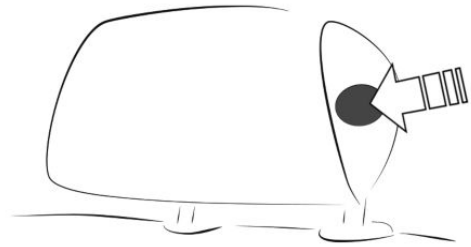
Adjusting the height: Multifunctional seat

1. To adjust the height of the head restraint, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. Select the desired setting:
   - To raise the head restraint, push the arrow upward.
   - To lower the head restraint, push the arrow downward.

Adjusting the distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

To move the head restraint forward, pull the head restraint forward.



To move the distance backward, press the button on the side of the head restraint, then push the head restraint backward.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

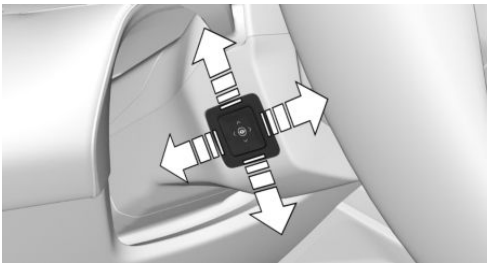
For the exterior mirror adjustment, the interior camera automatically detects which exterior mirror the driver is looking at. Depending on the viewing direction, the corresponding exterior mirror can be adjusted without manually selecting the exterior mirror using the buttons on the driver's door.



Buttons in the driver's door.

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirrors in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select left exterior mirror. Automatic Curb Monitor.
	Select right exterior mirror.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



To adjust the steering wheel position, press the button on the steering column and adjust the longitudinal position and height of the steering wheel to match the seat position.

Infotainment

Navigation and guidance

Guidance can be started via the quick search.

1. Go to the Navigation menu.
2. Select the search field.
3. Enter your desired destination.
4. Start destination guidance.

   More information may be displayed.

Entertainment

The entertainment system can be operated using the button on the steering wheel, the volume button on the center console, and the central display.

On the steering wheel:

Button	Function
	Adjust the volume.
	Go to the Media menu. In the Media menu: Change the entertainment source.
	Next station/title.
	Previous station/title.

In the center console:

Operating element	Function
	Turn volume button: Adjust the volume. Press volume button: Turn the sound output on/off.

On the central display:

Icon	Function
	Go to the Media menu. In the Media menu: Change the entertainment source.

Using a smartphone

Principle

Once a smartphone is paired with the vehicle, this smartphone can be operated using the central display and steering wheel buttons.

Enable Bluetooth on the smartphone and the vehicle.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

A smartphone can be paired with the vehicle via Bluetooth.

The Google Fast Pair function can be used on Android devices with the corresponding software version. To use Google Fast Pair, follow the instructions on the central display and on the smartphone.

1. Go to the Phone menu.

   The central display shows the Bluetooth name.

   If necessary, select Google Fast Pair on the smartphone and follow the instructions shown on the smartphone. Step 3 can thus be skipped.
2. Select the vehicle's name in the Bluetooth menu on the smartphone.
3. Compare the control number shown on the central display with the control number shown on the smartphone and confirm that they match.
4. "Connect"
5. If necessary, select another function, e.g., transfer data.

The smartphone is connected and shown in the device list.

Alternatively, a Bluetooth connection can also be established using the My Vehicle menu.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Connections".

   The Bluetooth name will be shown.
2. Select the vehicle's name in the smartphone's Bluetooth menu.
3. Compare the control number shown on the central display with the control number shown on the smartphone and confirm that they match.
4. "Connect"

Accepting a call

A call can be answered as follows:

- On the central display:

  "Accept"

-  Press the telephone button on the steering wheel.

The call is conducted via the vehicle's hands-free system.

Dialing a number

To dial a number, proceed as follows:

1. Go to the Phone menu.
2. Select the entry for number input.
3. Dial the desired number.

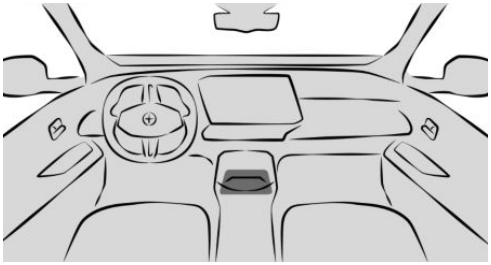
   The connection is established via the active smartphone.

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state and driving off

Overview



START ENGINE STOP Start/Stop button.

Turning on the drive-ready state

To turn on the drive-ready state, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. On the center console, press the Start/Stop button.

   An acoustic signal sounds and READY appears on the driver's display. Drive-ready state is switched on.

Driving off

To drive off with the vehicle, proceed as follows:

1. When drive-ready state is on, depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage the desired selector lever position, e.g., D or R.

   The parking brake is released automatically.
3. To drive off, release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

Turning off drive-ready state

To turn off drive-ready state after stopping, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal and push the parking brake button on the center console.

   The parking brake is set and selector lever position P is engaged.
2. On the center console, press the Start/Stop button.

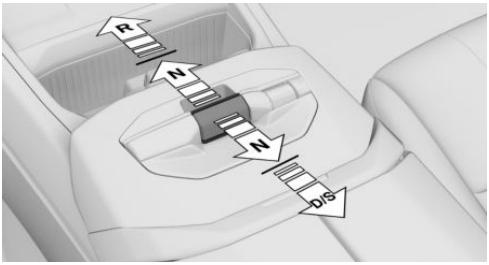
   The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

   The engine is shut off and the vehicle switches to standby.

Drive-ready state turns off automatically when the driver is detected exiting the vehicle. Selector lever position P engages automatically when drive-ready state is turned off.

Selector lever positions

Engaging selector lever position R, N, D, S



- R reverse gear.
- N neutral.

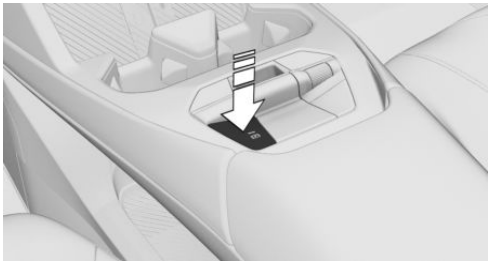
- Gear position D.
- Sport program S.

Depress and hold the brake pedal until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a gear position or reverse gear is engaged.

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

In Sport program S, the shift characteristics are designed for sportier vehicle handling.

Engaging selector lever position P



To engage selector lever position P, press the parking brake button on the center console.

The parking brake is applied and the parking lock is engaged.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: Step on the accelerator pedal.
- By the driver assistance systems activated, depending on vehicle equipment and driving situation.

Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

To engage the parking brake, press the parking brake button on the center console.

The LED on the parking brake button and the red indicator light on the driver's display are illuminated.

The parking brake is applied and parking lock is engaged.

Releasing the parking brake

With selector lever position P engaged and drive-ready state on, depress the brake pedal and push the parking brake button on the center console.

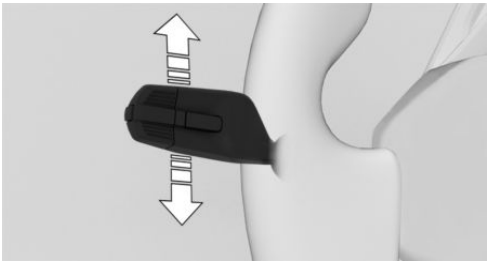
The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Light and view

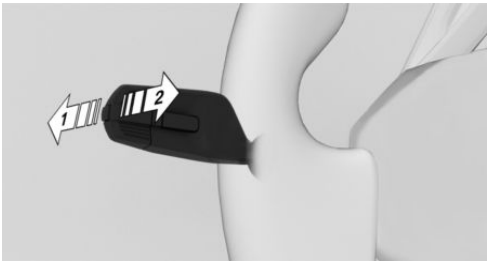
Turn signal, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Turn signal



- To flash the turn signal, push the turn signal lever up or down past the resistance point.
- For one-touch signaling: Lightly tap the turn signal lever up or down.
- To flash the turn signal briefly: Push the turn signal lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher



- To turn on the high-beam headlights, push the turn signal lever forward, arrow 1.

The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

- To turn off the high-beam headlights or operate the headlight flasher, pull the turn signal lever backward, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

Buttons on turn signal lever

Icon	Function
	Exterior lighting menu.
	Low-beam headlights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

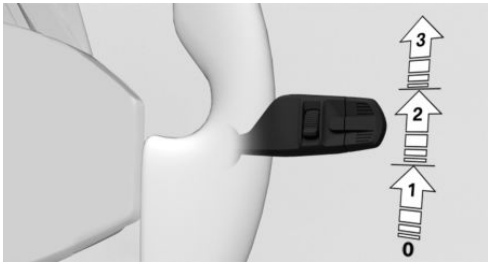
Functions on central display

Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control.
	Low-beam headlights.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.
	High Beam Assistant.
	Parking lights.

Icon	Function
	Left roadside parking light.
	Right roadside parking light.

Window wiper system

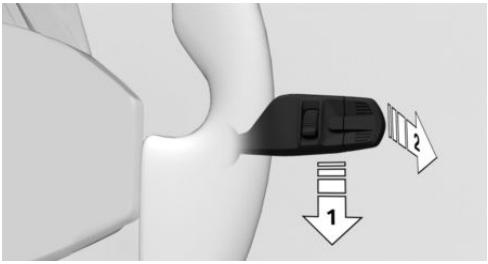
Turning on window wiper system



To turn on the wiper system, push the wiper lever upward to the desired position.

Position	Function
Position 0.	Rest position of wipers.
Position 1.	Rain sensor mode.
Position 2.	Normal wiper speed.
Position 3.	Fast wiper speed.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



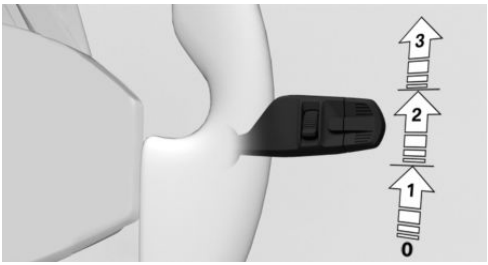
To turn off the wiper system, push the wiper lever down until it reaches position 0, arrow 1.

To flick wipe, proceed as follows:

- Push the wiper lever down from position 0, arrow 1.
- Push the wiper lever up from position 0 or position 1, arrow 2.

The wiper lever returns to its initial position when released.

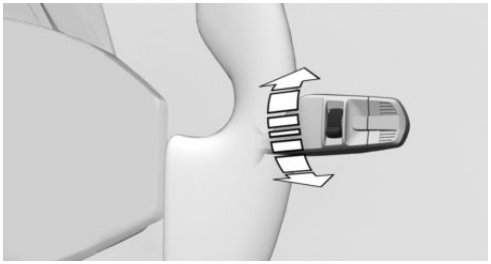
Activating/deactivating rain sensor



To activate the rain sensor: Push the wiper lever upward from position 0, arrow 1, once.

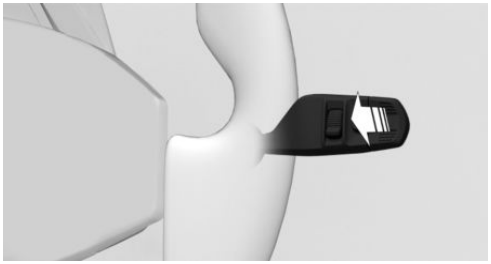
To deactivate the rain sensor: Push the wiper lever back to position 0.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



To adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor, turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

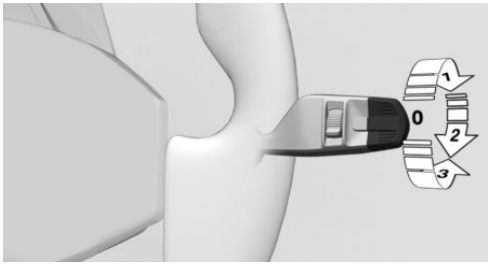
Cleaning the windshield



To clean the windshield, pull the wiper lever back.

Rear wiper

Switching on the rear wiper



To turn on the rear wiper, rotate the outer switch on the wiper lever upward.

Switch position	Function
Position 0.	Rest position of the wiper.
Position 1.	Intermittent operation. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Cleaning the rear window

To clean the rear window, turn the outer switch on the wiper lever as follows:

- In rest position: Turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch returns to its rest position when released.
- In intermittent operation: Turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

Climate control

Climate control functions

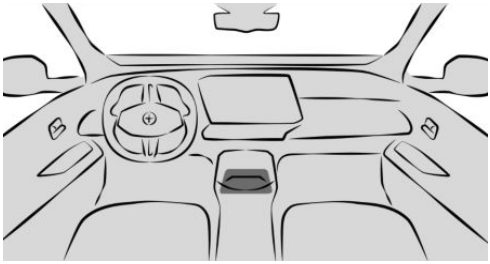
Functions in Climate Control menu

Some climate control functions, e.g., seat heating or air flow, can be configured using the Climate Comfort menu on the central display.

Icon	Function
	Turn the air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.
	Manual program.
72.0°F	Temperature in the vehicle interior.

Icon	Function
	Air flow.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
A	Automatic air recirculation.
	Fresh air.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat heating.
	Seat ventilation.
	Steering wheel heating.
	Settings.
REAR	Go to the rear air conditioning menu.

Buttons, air conditioning system



Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

Rear air conditioning system

The rear air conditioning can be operated at the central display or rear air conditioning display.

Icon	Function
	Turn the rear air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.
72.0°F	Temperature in the vehicle interior.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.

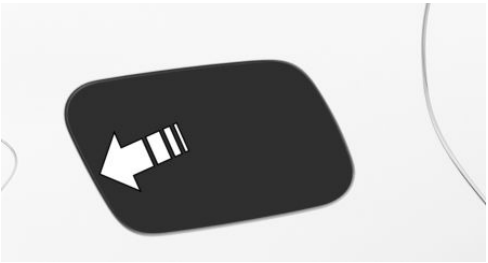
Icon	Function
	Seat heating.
	Lock the rear air conditioning.

Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel filler cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Open the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.

Washer fluid



The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment on the right side of the vehicle.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.5 US gal/2 liters.

To refill the washer fluid, proceed as follows:

1. Opening the hood.

   To do so, pull the lever in the footwell twice.
2. Open the cap and refill the washer fluid.
3. Close the cover.

Wheels and tires

Tire pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire pressure

If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the tire settings are correct. When using tires not found in the tire inflation pressure specifications on the central display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Checking the tire pressure

Check the tire pressure regularly and correct as necessary.

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

To view the engine oil level on the central display, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Engine oil level".

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil

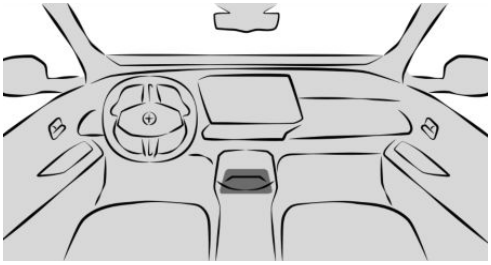
1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning system



The button for the hazard warning system is located on the center console.

BMW Assistance

Contact BMW Assistance for information and support for all aspects of the vehicle.

1. To start the service, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "BMW Assist".
2. ▷ Depending on national-market version: Select the Assistance option.
   ▷ Select the desired service, as necessary.

A voice connection to the selected service is established.

Depending on national-market version, a voice connection is established with Customer Relations or customer support.

Dashboard

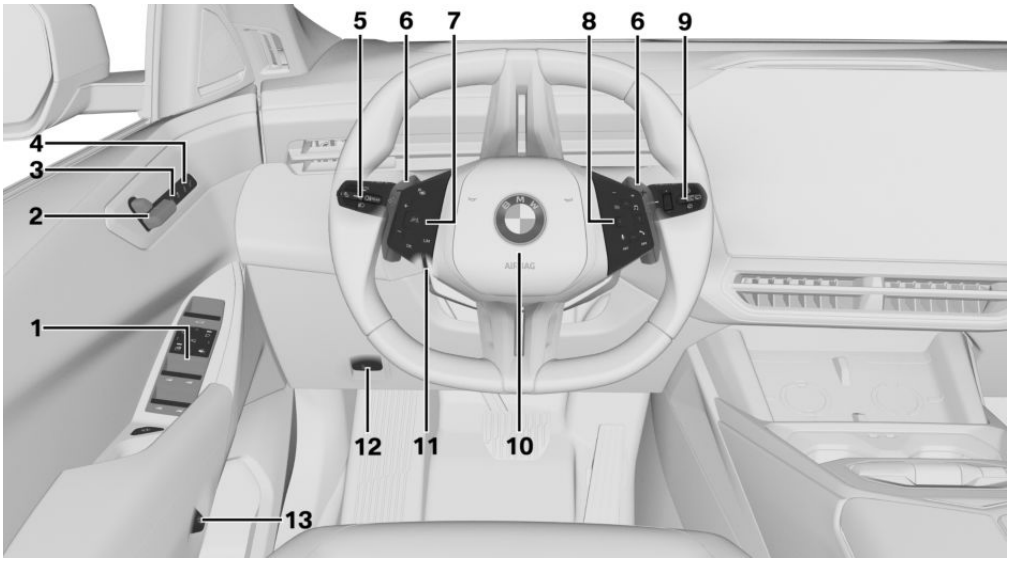
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Buttons on the armrest

Opening the door automatically 113

Opening the door 123

Power windows 127

Doors and windows menu 49

Safety switch 134

Exterior mirror adjustment buttons 147

Opening and closing cargo area 118

2 Seat setting

3 Seat settings menu 49

4 Buttons for the central locking system 123


Unlocking


Locking

5 Turn signal lever and light


Exterior lighting menu 173
High Beam Assistant 171


Low-beam headlights 174



Automatic driving lights control 174



Exterior lighting off 174


Turn signal 170


High-beam headlights, headlight flasher 170

6 Shift paddles 157

7 Steering wheel buttons, left


Turning driver assistance systems on/off 184



Adopting and saving the vehicle speed
Driver assistance systems 184


Adjusting the speed
Driver assistance systems 184


Parking assistance systems 234

8 Steering wheel buttons, right


Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6


BMW Panoramic Vision menu 48


Media menu, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6


BMW iDrive controller 48


Touchpad 48


Voice control, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 80


Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6


Next station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6


Previous station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

9 Wiper lever


Wipers 180



Rain sensor 181


Cleaning the windshield 181


Rear wiper 182


Cleaning the rear window 182

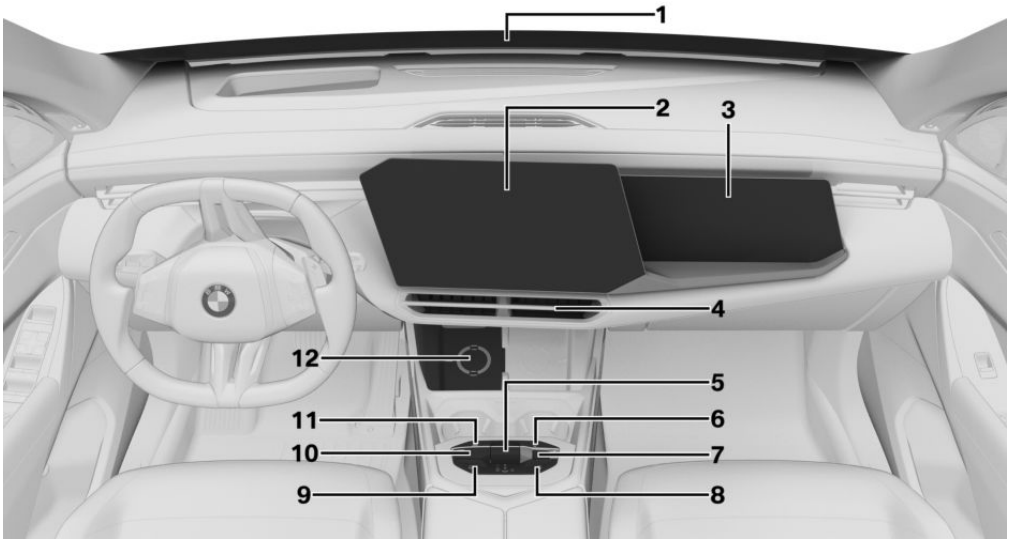
10 
Horn, entire surface

11 
Adjusting the steering wheel 149

12 
Unlocking the hood 396

13 Opening the door manually 123

In the vicinity of the center console



1 BMW Panoramic Vision 57

2 Central display 50

3 BMW Passenger Screen 68

4 Ventilation 265

5 Selector lever 154

6 MAX Defrost function 272

7 Operating elements for entertainment system, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

VOL Adjusting the volume

8 REAR Rear window defroster 272

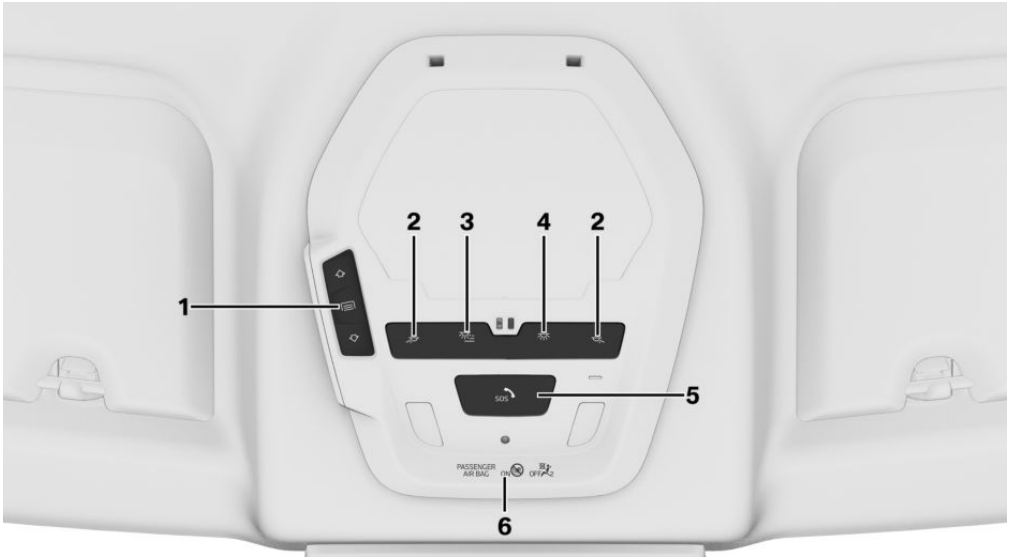
9 (P) Parking brake 159

10 START ENGINE STOP Turning drive-ready state on/off 151

11 Hazard warning system 351

12 Wireless Charging tray 285

In the vicinity of the headliner



1 Glass sunroof 130

2 Interior lighting menu 49

3 Interior lights 178

4 Reading lights 178

5 Emergency call, SOS 351

6 Indicator light, front passenger airbag 316

Cameras and sensors

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Overview

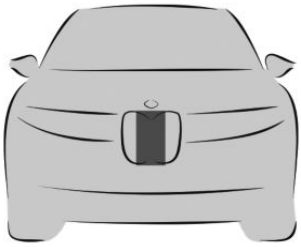
The vehicle is equipped with numerous cameras and sensors for the driver assistance systems, active safety systems, and parking assistance systems.

The following cameras and sensors are available for these systems:

- Front camera.
- Camera behind the windshield.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.
- The interior camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Side radar sensors.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.

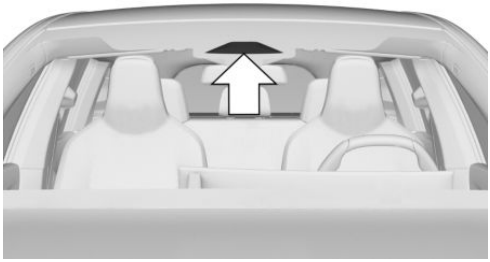
Cameras

Front camera



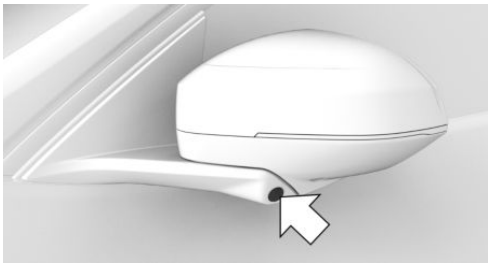
The front camera is located in the radiator grille.

Camera behind the windshield



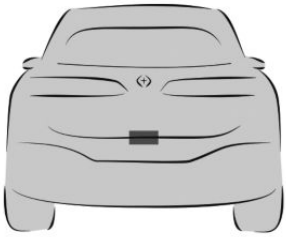
The camera behind the windshield is located near the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



There is one exterior mirror camera at the base of each exterior mirror.

Rear View Camera



The Rear View Camera is located in the handle on the rear end.

Functional requirements of cameras

For the cameras to function correctly, the area around the cameras must be clean and free.

A message may appear on the central display if there is soiling on the cameras.

Additional information:

- Status of cameras and sensors, refer to page 42.
- Turning on camera cleaning manually, refer to page 43.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 414.

System limits of the cameras

The cameras may not work properly, e.g., show something that is incorrect, in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.
- In tight curves.
- When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- With open doors or open cargo area.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., setting sun.
- When it is dark outside.
- The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, messages will appear on the central display when the system limits are reached.

Interior camera

Principle

The driver's activity and direction of view, depending on vehicle equipment, are monitored with the interior camera.

In addition, photos can be taken or videos recorded of the vehicle interior, for example.

Before using the interior camera for the first time, it may be necessary to enable and confirm the recording function and transfer data option on the central display. Additional activation may be required for some system functions.

While the interior camera is active, several infrared light sources illuminate next to the camera lens, which may be visible from the moment the vehicle is in standby, depending on the lighting conditions.

The area around the interior camera may become hot. This does not affect its functionality.

The interior camera enables the following functions:

- Driver activity monitoring.
- Interior camera function.
- Remote Inside View.
- Anti-Theft Recorder.

Follow applicable legal requirements when using this system.

Data protection

Principle

The permissibility of making and evaluating recordings for the interior camera depends on the applicable regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with the respective regulations.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you verify there are no statutory or regulatory restrictions on using the system in your region or country prior to initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other users and occupants of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, information about the system is required when handing off the vehicle.

Data transfer and data storage

Whether recording data will be sent or stored depends on the recording function.

The following applies for the interior camera function:

- Data is sent to a mobile device.
- Data is saved to the vehicle and assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

The following applies for Remote Inside View:

- Data is sent to mobile devices via the My BMW App. A connection to the ConnectedDrive account is required.
- Data is saved to the My BMW App and, after data is sent, to the mobile device.

The following applies for the Anti-Theft Recorder:

- Data is sent to mobile devices via the My BMW App. A connection to the ConnectedDrive account is required.
- Data is saved to the vehicle and, after data is sent, to the mobile device.

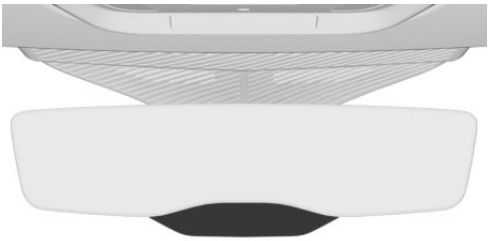
More information on the scope and content of data processing is available online in the ConnectedDrive privacy notices or service descriptions.

Occupying the seats

The interior camera is used for various comfort and safety functions as well as to detect occupied seats, e.g., for the Seat Belt Warning.

The interior camera activates automatically when the doors are opened. This system analyzes the vehicle interior in order to detect which seats are occupied. It does not save or send any images or videos. There is no way to access these camera images or this data from the outside.

Overview



The interior camera is located at the bottom of the interior mirror.

Functional requirements

To use the interior camera, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- Camera access is enabled in the Privacy Policy.
- The camera area is clean and clear.

A message may appear on the central display if there is soiling on the camera.

Note the additional functional requirements for the individual functions.

Additional information:

- Data protection, refer to page 91.
- Status of cameras and sensors, refer to page 42.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 414.

Enable/disable access to the interior camera

1. To enable or disable access to the interior camera, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Data privacy".
2. Select the desired setting.

When access is disabled, some systems may be restricted or unavailable, e.g., some driver assistance systems.

Driver activity monitoring with the interior camera

Principle

To support assistance systems, driver activity is monitored by analyzing the driver's attention. Depending on the equipment, the driver's line of vision is monitored by evaluating their head position, the direction that their pupils are looking, and how far their eyes are open.

Functional requirements

Observe the general functional requirements of the interior camera.

For the driver activity monitoring function, the driver's face must also be fully recognized.

System limits

The driver activity monitoring function may be restricted in the following situations.

- If the interior camera is covered or dirty.

  This may limit the availability of assistance systems.
- The driver's face is not in the interior camera's field of view, e.g., because the interior mirror has been tilted.
- The direction of gaze of the pupils is not sufficiently recognized, e.g. if the eye opening is too small.
- When wearing sunglasses with high protection against infrared light.
- By wearing glasses with wide frames or wide temples.

Interior camera

Principle

The interior camera function can be used to take, save and display photos and videos.

Functional requirements

Observe the general functional requirements of the interior camera.

Settings

The interior camera can record and send data when activated, then be deactivated.

1. To configure the settings for the interior camera, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Interior camera".
2. ⚙ Select the settings icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

Recording mode

Recording mode	Function
"Single photo"	Shortly after triggering, a photo will be taken.
"Self-timer (3 s)"	After the timer has expired, a photo will be taken.
"Burst"	Shortly after triggering, a series of pictures will be taken.

Take a photo or record a video

1. To take a photo or record a video, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Interior camera" / "Photo" or "Video".
2. If necessary, select the desired recording mode.
3. Trigger the photo or start video recording.

Depending on the recording mode selected, photos are taken shortly after the mode is triggered or when the timer elapses.

For burst shots, the series of pictures will be displayed as a preview.

A video recording is made shortly after the shutter is released and is limited in time.

Displaying and managing recordings

Principle

Saved recordings can be played, sent, and deleted in the vehicle.

With some national-market versions, for safety reasons, media recordings are only shown on the central display when the vehicle speed is below approx. 2 mph /3 km/h.

Functional requirements

To send recordings to mobile devices, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Observe the general functional requirements of the interior camera.
- Data transfer is activated.
- A mobile device is connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi.

Displaying and managing recordings

1. To display, transfer or delete the media recordings stored in the vehicle, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Interior camera" / "Gallery".
2. Select the desired recording.
3. Select the desired setting.

To send media recordings to a mobile device, send the recording using the pop-up that opens on the central display or select another mobile device.

Remote Inside View

Principle

With Remote Inside View, recordings of the vehicle interior can be played on a mobile device using the My BMW App. The vehicle interior can be checked, e.g., for forgotten items.

The function is not suitable for monitoring people or animals left behind.

Functional requirements

Observe the general functional requirements of the interior camera.

To use Remote Inside View and the Anti-Theft Recorder, the following functional requirements must also be met:

- The My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- The My BMW App is linked to the ConnectedDrive account.
- The vehicle is parked and locked.
- The Anti-Theft Recorder can only be used if vehicle is equipped with an alarm system.

Anti-Theft Recorder

Principle

The Anti-Theft Recorder automatically records the vehicle interior after the alarm system is triggered. The My BMW App issues a notification when recordings are being taken. The media recording can be displayed on the mobile device using the My BMW App.

Up to eight media recordings can be saved to the vehicle and synchronized with the My BMW App. If the vehicle is reset to factory settings, recordings saved to the vehicle are deleted.

Functional requirements

Observe the general functional requirements of the interior camera.

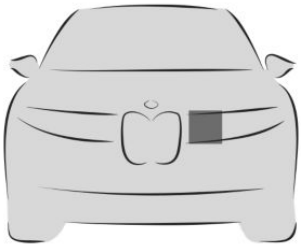
Radar sensors

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

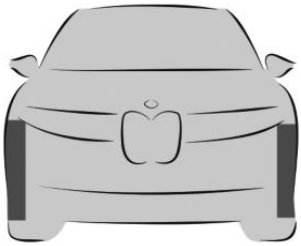
The vehicle radar sensors, and thus the driver assistance systems, can be negatively affected by external influences, e.g., interference. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Front radar sensor



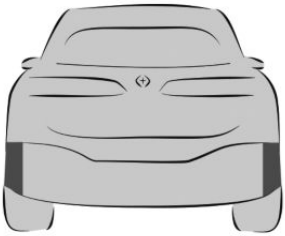
The front radar sensor is located in the left headlight.

Radar sensors, side, front



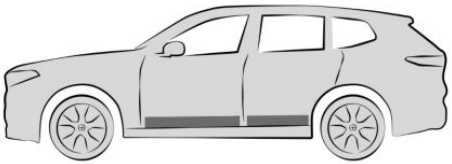
The radar sensors are located on the side of the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located on the side of the rear bumper.

Side radar sensors



The radar sensors for the automatic doors are located in the trim strips at the bottom of the doors.

Functional requirements of radar sensors

For the radar sensors to function correctly, the area around the radar sensors must be kept clean and free.

A message may appear on the central display if there is soiling on the radar sensors.

Additional information:

- Status of cameras and sensors, refer to page 42.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 414.

System limits of the radar sensors

The function of the radar sensors may be restricted or not available, for instance in the following situations:

- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of iced-up sensors.
- If sensors are covered such as by labels, films or a license-plate carrier.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

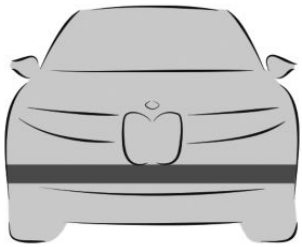
For vehicles with automatic doors:

- For people with specific clothing, e.g., coat.
- For people or obstacles at the edge of the door's travel path.
- If the vehicle is heavily tilted sideways, e.g. when parked on the curb.
- For metallic substrates and uneven floors.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- For elevated, protruding objects, e.g., wall ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- For very smooth surfaces, e.g. window glass.
- For objects with fine surfaces or fine structures, e.g. wire mesh fences, hedges or bushes.
- With small and low objects, e.g., boxes.
- In car washes and tunnel car washes.

If applicable, messages will appear on the central display when the system limits are reached.

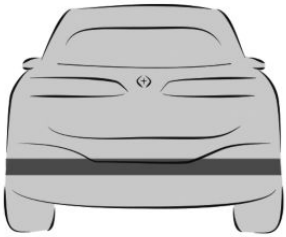
Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors, front



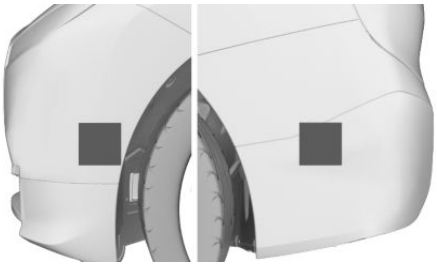
The ultrasonic sensors are located in the front bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, rear



The ultrasonic sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors are located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers.

Functional requirements of ultrasonic sensors

For the ultrasonic sensors to function correctly, the area around the ultrasonic sensors must be kept clean and free.

A message may appear on the central display if there is soiling on the ultrasonic sensors.

Additional information:

- Status of cameras and sensors, refer to page 42.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 414.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- For small children and animals.
- For people with specific clothing, e.g., coat.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- In case of external interference with the ultrasonics, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high humidity, wetness, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer hitches of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- For elevated, protruding objects, e.g., wall ledges.

- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- In the case objects with fine surfaces or structures, e.g., wire mesh fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, e.g., boxes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In car washes and tunnel car washes.
- For bumps, e.g., speed bumps.
- If there are large amounts of exhaust gas.
- Cargo is protruding beyond the vehicle.
- When the trailer hitch cover is not on straight.

If applicable, messages will appear on the central display when the system limits are reached.

Status of cameras and sensors

Principle

The status of the vehicle's cameras and sensors can be viewed in the Vehicle Status menu.

The vehicle image on the central display highlights any camera or sensor affected by a functional limitation or malfunction.

When soiling is detected, the Rear View Camera cleaning and, depending on vehicle equipment, the front camera cleaning can be turned on.

Functional requirements

To turn on the Rear View Camera cleaning and, depending on vehicle equipment, front camera cleaning, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Ambient temperature is between 5°F / -15°C to 149°F / +65°C.
- Vehicle speed is below approx. 85 mph / 135 km/h.
- The washer fluid reservoir is sufficiently filled.
- The tailgate and hood are closed.
- The vehicle is outside a car wash or tunnel car wash.
- There are no objects in close range of the Rear View Camera and front camera.

Displaying the status

1. To view the status of cameras and sensors, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status".
2. Depending on the status of the cameras and sensors, select the following menu option:
   - "Sensors OK"
   - "Sensors restricted"
   - "Sensor fault"

The icon for the status of cameras and sensors appears:

- Icon illuminates green: All cameras and sensors are functional.
- Icon illuminates white: Functional limitation detected. The affected camera or sensor is shown.
- Icon illuminates yellow: A camera or sensor has failed. The affected camera or sensor is shown.
- Icon illuminates gray: The cameras and sensors are not ready.

Turning on camera cleaning manually

When drive-ready state is on, the Rear View Camera cleaning and, depending on vehicle equipment, the front camera cleaning is offered on the central display if soiling is detected.

Cleaning can also be turned on manually as needed.

1. Tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.
2. Tap the camera cleaning icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

Operating state

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Operating states

Principle

Depending on the situation, the vehicle will be in one of three operating states:

- Idle state, refer to page 45.
- Standby state, refer to page 46.
- Drive-ready state, refer to page 46.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

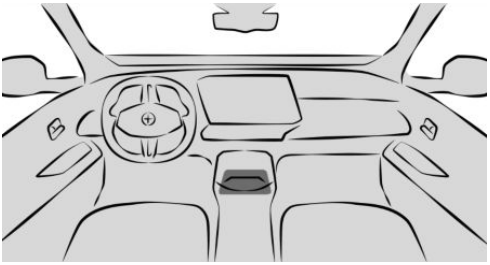
WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Turning on standby or drive-ready state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



The operating elements for manually setting the operating state are located on the center console.

Operating element	Function
START ENGINE STOP	Start/Stop button for turning on standby or drive-ready state.
	Volume control button for setting idle state or turning on standby.

Idle state

Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

The vehicle is in idle state until it is opened from the outside or after it is exited and locked.

Establishing idle state automatically

The vehicle switches automatically to idle state in situations like the following:

- After a few minutes, if the vehicle is not operated and no occupant is detected by the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the vehicle settings, when all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle after a trip.

In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Activating idle state upon exiting the vehicle

After a trip, idle state can be activated by exiting the vehicle. All occupants must exit the vehicle.

To enable/disable this function, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Locking" / "Lock/unlock settings" / "Vehicle off after exiting".

Establishing the idle state manually

To turn on idle state manually, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Turn off vehicle" / "Turn off vehicle".

Alternatively, press and hold the volume control button on the center console until all displays go out.

Idle state is on.

Deep sleep mode

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, activating deep sleep mode can prevent the vehicle battery from discharging when the vehicle is stationary for periods of several weeks.

In deep sleep mode, the vehicle functions are limited to the essentials.

Use deep sleep mode for long stationary periods.

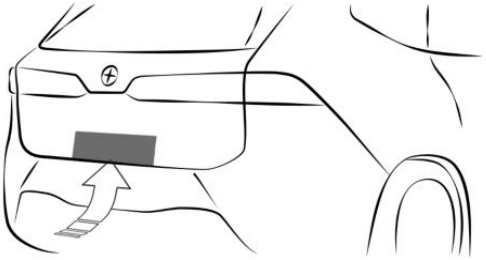
When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, some special measures are necessary. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Activating/deactivating deep sleep mode

1. To activate/deactivate deep sleep mode, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Deep sleep mode".
2. Select the desired setting.

Deep sleep mode deactivates automatically when drive-ready state is turned on.

Access to the vehicle



Press the button on the cargo area to access the vehicle while in deep sleep mode. The vehicle can then be unlocked and entered through the driver's door. Deep sleep mode remains on in this case.

Standby state

Principle

If standby state is activated, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

The vehicle is in standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

To preserve the vehicle battery, use standby and the activated power consumers only as long as absolutely necessary.

Safety information

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a tunnel car wash.

Turning on standby state manually

Standby state can be reactivated manually if the vehicle has been set to idle state automatically.

To turn standby back on manually, press the Start/Stop button or volume control button on the center console.

The central display and BMW Panoramic Vision illuminate.

View on driver's display



OFF is displayed on the driver's display when standby state is turned on and drive-ready state is turned off.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Turning on the drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

Repeatedly attempting to start the engine or repeatedly starting the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Turning on the drive-ready state

To turn on the drive-ready state, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. On the center console, press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine will start automatically for a brief time until the engine is started.

   A signal tone sounds. Drive-ready state is switched on.

Some indicator lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

View on driver's display



READY appears on the driver's display when drive-ready state is turned on.

Gasoline engine

The full drive power may not be available after the gasoline engine is started. This can take up to 30 seconds, depending on the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 59.

Turning off drive-ready state

To turn off drive-ready state after stopping, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal and push the parking brake button on the center console.

   The parking brake is set and selector lever position P is engaged.
2. On the center console, press the Start/Stop button.

   The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

   The engine is shut off and the vehicle switches to standby.

Drive-ready state turns off automatically when the driver is detected exiting the vehicle. Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when the drive-ready state is switched off and the parking brake is automatically applied depending on the setting in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 159.

Display and operating concept

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

BMW iDrive

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept.

Depending on equipment, the vehicle has the following display areas:

- Central display.
- BMW Panoramic Vision.
- BMW 3D Head-up display.
- The BMW Passenger Screen

These display areas can be operated in various ways:

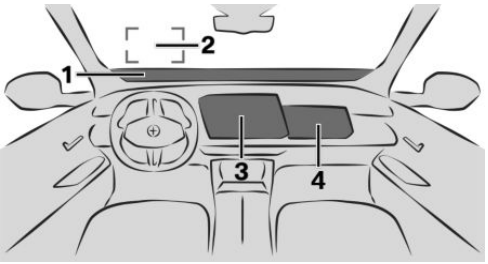
- Touchscreen:
- Operating elements on the steering wheel.
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Overview



1 BMW Panoramic Vision 57

2 BMW 3D Head-up display 66

3 Central display 50

4 Depending on vehicle equipment: BMW Passenger Screen 68

Operating elements on the steering wheel

Operating element	Function
	View content on BMW Panoramic Vision.
	Press the corresponding arrow key to change selection.
	Touchpad for operating some functions.
	Activate/deactivate voice control.

General operating principle

Touchscreen

The central display is equipped with a touch-screen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the central display with your fingers; do not use any objects to do so.

Input and display

Entering letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be entered, e.g., when inputting destinations.

Letters and numbers can be entered on the central display.

Icon	Function
⬆	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
OK	Confirm entry.
⌫	Delete a letter or number.
✕	Delete all letters or numbers.

Entry comparison

When entering data from a database such as contacts, the selection is gradually narrowed down for each character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. To activate or deactivate the function, select the corresponding menu item.

Icon	Meaning
	Function is activated.
	Function is deactivated.
	In certain menus, functions can be activated/deactivated directly by selecting the respective icon. If the button is highlighted in color, the function is activated. › If necessary, tap the arrow symbol to open additional settings for a function.

Direct access buttons

Principle

The vehicle features quick access buttons for certain functions which are used to open the respective menu directly on the central display. Then continue operation from the central display.

Overview

The direct access buttons are located:

- ▷ On the turn signal lever.
- ▷ In the headliner.
- ▷ On the driver's door.

Button	Function
	Go to the Exterior Lighting menu on the turn signal lever.
	Go to the Interior Lighting menu on the headliner.
	Bring up the Seat Settings menu on the driver's door.
	Open the Doors and Windows menu from the driver's door.

Setting the brightness

1. To adjust the brightness of each display, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Displays" / "General" / "Brightness at night".
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Central display

Principle

The central display is a touchscreen and is located above the center console.

The central display turns on automatically when it is needed for operation or when the vehicle is unlocked.

The central display's main menu is divided into different areas, e.g., menu bar, status information, and widgets.

Various settings can be adjusted from the central display.

Safety information

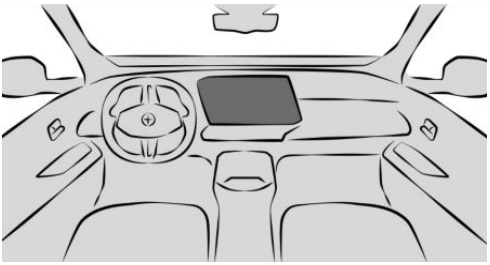
⚠ WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., smartphones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the area in front of a display can slip and damage the display. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not place objects in the area in front of a display.

Overview



The central display is located on the instrument panel above the center console.

Turning the central display on/off

The central display turns on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as it is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the central display turns off automatically, e.g., if the vehicle is not operated for several minutes.

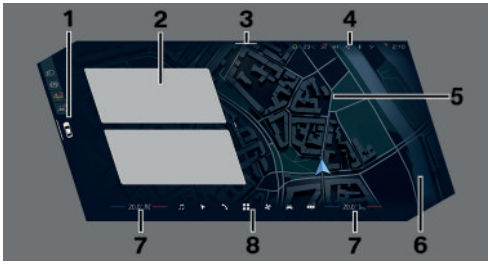
The central display cannot be turned off manually.

Central display main menu

Principle

The main menu on the central display is divided into different sections.

Overview



1 Driver's side status area
2 Widgets
3 Central display quick access
4 Status information
5 Main display
6 Front passenger side status area
7 Temperature setting
8 Menu bar

Menu bar

The menu bar may not be displayed when using third-party apps. To view the menu bar again, swipe up from the lower edge of the central display or press a button.

Media menu

The Media menu provides entertainment system functions, e.g., radio stations, and can also be used to pair external devices.

Navigation menu

The Navigation menu provides access to the navigation system. The navigation system is used to, e.g., enter destinations or view traffic bulletins.

Telephone menu

The Telephone menu provides calling and messaging functions and can also be used to pair and manage mobile devices, e.g., smartphones.

Main menu

The main menu can be opened from any menu.

Apps menu

The Apps menu provides access to all apps. You can use a filter to make it easier to find a specific app. The last selected filter is stored. To display the desired app, change the filter as necessary. The Apps menu icon appears on the main menu.

Climate menu

The Climate menu provides access to all climate control functions.

My Vehicle menu

The My Vehicle menu provides access to the vehicle functions. A quick access appears first in the menu and is used to configure the settings for select functions.

My Modes and My Moments menu

The My Modes and My Moments menu opens.

My Modes are used to adjust vehicle handling and customize the overall experience and effects of the vehicle interior.

My Moments are programs that enable various vehicle functions to be coordinated with one another.

Apple CarPlay©

The Apple CarPlay menu is displayed in the main menu depending on national-market version and connected function. Apple CarPlay enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via iDrive.

Android Auto©

The Android Auto menu is displayed in the main menu, depending on national-market version and associated function. Android Auto

enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Android smartphone via iDrive.

Widgets

Widgets show real-time information and dynamic content, e.g., the radio station currently playing. Widgets also serve as buttons and allow you to jump to the respective menu or most important functions.

Main display

The main display provides real-time information and dynamic content, e.g., the navigation map. This display also contains buttons and lets you jump to the desired menu.

Status information

Principle

Status information is displayed at the top of the central display in the form of icons. Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different icons are available. The status information also serves as buttons and can be used to jump to the respective menu or most important functions.

The time and outside temperature are also displayed in the status bar.

Icon	Meaning
	Bluetooth is enabled.
	Bluetooth is disabled.
	Active call.
	Wireless charging is activated.
	A notification has appeared.
	No radio reception.
	Wi-Fi connection is activated in vehicle.
sxm	Satellite tuner is on.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.

Icon	Meaning
	BMW ID or driver profile.
	Destination guidance active. The arrival time may be shown.
	Position finding active, interior camera and microphone inactive.
	Position finding, interior camera or microphone active.
	Location finding, interior camera, and microphone inactive.
	Position finding inactive, interior camera or microphone active.
	Updates are available.
	An update is being downloaded or installed.
	A remote diagnosis is being performed.
	Filtered air.
	Unfiltered air.
	Cleaning the air.
	Refreshing the air.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Central display quick access

Some functions and shortcuts can be opened via the central display quick access.

Function	Operation
Show the central display quick access.	— Select the icon at the top screen edge of the central display. Swipe from top to bottom on the central display.
Hide the central display quick access.	Swipe from the bottom up on the central display.

Shortcuts

Principle

Shortcuts provide quick access to functions such as those that are frequently used. Shortcuts can be opened via the central display quick access and configured individually. The following functions, for example, are defined as shortcuts:

- The radio stations.
- The navigation destinations.
- The phone numbers.
- The jump-ins to menus.
- The functions.

Shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

Saving shortcuts

1. To save shortcuts, press and hold the desired function.
2. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can also be saved directly via the central display quick access.

Selecting shortcuts

1. To select shortcuts, swipe from top to bottom on the central display.
2. Select the desired shortcut.

The function will work immediately. For example, the connection is established when a phone number is dialed.

Sorting shortcuts

1. To sort shortcuts, swipe from top to bottom on the central display.
2. Select the desired shortcut and press and hold.
3. Tap the Edit icon.
4. Select the desired shortcut again and press and hold. Move the shortcut to the desired position.

Deleting shortcuts

1. To delete shortcuts, swipe from top to bottom on the central display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut.
3. — Tap the delete icon for the desired shortcut.

Touch gesture control

Principle

The touch gesture control enables quick access to important menus.

Carrying out gestures

To perform the gestures, touch the central display with the fingers of one hand and perform the corresponding finger movement.

Possible gestures

Opening the Apps menu

You can go to the Apps menu directly from any other menu using touch gesture control in two ways:

- Touch the central display with the fingertips of your open hand. Then bring your finger-

tips together so that they touch and remove them from the central display.

▷ Touch the central display with your fingertips together. Then spread your fingers and remove them from the central display.

Opening the main display

The main display can be opened by swiping a finger upwards from the bottom of the screen.

Operation

Adjusting the main display

The main display can be adjusted in the main menu.

1. Press and hold the main display.
   The main display switches to edit mode.
2. Select the desired main display.
3. "OK"

Edit mode closes automatically after approx. 30 seconds without input.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Press and hold a widget.
   The widgets switch to edit mode.
2. The following adjustments can be made:
   ▷ Press and hold the desired widget.
   The widget can be moved to the desired position.
   ▷ Select the icon to hide or show.
   The widget is shown or hidden.
3. "OK"

Edit mode closes automatically after approx. 30 seconds without input.

Sorting apps

1. To sort apps, bring up the Apps menu.
2. Select the desired app icon and press and hold it.
3. Tap the Edit icon.
4. Select the desired app icon again and press and hold it. Move the app icon to the desired position.

Calling up the context menu

Selecting a corresponding menu item opens a context menu with additional options.

To bring up the Context menu, press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

▷ "General help": The Integrated Owner's Manual opens.

▷ "Add to shortcuts": The menu item is defined as a shortcut.

Using the navigation map

The navigation map can be moved on the central display.

Function	Operation
Move navigation map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink navigation map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Enabling/disabling audible feedback

1. To activate or deactivate the audio confirmation of the central display, go to the following menu path: My Vehicle menu / "Audio" / "System sounds" / "Touchscreen".
2. Select the desired setting.

Using alphabetical lists

Contacts are listed in alphabetical order.

To navigate to a desired initial letter in a list of more than 30 entries, select the letter on the letter bar and scroll up or down.

Favorites are displayed at the top of the list. Entries with numbers are displayed at the end of the list.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance energy consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Units".
2. Select the desired setting.

Displays

Live Vehicle

Principle

Live Vehicle is a virtual illustration of your own vehicle and provides information about the current vehicle condition.

Various information is displayed in Live Vehicle, for example, the vehicle status, seat belt warning, or the status of the doors and tailgate. Live Vehicle provides access to certain functions, e.g., to release the charging cable, or to open/close the charging flap.

Opening Live Vehicle

To bring up Live Vehicle, tap the vehicle symbol in the status area on the driver's side.

Vehicle status

Principle

In the Vehicle status menu, the statuses can be displayed or actions performed for several systems such as for Check Control.

Displaying vehicle status

To display the vehicle status, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status".

Overview

Icon	Description
	Status of the flat tire monitor, refer to page 380.
	Status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 376.
	Electronic oil measurement, refer to page 401.
	Displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 69.

Trip data

Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., average consumption or distance traveled.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Displayable content

The following determined values are shown on the left side of the central display depending on the set interval from drive-ready state:

- Travel time.
- Distance traveled while coasting.
- The average consumption for fuel.
- The distance traveled in coasting mode.
- Average speed.

The total mileage is displayed regardless of the set interval.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The interval for displaying trip data in BMW Panoramic Vision and on the central display can be adjusted.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Trip data" / "Values".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Today": The values for the current day are shown.
   - "My trip": The values are reset before each trip or when the BMW ID or driver profile is changed.
   - "Since Individual": The values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.
   - "Since refueling": The values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - "Since factory": The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.

Resetting trip data

The trip data values can be reset manually. This resets the values for the following interval: "Since Individual".

1. To reset the values, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Trip data".
2. Tap the icon for resetting trip data.

Once the values and counters have been reset, the following interval activates automatically: "Since Individual".

Assist View

Principle

Assist View provides information on driver assistance systems with the help of a vehicle animation.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Displaying Assist View

The navigation map is shown in the main display under the main menu and in the Navigation menu.

ASSIST VIEW Tap the Assist View icon in order to display Assist View. To display the navigation map, tap the icon again.

Display



Example view with Driver Assistance activated: The colored Distance Control marking and the Lane Change Assistant indicator show a lane change to the next lane. At the same time, the traffic environment is animated in Assist View.

System limits

The detection capability of the Assist View system is limited.

To be considered, information, e.g., objects, must be first detected by the system.

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 34.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 39.

Time and date

Various settings can be configured for displaying the date and time.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set manually or automatically. Automatic time zone adjustment automatically updates the time, the date, and the time zone as necessary.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Time".
2. Select the desired setting.

Outside temperature

Principle

If the outside temperature indicator drops to +37°F / +3°C or lower, a signal sounds.

A message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

The display changes if the outside temperature widget is configured on the center or outer displays.

When the vehicle is stationary or at low speed, the temperature displayed may differ slightly from the actual outside temperature due to external environmental influences.

Safety information

WARNING

Even at temperatures above +37°F/+3°C there is a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Goodbye screen

Principle

When drive-ready state is stopped, the goodbye screen appears on the central display. The goodbye screen provides various information about the vehicle.

If necessary, the goodbye screen issues a reminder so that, e.g., smartphones are not forgotten in the Wireless Charging tray. The goodbye screen also provides information on vehicle settings, e.g., climate control settings. Functions can be opened to configure the settings.

System limits

If the central display is exposed to very high temperatures, e.g., due to intense sunlight, the brightness may decrease until the display shuts off completely. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

If there is excessive ambient brightness, e.g., intense sunlight, the central display may no longer be clearly visible.

BMW Panoramic Vision

Principle

BMW Panoramic Vision projects relevant information onto the bottom edge of the windshield. This view extends across the entire width of the windshield and is divided into three areas.

The driver's display is located in front of the steering wheel and provides all driving-related information, e.g., speed and range. The views on the center and outer displays can be adjusted.

Content can be selected on the central display and using the multifunction buttons on the steering wheel.

Follow the instructions for cleaning BMW Panoramic Vision in the Care chapter.

Additional information:

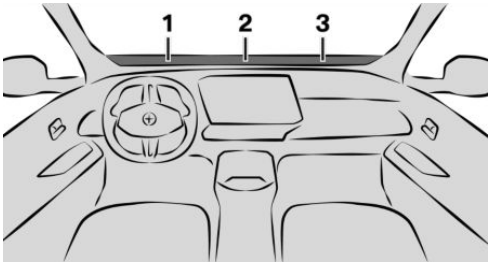
Caring for special components, refer to page 417.

Safety information

WARNING

If the driving information displays on the instrument cluster fail, e.g., the speedometer, do not use the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe manner. Turning drive-ready state off and on again may correct the malfunction, allowing you to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be corrected, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview



1 Driver's display

2 Center display area

3 Outer display area

BMW Panoramic Vision is located at the lower edge of the windshield.

Changing settings

Various settings can be configured for BMW Panoramic Vision, e.g., height, brightness, or rotation.

1. To adjust a setting, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Displays" / "Panoramic Vision display".
2. Select the desired setting.

Driver's display

Principle

The driver's display is located in front of the steering wheel and provides all driving-related information, e.g., speed and range.

The driver's display in the M Performance model also includes additional displays, e.g. tachometer or power gauge, which provide information on the current operating state of the drive system. The arrangement of the individual elements varies depending on the vehicle equipment.

Adjusting the driver's display

1. To configure the driver's display settings, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Displays" / "Panoramic Vision display" / "Driving-related content".
2. Select the desired setting.

Gear position

The gear position engaged is shown on the driver's display in addition to the speed.

Additional information:

Selector lever positions, refer to page 154.

Range

Principle

The range on the driver's display indicates the remaining distance that can be driven with the current tank of fuel.

The estimated range with remaining fuel is shown on the driver's display.

Display



The current range on the driver's display is shown as a numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

General information

A message appears briefly on the driver's display when the remaining range is low. A low remaining range means that engine functions cannot always be ensured for sporty driving, e.g., when cornering at speed.

The message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles / 50 km.

Power gauge

Principle

The power gauge indicates the currently drawn drive power as a percentage.

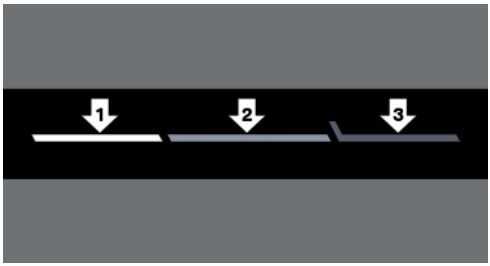
- The current deceleration and energy recovery level.
- Safe Share prompts.
- Information about the Efficiency Coach function.

The power gauge can be shown either on the driver's display or in the central display area:

- Driver's display: The driver's display shows the minimalist form of the power gauge. Depending on the driver's display settings, the power gauge is shown as needed or permanently.
- Center display: Show the enhanced power gauge by selecting the Dynamics app in the center display area.

Minimalist power gauge

The minimalist power gauge provides essential information about the drive power.



- Indicator for current electric drive power, arrow 1.
- Indicator for remaining electric drive power, arrow 2.
- If necessary, indicator for limited drive power, arrow 3. Marked areas cannot be reached or exited.

Reduced drive power

The available drive power may be reduced due to certain factors, e.g., warming up the emission control system. The power gauge may adjust automatically.

In addition, the icons on the central display indicate reduced drive power:

Icon	Description
PWR	The drive power is limited.
	The drive power is severely limited. Do not accelerate sharply or overtake.

More information about this restriction can be viewed by tapping the icon.

If the drive power is reduced due to low temperatures, drive in SPORT drive mode until the drive power is no longer reduced.

Additional information:

MyModes, refer to page 162.

Center display and outer display

Principle

The information shown in the center and outer display area can be configured. There are two categories:

- Personal Dashboard: Up to six widgets can be selected and positioned as desired on the Personal Dashboard.
- Apps: Various apps with specific content can be selected. The contents cannot be changed.

Selecting content

The multifunction buttons on the steering wheel can be used to select and change the contents of the center and outer display areas. To change the content shown, proceed as follows:

1.  Press the menu button on the steering wheel.
2. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to select the Personal Dashboard or the desired app.
3. Press the touchpad on the steering wheel.

Shift lights

Principle

Shift lights indicate the suitable upshift point at which optimal acceleration can be achieved.

General information

The Shift lights are active in M manual mode and can be shown on the left side of BMW Panoramic Vision in combination with the tachometer.

Functional requirements

Manual mode M must be activated for the shift lights to appear.

Display



Successive fields illuminating yellow indicate an upcoming shift point.

- Shift when all fields illuminate red at the latest.
- When the maximum rotational speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the fuel supply is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Tachometer

Principle

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Activating/deactivating the tachometer

The tachometer is displayed depending on the selected drive mode or the individually configured layout.

Depending on the driver's display settings, the tachometer is shown as needed or permanently.

Reduced rotational speed range

The rotational speed range may be reduced due to certain factors, e.g., drive system is cold. The tachometer display is automatically adjusted depending on the available rotational speed range.

Gear shift indicator

Principle

The shift point indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. Using the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General information

The gear shift indicator is active in manual mode M depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Displays

The driver's display provides information on upshifting, downshifting, and the gear engaged.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
M3	In continuous manual mode M: Optimal gear is engaged.
D3	With shift paddles: Temporary manual mode.
S3	With shift paddles: Sport program.
-M2	Shift information.

Additional information:

Shift paddles, refer to page 157.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

An arrow next to the fuel pump icon in the driver's display indicates the vehicle side on which the fuel filler flap is located.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 358.

Display



Next to the fuel gauge on the instrument cluster, the arrow beside the fuel pump symbol indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light on the driver's display



The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Personal Dashboard

Principle

Individual views can be set on the Personal Dashboard. Selecting certain widgets causes the respective views to be displayed permanently, e.g., trip data or navigation information.

Configuring the Personal Dashboard

1. To configure the Personal Dashboard, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle

menu / "Displays" / "Panoramic Vision display" / "Personal Dashboard".

2. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ Press and hold the desired widget icon and move it to the desired location.
   - ▷ — Tap the icon to remove the widget.

Trip app

Trip data

Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., average consumption or distance traveled.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Further trip data can be shown on the central display.

Additional information:

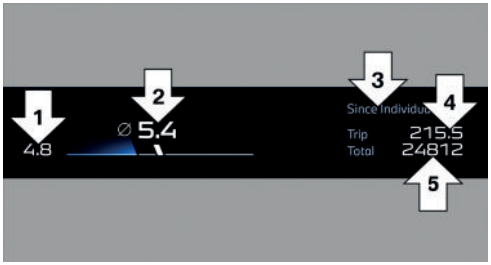
Central display, refer to page 50.

Display

Information on fuel consumption and distance traveled can be shown on the center display.



The icon appears when coasting.



- ▷ Current consumption, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average consumption depending on the set interval, arrow 2.
- ▷ Set interval, arrow 3.
- ▷ Distance traveled depending on the interval set, arrow 4.
- ▷ Total distance, arrow 5.

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption display allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g., to drive economically and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

When the Efficiency Coach is on, the graphic shown for the current consumption changes according to the average consumption, depending on the driving style.

This makes it possible to distinguish between an efficient and inefficient driving style.

Additional information:

Efficiency Coach, refer to page 363.

Mild hybrid technology: Depending on vehicle equipment, the fuel supply is interrupted and the engine continues to run when driving slowly or even when the vehicle is stationary. In this case, the internal combustion engine is operated electrically.

Average consumption

The average fuel consumption is displayed depending on how the intervals for displaying trip data are configured.

Resetting average trip data values

The average trip data values can be reset manually. This resets the average values for the following interval: "Since Individual".

To reset the average values, press and hold the touchpad on the steering wheel.

Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically activated: "Since Individual".

Dynamics app

Principle

The Dynamics app visualizes different information on the drive system and driving dynamics. The arrow buttons on the steering wheel are used to switch between sport displays or the power gauge and G-Meter.

Power gauge

Principle

The power gauge indicates the currently drawn drive power as a percentage.

- The current deceleration and energy recovery level.
- Safe Share prompts.
- Information about the Efficiency Coach function.

The power gauge can be shown either on the driver's display or in the central display area:

- Driver's display: The driver's display shows the minimalist form of the power gauge. Depending on the driver's display settings, the power gauge is shown as needed or permanently.
- Center display: Show the enhanced power gauge by selecting the Dynamics app in the center display area.

Reduced drive power

The available drive power may be reduced due to certain factors, e.g., warming up the emission control system. The power gauge may adjust automatically.

In addition, the icons on the central display indicate reduced drive power:

Icon	Description
PWR	The drive power is limited.
	The drive power is severely limited. Do not accelerate sharply or overtake.

More information about this restriction can be viewed by tapping the icon.

If the drive power is reduced due to low temperatures, drive in SPORT drive mode until the drive power is no longer reduced.

Additional information:

MyModes, refer to page 162.

G-Meter

On the outer display, the G-Meter indicates the forces in the longitudinal and transverse directions to which the vehicle occupants are subjected while driving.

The values are recorded with the Dynamics app open. To reset the values, press and hold the touchpad on the steering wheel.

The values are automatically reset whenever you start a new drive.

Sport displays

The sport displays in the Live Vehicle menu provide assistance for a sporty driving style.

In BMW Panoramic Vision, the sport displays are shown on the center or outer displays, depending on the dashboard settings.

The following information is displayed:

- The torque.
- The power.
- The boost pressure.
- Engine oil temperature.

Engine temperature



- Cold engine: Needle is in the lower temperature range, close to the stop on the temperature display, and LOW appears.

  Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: Needle is in the middle of the temperature display and OK appears.
- Hot engine: Needle is in the upper temperature range and HIGH appears.

BMW Maps app

Different content is shown in the BMW Maps app depending on whether route guidance is on or not.

When guidance is on, the following content is displayed, for example:

- A map display.
- Arrival time
- Traffic bulletins.
- Warnings along the route.
- Driving lane information.
- A compass for off-road driving.

If route guidance is not on, the following content is displayed, for example:

- A map display.
- The current street name.
- A compass for off-road driving.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Drive Challenge app

Principle

The Drive Challenge app is used to evaluate and graphically depict the user's driving style.

The Drive Challenge app assesses the driver with respect to steering, acceleration, and deceleration. A driving style that is especially anticipatory and fluid is rated positively.

Assessment

Principle

The Drive Challenge app awards points earned based on the driver assessment.

The positive assessments earned are shown graphically with overall statistics.

View on driver's display

The Drive Challenge app detects perceptible vehicle responses when maneuvering, e.g., steering.

While driving, graphics indicate when steering, accelerating, and coasting are detected.



The further a bar moves to the right, the clearer the detected maneuver.



Positive assessments for driving maneuvers are shown in green.



Negative assessments for driving maneuvers are shown in gray with text.



When at a standstill, the assessment for the current trip is shown as a percentage. High values mean a particularly positive assessment.

Text overlays provide additional information.

Activating, pausing, and resetting assessment

To activate the Drive Challenge app, go through the menu as follows: My Modes and My Moments menu / "My Moments" / "Drive Challenge".

Additional information:

My Moments, refer to page 164.

The function pauses with high driving speeds, deactivation of driving stability control systems, and activation of driver assistance systems.

After a driving break, the Drive Challenge can be reset or resumed.

To reset the values, press and hold the touchpad on the steering wheel.

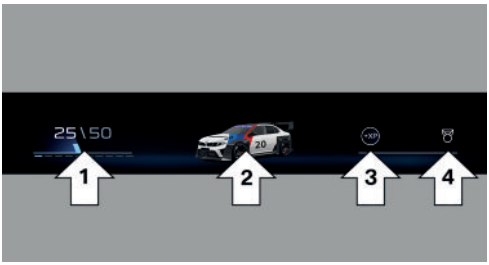
Overall statistics

Principle

The driver can earn points through positive assessments, allowing them to progressively change the appearance of the vehicle.

For certain, more complex driving situations, which were assessed positively, the driver receives an award and obtains a bonus factor for their next five actions while earning points.

Display



- Points earned, arrow 1.
- Vehicle that changes with the levels, arrow 2.
- Status of factor for recently earned points, arrow 3.
- Awards received, arrow 4.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the BMW Panoramic Vision display can be affected by the following factors, for example:

- Seat position.
- There are objects in the area in front of the display. Before starting a trip, remove any objects near the display.
- Dust or dirt on BMW Panoramic Vision.
- Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

Special windshield

The special windshield is part of the BMW Panoramic Vision system.

The shape and structure of the special windshield enable this system to function.

If damaged, have the special windshield replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Substitute view

If BMW Panoramic Vision malfunctions, the corresponding driving information is shown in a substitute view on the central display.

BMW Panoramic Vision may malfunction for various reasons, e.g.:

- There is ice on the windshield.
- The vehicle battery's state of charge is too low.
- A system error occurred.

A Check Control message appears on the central display. It is still possible to use the vehicle and continue driving. Some functions may not be available in the substitute view on the central display.

A message appears on the central display once BMW Panoramic Vision is ready to be used again.

To turn BMW Panoramic Vision back on, confirm the pop-up on the central display.

If the substitute view is shown permanently, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW 3D Head-up display

Principle

The Head-up display projects important information in the driver's field of view, e.g., navigation instructions. The driver can then view this information on the Head-up display without taking their eyes off the road.

Head-up display settings can be applied on the central display, e.g., brightness or height.

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 417.

Safety information

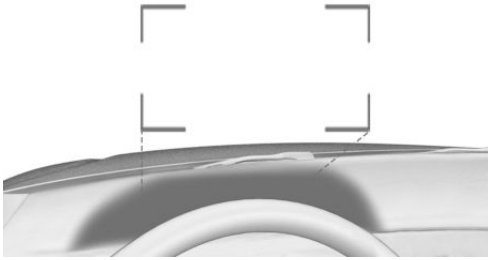
WARNING

There may be differences between the current traffic situation and the information given in the vehicle, e.g., changed road layout or road construction. The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Due to system limits, recommendations from the system may differ from your own assessment. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions and road layout. The respectively valid traffic rules take precedence.

NOTICE

The Head-up display consists of sensitive components that can easily be scraped or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place any objects on the Head-up display, attach to system components or plug into the system. Do not move the moving parts manually.

Overview



Head-up display views are projected onto the windshield through a protective glass. The protective glass is located between the steering wheel and windshield.

Displayable information

The following information is displayed on the Head-up display:

- Speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- The driver assistance systems.
- Curve Ahead view.

Some of this information may vary depending on the equipment.

Operation

Turning the Head-up display on/off

To turn the Head-up display on or off, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Displays" / "3D Head-Up Display" / "3D Head-Up Display".

In addition, the Head-up display can also be turned on/off via quick access:

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the central display.
2. "3D Head-Up Display"

Settings

Various settings can be configured for the Head-up display, e.g., height, rotation, or brightness.

1. To adjust, for example, the brightness, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Displays" / "3D Head-Up Display" / "Display settings".
2. Select the desired setting.

In addition, specific displays can be set individually in the Head-up display.

1. To set specific contents, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Displays" / "3D Head-Up Display" / "Configure content".
2. Select the desired setting.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- Dust or dirt on the protective glass of the Head-up display.
- Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet road.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by an authorized service center

or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The special windshield is part of the Head-up display system.

The shape and structure of the special windshield enable this system to function.

If damaged, have the special windshield replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW Passenger Screen

Principle

The Passenger Screen is a touchscreen and is located above the glove compartment.

The Passenger Screen turns on automatically when a front passenger is detected.

The main menu on the Passenger Screen is divided into various sections, e.g., frequently used apps or a screen for the current audio source.

The Passenger Screen can be used to play entertainment content and to configure various settings.

The playback of certain content is blocked if the driver looks at the Passenger Screen while driving. A message appears. The message is hidden and playback is resumed when the driver is no longer looking at the Passenger Screen.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

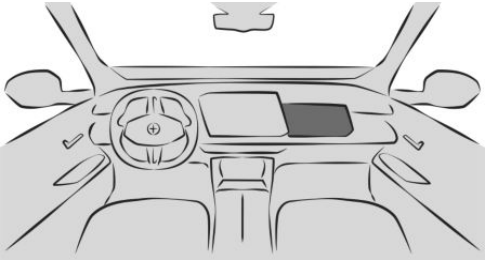
When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., smartphones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the area in front of a display can slip and damage the display. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not place objects in the area in front of a display.

Overview



The Passenger Screen is located on the instrument panel above the glove compartment.

Turning the Passenger Screen on/off

The Passenger Screen turns on automatically when a front passenger is detected.

When the front passenger exits the vehicle, the Passenger Screen switches to a reduced mode.

Activating/deactivating the Passenger Screen

The Passenger Screen can be activated/deactivated from the central display for the current trip.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Displays" / "Passenger Screen".
2. Select the desired setting.

To deactivate the Passenger Screen permanently when there is no front passenger present, proceed as follows:

1. On the central display, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Displays" / "Passenger Screen".
2. › Tap the Continue icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

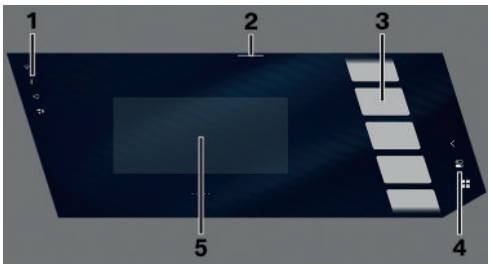
When a front passenger is present, the Passenger Screen always activates.

Main menu of the Passenger Screen

Principle

The main menu on the Passenger Screen is divided into different sections.

Overview



1 Status area
2 Passenger Screen quick access
3 Frequently used apps
4 Menu bar
5 Current entertainment source

Menu bar

Apps menu

The Apps menu provides access to all apps. You can use a filter to make it easier to find a specific app. The last selected filter is stored. To display the desired app, change the filter as necessary.

Settings Center menu

Quick settings, e.g., brightness and volume, can be configured in the Settings Center menu. The display can be turned off and current notifications will be shown.

Screen Access app

Principle

The Screen Access app is located in the Settings Center menu.

The Screen Access app can be used to lock the Passenger Screen, reset logins, credentials, and accessing the guest profile.

Screen lock

To activate the screen lock for the Passenger Screen, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Content" / "Create PIN"

Resetting the settings

To reset logins or credentials, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Content" /"Reset screen"

Guest profile

There are restrictions for the guest profile of the Passenger Screen, e.g., no apps can be downloaded or used.

To bring up the guest profile for the Passenger Screen, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Content" / "Continue as guest".

Check Control

Principle

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message, consisting of indicator lights or warning lights and text, appears on the central display and/or the driver's display. In addition, a signal sounds.

Stored Check Control messages can be viewed on the central display. Urgent Check Control messages are displayed permanently.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Saved Check Control messages and additional information such as the cause of a fault or necessary action can be accessed via the message overview.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Check Control".
2. Select the desired text message.

A status icon for Check Control messages also appears in the top status area. To access the Check Control message, select the icon.

Display

A Check Control message is displayed on the central display as a text message with an icon.

For urgent messages, an added text is automatically displayed on the driver's display. If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Icons in the upper status area of the central display indicate an active or saved Check Control message.

Icon	Meaning
	Information.
	Functional impairment.
	Malfunction.
	The vehicle is not ready to drive.
	Leave the vehicle immediately.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Principle

The indicator lights and warning lights show the status of some vehicle functions or indicate when there is a fault in monitored systems.

The indicator lights and warning lights may illuminate in different combinations and colors within the status area on the driver's side or front passenger side.

Some indicator lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder



Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belt reminder, refer to page 140.

Airbag system



Warning light illuminates briefly: Indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when drive-ready state is switched on.

Warning light does not illuminate or illuminates continuously: The airbag system or seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page 313.

Parking brake



The parking brake is applied or being used for emergency braking.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 159.

Brake system



The brake pads are worn or there is another issue with the brake system.



The braking assistance may not be operational. A higher pedal force may be required for braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Steering system



Warning light illuminates red: Steering system is not functional. If necessary, view the additional messages on the central display.

Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Integral Active Steering, refer to page 322.

Distance Control



Indicator flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and evade as necessary.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 194.

Driver Assistance: The driver is not looking at surrounding traffic



Eye icon illuminates red and signal sounds: The driver is still not looking at surrounding traffic.

Take note of the surrounding traffic immediately.

Additional information:

- Distance Control, refer to page 194.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Steering Assistance



Steering wheel icon illuminates red and signal sounds: The driver is not looking at surrounding traffic.

Steering Assistance is off or will be turned off soon.

The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable.

Keep an eye on the surrounding traffic.

Additional information:

Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Steering Assistance: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel



Steering wheel icon illuminates red, hands icons move, and signal sounds: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel.

Steering Assistance is off or will be turned off soon.

The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable.

Immediately grasp the steering wheel with your hands and pay attention to the surrounding traffic.

Additional information:

Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Fatigue Alert: Emergency stop triggered



The Fatigue Alert emergency stop has triggered.

Additional information:

Fatigue Alert, refer to page 341.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Risk of collision detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of imminent collision. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Person crossing from the front detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with a pedestrian crossing from the front. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with a pedestrian. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Person crossing from the right detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with a pedestrian crossing from the right. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with a pedestrian. Immediately initiating braking or evasive maneuvers

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Person crossing from the left detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with a pedestrian crossing from the left. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with a pedestrian. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Cyclist crossing from the front detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with a cyclist crossing from the front. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with a cyclist. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Cyclist crossing from the right detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with a cyclist crossing from the right. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with a cyclist. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Cyclist crossing from the left detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with a cyclist crossing from the left. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with a cyclist. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Forward Collision Warning



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision, e.g., with a preceding vehicle. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision, e.g., with a preceding vehicle. Immediately initiate braking or perform an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Vehicle crossing from the right detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the right. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with a crossing vehicle. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Vehicle crossing from the left detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the left. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with a crossing vehicle. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Animal crossing from the front detected



Warning light illuminates: Prewarning for risk of collision with an animal crossing from the front. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with an animal. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Animal crossing from the right detected



Warning light illuminates: Advance warning for risk of collision with an animal crossing from the right. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with an animal. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Forward Collision Mitigation: Animal crossing from the left detected



Warning light illuminates: Advance warning for risk of collision with an animal crossing from the left. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and warning tone sounds: Acute warning for risk of imminent collision with an animal. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Yellow lights

Electromechanical parking brake malfunction



The system may not be operational. The electromechanical parking brake is not available. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it against rolling away, e.g., with a wheel chock.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 159.

Antilock Braking System



The system may not be operational. The Antilock Braking System is not available.



The ability to steer may be restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Antilock Braking System, refer to page 319.

Steering Assistance



Steering wheel icon illuminates yellow and acoustic signal sounds: Steering Assistance will be turned off soon.

Steering wheel icon and lane marking flash: A lane boundary has been crossed inadvertently.

Additional information:

Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Steering Assistance: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel



Steering wheel icon illuminates yellow and hands icons move: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel.

Steering Assistance is still on.

Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

Additional information:

Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Dynamic Stability Control is on, has malfunctioned, or is being initialized



Indicator light flashes on driver's display: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving power and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

Indicator light illuminates on central display: Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the indicator light illuminates continuously on the central display, have the system checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 319.

Dynamic Stability Control deactivated



Indicator light illuminates on driver's display: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 319.

Dynamic Traction Control



The indicator lights illuminate on the driver's display: Dynamic Traction Control is activated.



Additional information:

Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 320.

Flat tire monitor



Warning light illuminates: Flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page 380.

Tire Pressure Monitor



Warning light illuminates: Flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes then illuminates continuously: Flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- Tires with special approval: The Tire Pressure Monitor was unable to reset. Reset the system again.
- Wheel without wheel electronics installed: Have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 376.

Steering system



The steering system is inactive, restricted, or possibly not functional. The steering system may no longer provide assistance. If necessary, view the additional messages on the central display.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Integral Active Steering, refer to page 322.

Pollutant emissions



- The warning light illuminates:

  The exhaust gas quality is declining, e.g., because the fuel filler cap is fitted incorrectly.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Otherwise, severe engine misfires will very quickly cause serious damage to emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Diagnostic socket, refer to page 407.

Lane Keeping Assistant



A functional limitation has been detected or the system has malfunctioned. You may continue driving. If necessary, view the additional messages on the central display.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 332.

Speed Warning: Acoustic warning on



A functional limitation has been detected. The acoustic warning is on. You may continue driving.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 186.

Speed Warning: Acoustic warning off



A functional limitation has been detected. The acoustic warning is off. You may continue driving.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 186.

Green lights

Turn signal



The turn signal is turned on.

If the indicator light is flashing unusually fast, this indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 170.

Parking lights



The parking lights are turned on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low-beam headlights, refer to page 174.

Low-beam headlights



The low-beam headlights are turned on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low-beam headlights, refer to page 174.

High Beam Assistant



Low-beam headlights are turned on, and the High Beam Assistant is activated.

The high-beam headlights are turned on and off automatically depending on the traffic.

Additional information:

High Beam Assistant, refer to page 171.

The vehicle is being held



The vehicle is automatically held at a standstill and secured against rolling away.

Additional information:

- Drive-off assistant, refer to page 158.
- Automatic Hold, refer to page 158.

Cruise Control



Cruise Control is turned on.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 188.

Distance Control



Indicator illuminates: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you by Distance Control. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator flashes: The preceding vehicle has driven off.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 194.

Steering Assistance



Steering wheel icon and lane markings illuminate green: Steering Assistance is on.

The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Additional information:

Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Lane Change Assistant is operational



Steering wheel icon illuminates green and two triangles illuminate gray: The functional requirements have been met. The Lane Change Assistant is operational.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 205.

Lane Change Assistant: Search phase



Steering wheel icon illuminates green and an arrow symbol illuminates gray: The Lane Change Assistant is searching for a gap in traffic in order to change lanes.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 205.

Lane Change Assistant: Lane change possible



Steering wheel icon illuminates green and lane change arrow symbol illuminates gray: It is possible to change lanes.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 205.

Lane Change Assistant: Lane change in progress



Steering wheel icon and lane change arrow symbol illuminate green: The Lane Change Assistant is initiating a lane change in the arrow direction.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 205.

Lane Change Assistant: Lane change is not possible



Steering wheel icon illuminates green, lane change arrow symbol illuminates gray, and desired lane illuminates yellow: System has detected a desire to change lanes. It is not currently possible to change lanes.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 205.

Highway Assistant is operational



Steering wheel icon and lane markings illuminate green, hands icons illuminate white: The Highway Assistant is operational.

Additional information:

Highway Assistant, refer to page 208.

Highway Assistant is active



Steering wheel icon and lane markings illuminate green: The Highway Assistant is on.

Additional information:

Highway Assistant, refer to page 208.

Hill Descent Control



Hill Descent Control is on. The vehicle is braked.

Additional information:

Hill Descent Control, refer to page 211.

Turquoise lights

Efficiency Coach



Indicator light on driver's display illuminates: Vehicle is not being driven in a fuel-efficient manner.

The accelerator pedal is pressed too hard or unnecessarily.

Additional information:

Efficiency Coach, refer to page 363.

Blue lights

High-beam headlights



High-beam headlights have been turned on.

Additional information:

High-beam headlights, refer to page 170.

High Beam Assistant



High-beam headlights have been turned on by the High Beam Assistant.

Additional information:

High Beam Assistant, refer to page 171.

Gray lights

Automatic Hold on standby



Automatic Hold is on standby.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 158.

Cruise Control



Cruise Control is interrupted.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 188.

Distance Control



Indicator illuminates: No Distance Control because the accelerator pedal or, depending on the settings, the brake pedal is being depressed.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 194.

Distance Control is deactivated



The display flashes: The requirements to operate Distance Control are no longer met. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 194.

Disabling Distance Control manually



Distance Control is deactivated and Cruise Control without Distance Control activates.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 194.

Steering Assistance



Steering wheel icon and lane markings illuminate gray: The Steering Assistance is ready but not actively steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Additional information:

Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Hill Descent Control



Hill Descent Control is on standby but temporarily deactivated.

Additional information:

Hill Descent Control, refer to page 211.

Lane Keeping Assistant inactive



The Lane Keeping Assistant is turned on but is not currently available. At least one functional requirement has not been met, e.g., the minimum speed has not been reached or a functional limitation has been detected.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 332.

Lane Keeping Assistant disabled



The Lane Keeping Assistant has been deactivated automatically or manually.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 332.

Speed Warning: Warning off



The visual and acoustic warning are off.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 186.

White lights

Speed Warning: Acoustic warning off



The Speed Warning is activated. The acoustic warning is off.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 186.

Speed Warning: Acoustic warning on



The Speed Warning is activated. The acoustic warning is on.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 186.

Speed Limit Assistant



White OK icon illuminates on speed limit icon: The detected speed limit can be applied by pressing the OK button on the left side of the steering wheel.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 190.

Driver Assistance: The driver is not looking at surrounding traffic



Eye icon illuminates white and signal sounds: The driver is not looking at surrounding traffic.

Keep an eye on the surrounding traffic.

Additional information:

- Distance Control, refer to page 194.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Adaptive 2-axle air suspension: Raising



Indicator light flashes white: Vehicle level is raised.

Additional information:

Adaptive 2-axle air suspension, refer to page 255.

Adaptive 2-axle air suspension: Lowering



Indicator light flashes white: Vehicle level is lowered.

Additional information:

Adaptive 2-axle air suspension, refer to page 255.

Lane Keeping Assistant



Indicator light illuminates: System is turned on. At least one lane boundary has been detected on one side of the vehicle. The system is ready to intervene.

Indicator light flashes: System performs a steering intervention or steering wheel vibration, depending on the settings.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 332.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions.

The Personal Assistant makes it easier to operate the vehicle by providing situational suggestions and personalized routines. The Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version. The range of functions and detection may vary depending on national-market version.

You can use supported voice assistants from third parties in your vehicle after pairing your smartphone.

Various Personal Assistant settings can be adjusted for voice control and individual suggestions.

This system includes special microphones on the driver's side and front passenger side as well as in the rear.

The Personal Assistant menu consists of three sections:

- The Overview tab shows the activated functions.
- The Tutorials tab provides a collection of video and audio tutorials on various topics.
- The Routines tab is used to configure routines and automated functions for specific situations.

Functional requirements

To use the Personal Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A BMW ID has been paired.
- The Personal Assistant must be set up first before it can be used.
- All functions can be activated in the settings.

Additional information:

Enabling/disabling range of functions, refer to page 82.

Using the voice activation system

›...‹: In the Owner's Manual, commands that can be spoken are indicated by brackets.

When saying commands, note the following:

- Say the commands at a normal volume. Speaking directly into the microphone does not improve voice recognition.
- Say the commands smoothly and with normal intonation and speed.

Activating the voice control system

You can activate voice control as follows:

- ▷  Press the microphone button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Say the activation word.

Microphone button on steering wheel

1.  To activate voice control, press the microphone button on the steering wheel.

   The microphone on the driver's side is active.
2. Say the desired command.

Activation word

Principle

The Personal Assistant can be started by saying a predefined wake word. Depending on where the wake word is said, the respective microphone is active.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

Enabling/disabling the activation word

1. To activate or deactivate the wake word, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Personal Assistant".
2. ⚙ Tap the settings icon.
3. "General"
4. "Activation with voice control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on the national-market version and availability, some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants such as Siri or Amazon Alexa.

To use Siri, the smartphone must be connected via Apple CarPlay.

Supported voice assistants can be used in the vehicle after you have connected your smartphone.

The activation word for voice assistants from associated third-party providers can be used in addition to your preset activation word from BMW.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Voice control" / "Other assistants".
2. Select the desired setting.

Canceling voice control

You can cancel voice control as follows:

- ▷  Press the microphone button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Say the following command: ›Cancel‹

Possible voice commands

Principle

Voice commands can be used to give instructions or ask questions, with the Personal Assistant providing assistance.

The following can be done by voice control, for example:

- ▷ Calling contacts.
- ▷ Navigating to an address.
- ▷ Adjust the settings.
- ▷ Operating vehicle functions, e.g., climate control.

In addition, spoken commands can be used to open the most important functions on the central display, e.g., menu options or lists.

Sample commands

Say the following voice command to bring up possible commands: ›Voice commands‹.

The following voice commands serve as examples:

- ›Call Peter‹
- ›Drive me to JFK airport‹
- ›Increase volume‹ or ›Decrease volume‹
- ›Turn AC on‹
- ›What is my remaining range?‹
- ›Configure Sport Mode‹

Menu items

The Personal Assistant can open most menu options directly. Say the menu options as shown on the central display. You do not have to follow the order of the menu items when speaking them out loud.

Settings

Setting up the Personal Assistant

The Personal Assistant must be set up first before it can be used.

During setup, the corresponding Personal Assistant language package is downloaded automatically for the selected language.

The Personal Assistant can be used once setup is complete and the language package has been downloaded.

1. To configure the Personal Assistant, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Personal Assistant".
2. ⚙ Tap the settings icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

Depending on national-market version, the system language may differ from the language of the Personal Assistant. It can be changed in the Personal Assistant menu or in the system settings.

1. To adjust the language of the Personal Assistant, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Personal Assistant".
2. ⚙ Tap the settings icon.
3. "Assistant language"
4. Select the desired setting.

Or:

1. To adjust the system language, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Language".
2. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

Enabling/disabling functions

The selection window can be used enable/disable any function of the Personal Assistant.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Personal Assistant".
2. ⚙ Tap the settings icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

Configuring routines

Routines make it possible to quickly and easily run a sequence of functions in recurring situations.

In addition, automated functions activate certain functions automatically and without further driver interaction.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Personal Assistant" / "Routines".
2. Select the desired setting.

Suggestions

The Personal Assistant provides helpful, individual suggestions. Suggestions can be activated/deactivated via the various functions.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Personal Assistant".
2. ⚙ Tap the settings icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

Using the smartphone's voice control

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1.  Press and hold the microphone button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   The smartphone's voice control is enabled.

   If activation is successful, confirmation appears on the central display.

2.  Press the microphone button on the steering wheel to cancel the smartphone voice control.

Amazon Alexa Integration

Principle

Depending on national-market version, the Personal Assistant can access Amazon Alexa content.

It is not necessary to say a separate wake word.

Functional requirements

To enable Amazon Alexa content, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A BMW ID has been paired.
- An active Amazon account exists and is linked during initial setup or in the Personal Assistant settings.

Enabling Amazon Alexa content

1. To enable Amazon Alexa content, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings".
2. Select "Connect to Alexa".

Only content or functions included with the linked Alexa account can be used.

System limits

- The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle. This also applies to safety functions and systems.
- Certain noises can be detected and may cause issues. Keep the doors and windows closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- The use of certain dialects may cause issues with speech recognition.
- A poor data connection affects the response time of the Personal Assistant and search function.

Connecting devices to the vehicle via Bluetooth or Wi-Fi

Principle

Mobile devices can be used in the vehicle for various functions. Pairing with the vehicle via Bluetooth or Wi-Fi is beneficial when using mobile devices:

- The mobile device is operated via the central display.
- Making calls via the hands-free system.
- Better connection to the telephone network and Internet using the vehicle's cell phone antennas.
- Listen to music on the vehicle's audio system.
- Operating smartphone apps, e.g., Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Additional information:

Telephone, Bluetooth, or Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Software Updates

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Software Updates

Principle

Software Updates update all of the vehicle software as well as apps and services.

An update can include the following, for example:

- New functions.
- App upgrades.
- Functional enhancements.
- Quality improvements.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends installing Software Updates as soon as they become available.

After the vehicle software is updated, the Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information. When a Software Update is offered in the vehicle, the contents of the BMW Driver's Guide app and the BMW Driver's Guide website are also updated.

Software Updates may not be available in some countries.

Software packages can be searched for and downloaded automatically in the background several times a year, but this has an effect on electrical consumption.

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Turning on standby or drive-ready state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To install a Software Update, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- The vehicle has mobile network reception.
- Consent to transmit the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

Additional information:

Data protection, refer to page 91.

Enabling/disabling Software Updates

Enabling Software Updates

1. To enable Software Updates, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Software" / "Enable updates".
2. Select the desired setting.

Disabling Software Updates

1. To disable Software Updates, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Data privacy" / "Manage permissions" / "BMW permissions" / "Software Updates".
2. Select the desired setting.

Changing settings

To configure the Software Update settings, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Software" / "Update settings".

Searching for Software Updates

Functional requirements

Standby state is switched on.

Automatic provision

If a Software Update is available, it is shown automatically.

Manual search

1. To manually search for a Software Update, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Software" / "Search for updates".
2. Follow the instructions on the central display.

Downloading Software Updates

General information

There are different ways to download the software update. These are:

- Automatic download
- Download via the My BMW App
- Download via Wi-Fi

Whichever option is selected, the software update can then be installed.

Automatic download

If Software Updates are enabled, the data for a software update will automatically download to the vehicle when available. No download consent is required.

Download via the My BMW App

When a Software Update is available, information about the new version can be viewed in the My BMW App.

The data for the Software Update can be downloaded to a mobile terminal.

Data can then be sent from the mobile terminal to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

It is not necessary to be inside the vehicle in order to download data to a mobile terminal.

1. In the My BMW App, download the Software Update to the mobile terminal.
2. Follow the instructions in the My BMW App.
3. Connect the mobile terminal to the vehicle via Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.

   The Software Update data will be sent from the mobile terminal to the vehicle both while driving and when stopped. Depending on the size of the Software Update, it

may be necessary to drive the vehicle until all necessary data has been sent.

4. Follow the instructions on the central display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile terminals to the vehicle, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Download via Wi-Fi

A Wi-Fi connection can be established in the vehicle in order to download the data for the Software Update.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

1. To download Software Updates over a Wi-Fi connection, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Software" / "Connect to Wi-Fi".
2. Follow the instructions on the central display.

Information about the version

Principle

The version history contains a description of the updates provided with the Software Update. The version history can be viewed on the central display when downloading an update and before/after installation.

The version history can also be viewed on the BMW website. To do so, log in to the personal area using the BMW ID.

Displaying information

1. To view the version history in the vehicle, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Software" / "Installed software".
2. The currently installed version is displayed.

Installing Software Updates

General information

Before installing Software Updates for vehicle functions, note the following:

- Installing Software Updates may result in the deletion of any software modifications, e.g., performance increases not done by the vehicle manufacturer.
- The installation may be interrupted if there are modifications to the vehicle's electrical system, e.g., to control units, which were not made by the vehicle manufacturer.
- The installation does not occur until the consent was given.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.
- If, during installation, it is not possible to electronically unlock the doors from the inside, the doors can be unlocked manually at any time.

Additional information:

Unlocking the vehicle manually, refer to page 123.

Functional requirements

To install Software Updates for vehicle functions, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Sufficiently charged battery.
- The outside temperature is above 14°F/-10°C.
- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The hazard warning system is turned off.
- The selector lever position P is engaged.
- The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.

Pay attention to any instructions given on the central display regarding additional requirements.

Your vehicle can establish some prerequisites automatically.

If these prerequisites have not been met, the Software Update will not be offered for installation.

If all prerequisites have been met, the My BMW App can also be used to begin installing the Software Update. Follow instructions in the My BMW App.

Pay attention to an offer for installation, e.g., after longer trips.

To install Software Updates for apps and services, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- An Internet connection is available, e.g., via mobile communications or Wi-Fi.

Preparing the vehicle

The vehicle must be prepared for Software Updates as follows:

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Make sure that the vehicle has mobile network reception so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, e.g., if the installation is canceled.
- In the vehicle, log in with a BMW ID.
- Close the windows.
- Close the cargo area.
- Disconnect all devices that consume power, e.g., mobile phones.
- Turn off the exterior lighting.
- Remove any devices connected to the diagnostic socket.

Installing Software Updates automatically

If all prerequisites have been met, the Software Update starts automatically after being downloaded.

Automatic installation must be enabled manually.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Software" / "Update settings" / "Enable automatic installation".
2. Follow the instructions on the central display.

Once automatic installation is enabled, the preferred installation time can be selected.

If all requirements have not been met when automatic installation is enabled, installation is postponed by 24 hours.

Installing Software Updates immediately

Software Updates can be installed immediately if all prerequisites have been met.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Software" / "Install now".
2. Follow the instructions on the central display.

Installing Software Updates with the timer

Software Updates that have already been downloaded can be installed automatically at a later time, up to seven days in the future, e.g., overnight, using a timer. It may be helpful to install the upgrade at a later time in order to meet functional requirements, e.g., to allow the engine to cool sufficiently.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Software" / "Set timer".
2. Select the desired settings.

The installation starts automatically at the specified time if all prerequisites for installation have been met.

If installation cannot be started at the specified time because some requirements have not been met, a new time must be scheduled.

The timer deactivates when drive-ready state is turned on and therefore does not trigger when driving.

Installing via the My BMW App

Once all preparations are complete and all requirements have been met, the My BMW App can also be used to begin installing the Software Update for vehicle functions, even when the vehicle is parked. Software Updates can be installed remotely. It is not necessary to be present in the vehicle.

It may be helpful to install the upgrade at a later time in order to meet functional requirements, e.g., to allow the engine to cool sufficiently.

Follow the instructions in the My BMW App.

Functional limitations

During the software update, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning flashers.
- Central locking system and Comfort Access, as applicable.
- Parking light.
- Horn.
- Presence Detection.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency call.
- Power windows.
- Locking the tank flap.
- Operating the tailgate or trunk lid.
- Parking Collision Detection.

When updating apps and services, some functions may be temporarily unavailable. The vehicle can continue to be used during this time.

After installing Software Updates

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Purchased services, e.g., Advanced Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services, are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is driven.

If the vehicle has been stationary for some time, it may be necessary to recharge the vehicle battery by going for a long drive.

Malfunction

If the software update system may not be operational, follow the instructions given on the central display or in the My BMW App.

If the malfunction cannot be corrected, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

Depending on the national-market version, there may be differences between the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual due to updates made after going to print.

Depending on national-market version, information on updates may be provided in the appendix to the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual or in the Safety Booklet.

After a software update in the vehicle

After updating the vehicle software, e.g., via Software Update, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest

information according to national-market version.

Before setting off, make sure that the Integrated Owner's Manual is available and up-to-date.

Printable Owner's Manual

When a Software Update is offered in the vehicle, the contents of the BMW Driver's Guide app and the BMW Driver's Guide website are also updated.

In addition, a printable version of the Owner's Manual can be downloaded, which reflects the production status of the vehicle.

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider.

The data transfer can be deactivated for some services. When data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Depending on vehicle equipment, before using certain functions for the first time, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Data privacy".
2. Select the desired setting.

Personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on use, your vehicle stores personal data such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted on the central display.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following data is deleted, for example:

- BMW IDs or driver profiles.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored shortcuts.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, e.g., favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.
- Digital key.

It may take several minutes to delete all of this data. In addition, the vehicle is removed from the My BMW App and ConnectedDrive customer portal so that remote functions can no longer be used.

Functional requirements

To delete personal data in the vehicle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Data can only be deleted while the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page 92.

Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off. Individual settings can only be deleted while the vehicle is stationary. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Reset vehicle data" / "Continue" / "Reset now".

If setting synchronization has been activated for a BMW ID in the vehicle, personal settings are kept in the BMW Cloud.

BMW ID

Principle

In countries with BMW ConnectedDrive, the BMW ID is the personal login for all relevant offers from the BMW brand. The BMW ID can be used to save personal vehicle settings to a profile as well as to apply these settings.

The vehicle can store seven BMW IDs. If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can use their own BMW ID in the vehicle. The guest profile can be used to operate the vehicle without a BMW ID.

The BMW ID must be registered once. Registration can be completed on the My BMW App, in the ConnectedDrive customer portal, or at an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic driver recognition can activate a BMW ID as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. A vehicle key or digital key must be linked to the BMW ID.

Many saved settings can be synchronized with the BMW Cloud. This makes these settings available in any vehicle where the same BMW ID is used to log in.

Functional requirements

To use a BMW ID, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle must be stationary to create, change, delete, or edit a BMW ID.
- Logging in the vehicle with a BMW ID and synchronization with the BMW Cloud are only possible when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

Welcome screen

The welcome screen appears on the central display after the vehicle is unlocked. The type of welcome depends on the following requirements:

- No BMW ID is saved to the vehicle:

  The guest profile is activated. A new BMW ID can be created.
- No BMW ID has been assigned to the vehicle key or digital key:

  The guest profile is activated. An existing profile can be used.
- A BMW ID has been assigned to the vehicle key or digital key:

  The welcome is personalized. Saved settings are activated.

Profile management

Adding the BMW ID

If a BMW ID has not yet been saved, a BMW ID can be added on the welcome screen.

To add a BMW ID, select the add BMW ID icon on the welcome screen.

A BMW ID can also be added via the BMW ID icon or the profile picture in the status bar.

1. To add a BMW ID, tap the BMW ID icon or profile picture.
2. To add a BMW ID, select the plus icon.
3. Scan the displayed QR code with your smartphone.
4. Observe the instructions on your smartphone.
   - If the My BMW App is installed on the smartphone and the BMW ID saved to it, the BMW ID is automatically transferred to the vehicle.
   - If there is currently no BMW ID, a new BMW ID can be registered.
5. Change additional settings as necessary, e.g., automatic driver recognition.

The vehicle is added to the user's My BMW App.

Alternatively, the BMW ID can be registered and added to the vehicle by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Confirming a BMW ID

If the BMW ID was registered and added to the vehicle by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, the BMW ID must be confirmed in the vehicle.

To confirm a BMW ID, select the profile picture displayed on the welcome screen.

A BMW ID can also be confirmed by tapping the BMW ID icon on the status bar.

1. To confirm a BMW ID, tap the BMW ID icon on the status bar.
2. Select the desired profile picture.
3. Scan the QR code shown.
4. Follow the instructions on your smartphone.

It may be necessary to register the BMW ID again.

The 'Pair Again' icon appears on the status bar and indicates when it is necessary to pair it again.

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Scan the QR code shown.

Another registration will be attempted. Once successfully logged in, all functions can be used again.

Changing the BMW ID

If a BMW ID has not yet been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key, an existing BMW ID can be selected on the welcome screen.

To change a BMW ID, select the BMW ID icon on the welcome screen.

A BMW ID can also be selected via the BMW ID icon or the profile picture in the status bar.

1. To switch BMW IDs, tap the BMW ID icon or profile picture.
2. Select the desired BMW ID.
3. If necessary, enter a PIN.

The BMW ID is activated and associated settings are loaded.

Deleting a BMW ID

1. To delete a BMW ID, tap the BMW ID icon or profile picture.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. Tap the delete icon for the desired BMW ID.

When deleting BMW IDs, note the following:

- Removing a BMW ID from the vehicle causes the vehicle to be removed from the My BMW App. If the BMW ID has been synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the data stored on the BMW Cloud is retained after the BMW ID is deleted.
- Deleting the primary user's BMW ID may reset the vehicle to factory settings. The ve-

hicle will be removed from each user's My BMW App. All BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

- Removing a vehicle from the My BMW App removes the corresponding BMW ID from the vehicle. If the BMW ID was synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the BMW ID data stored in the BMW Cloud will be retained.
- If the vehicle is removed from the primary user's My BMW App, it will also be removed from the other users' My BMW App. The corresponding BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

If the currently active BMW ID is removed, the guest profile is active. A different profile can be selected.

My BMW app

If a BMW ID has been added to a vehicle, the vehicle is automatically added to the My BMW app. The My BMW App provides numerous beneficial functions and settings, e.g., user management.

Alternatively, a vehicle can be added to the My BMW App by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. In this case, the BMW ID must then be confirmed on the central display in the corresponding vehicle.

In rare cases, the use of My BMW app functions for this vehicle may be limited. An additional prompt appears on the central display.

Primary user

The primary user is the person who first adds their BMW ID to the vehicle and first adds the vehicle to their My BMW App. Alternatively, the primary user can be specified by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The primary user has access to the following settings, for example:

- Removing BMW IDs saved to the vehicle.
- Transferring the primary user role to another BMW ID.
- Configuring vehicle-wide data protection settings.
- Creating the main digital key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 103.

Personalized settings

General information

The settings are only applied to the active BMW ID. To configure the settings for another BMW ID, select the desired BMW ID.

Automatic driver recognition

Principle

If a BMW ID has been assigned to a vehicle key or a digital key, the BMW ID can already be activated by automatic driver recognition when the vehicle is unlocked.

If driver recognition has been configured, automatic activation of the BMW ID is triggered by the following:

- By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- By unlocking the vehicle using a door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you.
- By unlocking automatically when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the digital key.

If multiple vehicle keys or digital keys are located near the vehicle, BMW IDs are activated according to the following priority:

- The key that triggers the door locks to release also activates the associated BMW ID.
- If a vehicle key and digital key are detected at the same time, the digital key triggers activation of the assigned BMW ID.
- The BMW ID of the key last detected on the driver's door is activated.

If the BMW ID is not recognized when the vehicle is unlocked, the guest profile is activated.

Setting/adjusting automatic driver recognition

1. To set or adjust automatic driver recognition, tap the BMW ID icon or profile image.
2. Tap the settings icon on the profile picture.
3. Select the desired setting.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key linked to a BMW ID can be used to view or change saved personal settings.

Before giving the vehicle key to another person, make sure to clear the driver recognition settings.

The BMW Digital Key provides the option to transfer a digital key to permit other persons the use of your own vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 103.

Selecting a profile picture

The profile picture can be selected from the predefined profile pictures.

1. To select a profile picture, tap the BMW ID icon or profile picture.
2. Tap the settings icon on the profile picture.
3. "Change picture"
4. Select the desired profile picture.

The personal profile picture for a BMW ID can be adopted from the profile in the My BMW App. Synchronization with the BMW Cloud must be enabled in the settings in order to use the profile picture from the My BMW App. The default pictures can only be selected after deleting the profile picture on the My BMW App.

Setting synchronization

Principle

If synchronization is enabled, the following settings are synchronized, e.g.:

- BMW ID, e.g., profile picture.
- Navigation, e.g., recent destinations, home address, or map settings.
- The individual settings, e.g., main menu configuration, language, or units.
- The Personal Assistant, e.g., suggestions or the activation word.
- Exterior lighting, e.g., one-touch signaling and pathway lighting.

Some settings are only synchronized when first logging in, e.g., temperature settings.

If synchronization is disabled, no settings are adopted from the My BMW App.

Activating or deactivating synchronization

1. To enable/disable settings synchronization, tap the BMW ID icon or profile picture.
2. Tap the settings icon on the profile picture.
3. "Data synchronization"

Configuring PIN protection

Saved BMW IDs can be selected by every vehicle user. PIN protection can be configured in order to prevent the settings for a BMW ID

from being changed or the data from being viewed.

1. To set a PIN, tap the BMW ID icon or profile picture.
2. Select the desired BMW ID.
3. Tap the settings icon on the profile picture.
4. "Lock screen"
5. Configure the desired PIN.

The PIN must always be entered when a BMW ID is activated.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be used to operate the vehicle without a BMW ID.

If no BMW ID is available, vehicle settings can be saved to this profile. The vehicle settings are saved in the guest profile and are available to all guest profile users.

This profile is subject to the following restrictions, among others:

- Automatic driver detection and the PIN cannot be associated with a user.
- The name and profile image cannot be changed.
- Synchronization with the BMW Cloud is not enabled.
- Certain functions are not available, e.g., individual navigation functions or saving favorites.

System limits

It may not be possible to clearly identify the driver using the vehicle key or digital key in the following situations, for example:

- When switching drivers without locking and unlocking the vehicle.
- If the vehicle key or multiple digital keys linked to a BMW ID are located outside the vehicle on the driver's side.
- If the vehicle was unlocked using the My BMW App.

There are technical limitations to using the settings for a BMW ID in other vehicles. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Driver profiles

Principle

Driver profiles can be used in countries where BMW ConnectedDrive is not available in order to save and activate personal vehicle settings in the vehicle.

Your vehicle can save up to seven driver profiles. If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can use their own driver profile in the vehicle. The guest driver profile can be used when driving the vehicle without a driver profile.

Automatic driver recognition can activate a driver profile as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. A vehicle key must be linked to the driver profile.

Functional requirements

The vehicle must be stationary to create, change, delete, or edit a driver profile.

Welcome screen

The welcome screen appears on the central display after the vehicle is unlocked. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisites:

- No driver profile is saved to the vehicle:

The guest profile is activated. A new driver profile can be added.

- No driver profile has been linked to the vehicle key:

  The guest profile is activated. An existing profile can be used.

- A driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key:

  The welcome is personalized. Saved settings are activated.

Driver profile, driver

Driver: A driver profile allows the driver to save individual vehicle settings as well as create a name for this profile and select a profile picture.

Driver profile, guest

Guest: This driver profile can be used to operate the vehicle without changing the settings saved for other driver profiles.

The vehicle settings applied are saved in the guest driver profile.

This profile is subject to the following restrictions, among others:

- Automatic driver detection and the PIN cannot be associated with a user.
- The name and profile image cannot be changed.

Profile management

Adding a driver profile

If a driver profile has not yet been saved, a driver profile can be added on the welcome screen.

To add a driver profile, select the add driver profile icon on the welcome screen.

A driver profile can also be added via the driver profile icon or the profile picture in the status bar.

1. To add a driver profile, tap the driver profile icon or profile picture.
2. + To add a driver profile, select the plus icon.
3. Apply the desired settings.
4. Change additional settings as necessary, e.g., automatic driver recognition.

Changing driver profiles

If a driver profile has not yet been assigned, an existing driver profile can be selected on the welcome screen.

To change a driver profile, select the change driver profile icon on the welcome screen.

A driver profile can also be selected via the driver profile icon or the profile picture in the status bar.

1. To switch driver profiles, tap the driver profile icon or profile picture.
2. Select the desired driver profile.
3. If necessary, enter a PIN.

The driver profile is activated and associated settings are loaded.

The settings can only be changed for the active driver profile.

Deleting the driver profile

1. To delete a driver profile, tap the driver profile icon or profile picture.
2. Select the desired driver profile.
3. Select the settings icon.
4. Tap the icon to delete the desired driver profile.

Personalized settings

Automatic driver recognition

Principle

If a driver profile is assigned to a vehicle key, automatic driver recognition can activate a driver profile as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. After unlocking, you can change the driver profile.

If driver recognition has been configured, automatic activation of the driver profile is triggered by the following:

- By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- By unlocking the vehicle using a door handle. You must carry your assigned vehicle key with you.
- By unlocking automatically when approaching the vehicle. You must carry your assigned vehicle key with you.

If multiple vehicle keys are located near the vehicle, driver profiles are activated according to the following priority:

- The key that triggers the door locks to release also activates the assigned driver profile.
- The driver profile of the key last detected at the driver's door is activated.

If the driver profile could not be recognized when the vehicle was unlocked, select the desired driver profile from the guest profile.

Setting/adjusting automatic driver recognition

1. To set or configure automatic driver recognition, tap the driver profile icon or profile picture.
2. Select the desired driver profile.
3. Tap the settings icon on the profile picture.
4. Select the desired setting.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key linked to a driver profile can be used to view or change saved personal settings.

Before giving the vehicle key to another person, remove the associated driver detection as necessary.

You can configure driver recognition in the driver profile settings.

Configuring PIN protection

Once saved, driver profiles can be selected by every user of the vehicle. PIN protection can be configured in order to prevent the settings for a driver profile from being changed or the data from being viewed.

1. To set a PIN, tap the driver profile icon or profile picture on the status bar.
2. Select the desired driver profile.
3. Tap the settings icon on the profile picture.
4. "Lock screen"
5. Enter the desired PIN.

The PIN must always be entered when a driver profile is activated.

System limits

It may not be possible to clearly identify the driver using the vehicle key in the following situations, for example:

- When switching drivers without locking and unlocking the vehicle.
- If multiple vehicle keys linked to a driver profile are located outside the vehicle on the driver's side.

Welcome and goodbye

Principle

The vehicle can perform various effects as a greeting and farewell. Depending on the

equipment and national-market version, the greeting and farewell take place when approaching and when moving away from the vehicle, as well as when unlocking and locking when in close range of the vehicle.

During the greeting and farewell, the following functions are run in a coordinated manner, depending on the discharging type:

- Exterior lighting and interior lighting.
- Ambient light.
- Door handle lighting.
- The sound staging in the vehicle interior.
- The LED projection in the rocker panels.

Depending on the equipment and when using a digital key or the vehicle key, the dynamic LED light projection is executed when the vehicle is approached at close range.

If multiple digital keys, or the vehicle key, are located near the vehicle, the effects of the first BMW ID or driver profile detected are played.

If the vehicle is at a saved home address or saved business address, the effects can be disabled.

Depending on vehicle equipment, there are various settings available for the effects.

The effects can also be adjusted using the My BMW App on a smartphone.

Functional requirements

To use the welcome and goodbye effects, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A BMW ID or driver profile is assigned to the vehicle.
- The driver has an authorized vehicle key or an authorized digital key with them.

Enabling/disabling effects

Effects can be enabled or disabled. Three different settings are available when the effects are activated, depending on the equipment.

1. To enable/disable effects, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Orchestration".
2. Tap the enable/disable icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

The selected settings are shown on the central display. The look and sound differ depending on the setting configured.

If effects are used repeatedly within a short time and drive-ready state is not turned on, the effects are disabled. To restore the effects, turn on the drive-ready state.

Disabling effects at saved address

The effects can be disabled for home and business addresses. If the vehicle is at the corresponding address, the effects will not be used. The home address and business address are set and saved to the navigation system.

1. To disable effects at a home address and business address, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Orchestration".
2. Select the settings icon.
3. To add an address, tap the plus icon.
4. Apply the desired settings.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Setting a time frame for effects

A time frame can be set for effects which does not affect the welcome and goodbye.

The time frame settings are configured using the My BMW App.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Vehicle key

Principle

The vehicle comes with one or two vehicle keys, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Vehicle keys contain a replaceable battery and an integrated key.

A BMW ID or driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to the vehicle key.

A digital key should be set up so that it is possible to continue using the vehicle if the vehicle key is ever lost.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, service data is saved to the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 103.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cell batteries can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell battery has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Overview



Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock the vehicle.
	Lock the vehicle. Pre-conditioning, refer to page 275.

Icon	Meaning
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting, refer to page 176.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned BMW ID or driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

Replacing the battery

NOTICE

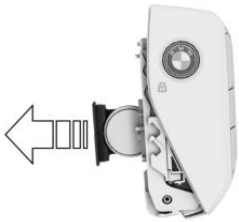
Improper batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of property damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

To replace the vehicle key battery, proceed as follows:

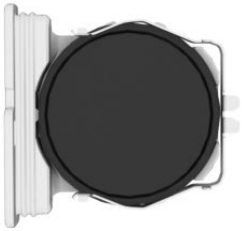
1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1. At the same time, push the cover to the front and remove it from the side, arrow 2.



2. Pull the battery housing off of the vehicle key from the side.



3. Remove the battery from the battery housing.



4. Insert a CR2032 3V battery with the positive terminal facing down.

5. Insert the battery housing into the vehicle key.



6. Insert the cover into the vehicle key.

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Batteries contain harmful chemicals. Disposing of batteries with household waste is prohibited by law.

Integrated key

Principle

The integrated key is built into the vehicle key.

The integrated key can be used to remove the rear head restraints or to lock/unlock the safety switch in the rear doors.

Additional information:

- Rear head restraints, refer to page 144
- Locking the rear doors and windows, refer to page 312.

Safety information

WARNING

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Removing the integrated key

To remove the integrated key, proceed as follows:

1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1. At the same time, push the cover to the front and remove it from the side, arrow 2.



2. Slide out the integrated key on the open side of the vehicle key.



3. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

Emergency detection of the vehicle key

Principle

If the vehicle key cannot be detected, drive-ready state cannot turn on via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. To turn on the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key, hold the back of the vehicle key to the marking on the steering column.
2. Pay attention to the information shown on the driver's display.
   - When the vehicle key is detected, turn on the drive-ready state within ten seconds.
   - If the vehicle key is not detected, slightly change the position of the vehicle key.

Malfunction

The vehicle may be unable to detect the vehicle key. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

The following can cause malfunctions:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- The vehicle key is shielded by a building or metallic object.
- Connection lost due to smartphone or other electronic device located directly next to the vehicle key.
- Radio transmission interrupted by mobile device charging process, e.g., charging a smartphone.
- The vehicle key is in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.
- Fault of the radio link while charging the vehicle.

In the event of a fault, the vehicle can be opened and closed from the outside using the Setup Card. Use the Emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on the drive-ready state.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key makes it possible to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle using digital keys.

BMW Digital Key availability and range of functions depend on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or another compatible device.

The My BMW app can be used to check if the smartphone and vehicle are compatible and which functions are supported.

Each vehicle can be provided with a main digital key. Additional digital keys can be shared and then deleted.

The Setup Card and Service Card are part of the BMW Digital Key.

A BMW ID with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, the deactivated Service Card should be located in the vehicle. The Service Card can be given to other people in situations that require the vehicle to be handed over to another person or to Service. The Service Card must be activated before it can be handed over.

Additional information:

BMW ID, refer to page 92.

The respective BMW website provides additional information under the keyword BMW Digital Key.

Functional requirements

The following functional requirements must be met for BMW Digital Key:

- The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key.
- The smartphone's rechargeable battery has sufficient charge. The battery's necessary minimum charge depends on the smartphone.
- The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the vehicle owner.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband are enabled on the smartphone in order to use hands-free locking with the digital key.

Setup Card

Principle

The Setup Card is used to set up the main digital key. In an emergency, the vehicle can be locked and unlocked manually using the Setup Card. The Setup Card cannot be used to turn on the drive-ready state.

For safety/security reasons, the Setup Card should be stored outside of the vehicle and should only be inside of the vehicle to set up and activate the main digital key.

Enabling the main digital key with the Setup Card

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a main digital key in the vehicle. To enable, the vehicle owner must verify their authorization for the vehicle. A vehicle key is also required to verify authorization.

The Setup Card and the My BMW App are used to start the setup process for the main digital key.

1. Hold the Setup Card to the smartphone or scan the QR code using the smartphone camera.
2. Follow the instructions on the smartphone.
3. Complete the activation of the digital master key in the vehicle.
4. Follow the instructions on the smartphone and the central display.

Sharing digital keys

Principle

BMW Digital Key makes it possible to share digital keys with other people. Digital keys can be shared from the vehicle owner's smartphone or a smartphone with the corresponding authorization. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Sharing a digital key with someone

To share a digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation. When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Safe Share function

The Safe Share function makes it possible to restrict the scope of some vehicle functions for a digital key that is to be given to a novice driver, for example.

The following functions are restricted:

- Driving stability control systems cannot be deactivated.
- The drive power will be limited.
- The maximum speed is limited.
- Entertainment system volume is limited to 65% of the maximum sound output.

These functional limitations cannot be disabled.

The functional limitations become active if only the corresponding digital key is in close range of the vehicle and the vehicle is unlocked and opened at the driver's door. Close range is a

radius of approx. 6 ft / 2 m around the driver's door.

To turn on the drive-ready state, place the smartphone in the smartphone tray.

A message appears on the central display if there are active functional limitations. This message can be viewed again in the Message Center.

For more information, refer to the ConnectedDrive customer portal and the My BMW App.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, authentication may be required for security purposes.

An authorized vehicle key, a digital key with corresponding authorization, or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the central display.

Deleting digital keys

Principle

Digital keys can be deleted. Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of authorized digital keys. Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

The main digital key can be deleted using a smartphone or on the central display. The main digital key is deleted immediately. No other digital keys are deleted.

Shared digital keys can be deleted using an authorized smartphone, using the smartphone with shared key, or on the central display.

They are deleted immediately when using the smartphone with shared key or the central display.

Keys can only be deleted using an authorized smartphone once the vehicle is used with a digital key other than the digital key to be deleted.

Deleting on the central display

To delete a digital key using the central display, an authorized vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Keys" / "Digital Key".
2. If necessary, select the digital key.
3. "Delete key"

Resetting the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

Resetting this function causes the main digital key and all shared digital keys to be deleted.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The Service Card's digital key will continue to work.

To reset this function, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Keys" / "Digital Key" / "Reset function".

The main digital key must be reactivated in order to use BMW Digital Key again.

Service Card

Principle

The Service Card is part of the BMW Digital Key. A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is stored on the Service Card. The Service Card allows the vehicle to be unlocked/locked and started.

Service Card availability depends on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

The Service Card is required when it is necessary to give other people a physical vehicle key, e.g., for a service appointment.

The Service Card must be activated before it can be handed over.

If using a smartphone as digital key, the Service Card should be deactivated and kept in the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

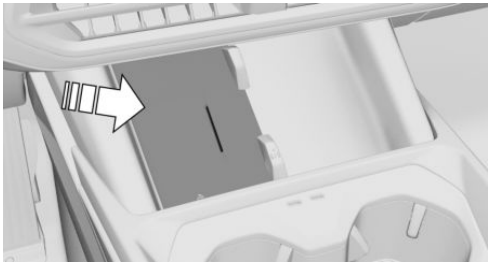
If the Service Card and a mobile device are in the Wireless Charging tray at the same time, the Service Card may become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place the Service Card in the Wireless Charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Activating/deactivating Service Card in the vehicle

Functional requirements

A vehicle key or digital key must be located in the vehicle to activate and deactivate the Service Card.

Activating the Service Card



1. To activate the Service Card, place the Service Card on the left side of the smartphone tray.
2. Follow the instructions on the central display.

Deactivating the Service Card

1. To deactivate the Service Card, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Keys" / "Digital Key".
2. Select the Service Card.
3. "Deactivate Service Card"

A deactivated Service Card will remain on the list of paired digital keys.

If a digital key or a vehicle key is being used when an activated Service Card is detected, the central display will show an additional message to deactivate the Service Card.

Malfunction

The vehicle may not be able to detect the Service Card if there are objects between the smartphone tray and the Service Card, e.g., a wallet or smartphone case.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the door handle using a digital key or the Service Card when activated.

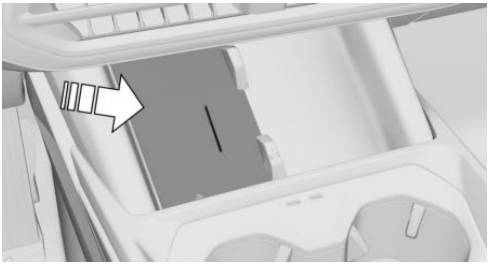
Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle can be locked hands-free with a digital key.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 108.

Turning on the drive-ready state

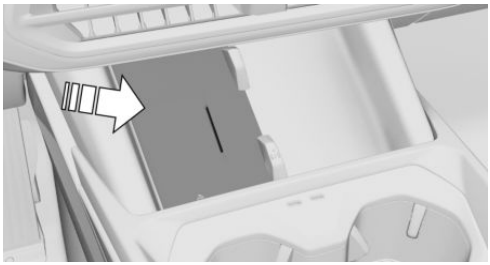
With the BMW Digital Key



1. To turn on the drive-ready state using the BMW Digital Key, place the smartphone on the left side of the smartphone tray with the screen facing up.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Depending on the country, it is sufficient for the smartphone with Bluetooth and ultra-wideband enabled to be located inside the vehicle.

With the Service Card



1. To turn on the drive-ready state using the Service Card, place the activated Service Card on the left side of the smartphone tray.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Once drive-ready state is on, the Service Card can be removed from the smartphone tray.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Changing smartphones

To use a new smartphone as the main digital key, first activate the new smartphone according to the instructions for the main digital key. The previous main digital key can be deleted when the new smartphone is activated.

Sale of the vehicle

Before selling the vehicle, reset the BMW Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted. The Service Card's digital key is retained and deactivated.

Malfunction

Your digital key may not be detected by the vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- There is an object, e.g., a chip card, between the smartphone and smartphone case.
- Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the smartphone due to buildings or metal objects.
- Some smartphones provide the option to protect the digital key with further authentication. If using the digital key, the user must authenticate themselves, e.g., via PIN, fingerprint, or facial recognition.

  If the recognition system is not functional, the digital key can no longer be used. If neither the vehicle key nor the Service Card is available, the vehicle can be locked/unlocked using Remote Services in the My BMW App on another smartphone. Alternatively, the vehicle can be unlocked by the BMW ConnectedDrive call center upon request.

System limits

If the smartphone turns off due to low battery charge, this smartphone can still be used for a few hours to unlock/lock the vehicle at the door handle and turn on the drive-ready state.

Access to vehicle interior

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle can be unlocked or locked as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- With a digital key.
- Using the door handle.
- Hands-free locking.
- With the My BMW App.
- With the Service Card.

Safety information

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

WARNING

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Turning on standby or drive-ready state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Actions during unlocking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when unlocking the vehicle from the outside:

- Just the driver's door will be unlocked, or all doors will be unlocked.
- The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.
- Unlocking can be confirmed with a signal tone.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a BMW ID or a driver profile is assigned to the vehicle key, this BMW ID or driver profile will be activated.
- The interior lighting turns on unless it was turned off manually.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button inside the vehicle, the exterior mirrors will not fold out when the vehicle is unlocked.
- The alarm system is switched off.
- Parking collision recognition is deactivated.

Additional information:

- Welcome lights, refer to page 175.
- BMW ID, refer to page 92.

- Driver profiles, refer to page 96.
- Parking Collision Detection, refer to page 225.

Actions during locking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when locking the vehicle from the outside:

- Locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- Depending on the settings, the exterior mirrors can be folded in automatically when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- All doors and the cargo area are locked.
- After locking, the indicator lights on the interior mirror flash every two seconds.
- The alarm system is switched on.
- Parking collision recognition is activated.
- The fuel filler flap is locked.

If the drive-ready state is still turned on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn will honk twice.

If the vehicle horn sounds twice, turn off drive-ready state by depressing and then releasing the brake pedal or using the Start/Stop button.

If selector lever position N is engaged and drive-ready state is turned off, the vehicle horn will sound twice and the vehicle will not lock.

Functional requirements

To unlock/lock the vehicle using the door handle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- You are carrying the vehicle key or a digital key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- After locking, wait approx. two seconds before unlocking.

To lock the vehicle hands-free, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to lock with the digital key.
- You are carrying the vehicle key or a digital key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Drive-ready state must be turned off in order to lock with the digital key or vehicle key.
- If the vehicle has been in idle state for several days, contactless locking will only be available after the vehicle has been driven.

Settings

Principle

Various settings for accessing the vehicle interior can be configured depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Enabling/disabling unlocking of the doors

To activate/deactivate the settings for unlocking the doors, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Locking" / "Unlock all doors".

If this setting is disabled, only the driver's door will unlock.

Hands-free locking

To enable/disable the settings for hands-free locking of the doors, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Locking" / "Lock when walking away".

Enabling this setting also activates automatic folding of the exterior mirrors. Automatic fold-

ing of the exterior mirrors can be deactivated again in the corresponding menu.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. To adjust the vehicle confirmation signal, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Locking".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Flash when locking"

     Locking is confirmed by one flash.
   - "Sound on lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two signal tones, locking is confirmed with one signal tone.

Folding in the exterior mirrors automatically

To configure the exterior mirrors to fold in automatically, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Locking" / "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock".

Unlocking the vehicle

Using the button on the vehicle key



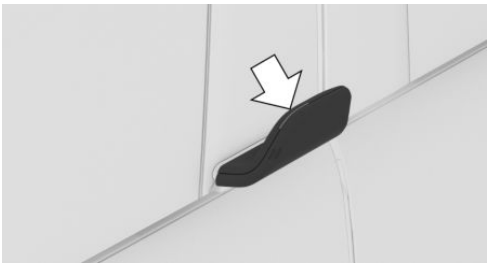
To unlock the vehicle using the vehicle key, press the unlock button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door has been unlocked due to the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

On the door handle

Unlocking the vehicle with door handle



Lightly touch the inside of the door handle.

Opening and closing automatic doors

When opening and closing manually, the doors are motor-assisted. The doors can also be opened and closed automatically using the door handle.

Additional information:

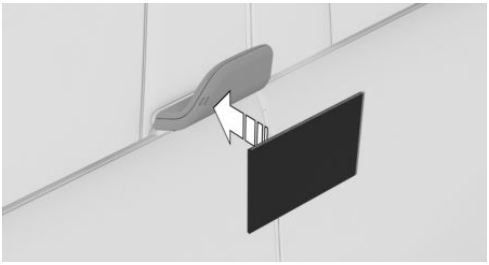
Automatic doors, refer to page 113.

Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the unlocking request detection on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock the vehicle using the buttons on the vehicle key or use the My BMW App.

With the Service Card



Hold the activated Service Card directly over the middle of the driver's door handle.

If the Service Card is not detected, change the position of the Service Card slightly and repeat the procedure.

With the My BMW App

The My BMW App Remote Services include an option to unlock the vehicle, among other functions.

This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract, and the My BMW App must be installed on the smartphone used.

Locking the vehicle

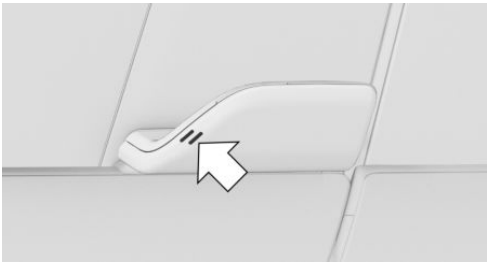
Using the button on the vehicle key

1. To lock the vehicle using the vehicle key, close the driver's door.
2.  Press the lock button on the vehicle key.

On the door handle

Locking the vehicle with the door handle

1. Close the driver's door as well as the door used to lock the vehicle.
2. With your finger, touch the marked surface on the handle of a closed door for approx. one second without reaching into the door handle.



Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, lock the vehicle using the buttons on the vehicle key or use the My BMW App.

Contactless locking of the vehicle

The vehicle can be locked hands-free. Whether or not hands-free locking can be used depends on the national-market version.

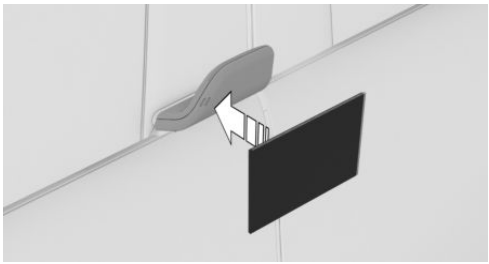
The vehicle is locked when the vehicle key or an authorized digital key leaves the locking zone. The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 9 ft / 3 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

If the vehicle key or multiple authorized digital keys are located in the locking zone, the vehicle will only lock once the vehicle key and each digital key is no longer in the locking zone.

If someone is detected on a seat while locking the vehicle, the following restrictions apply:

- The alarm system is not turned on.
- Parking Collision Detection is not activated.

With the Service Card



Hold the activated Service Card directly over the middle of the driver's door handle.

When locking the vehicle with the Service Card, make sure that the driver's door and cargo area are closed.

If the Service Card is not detected, change the position of the Service Card slightly and repeat the procedure.

With the My BMW App

The My BMW App Remote Services include an option to lock the vehicle, among other things.

This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract, and the My BMW App must be installed on your smartphone.

Malfunction

Principle

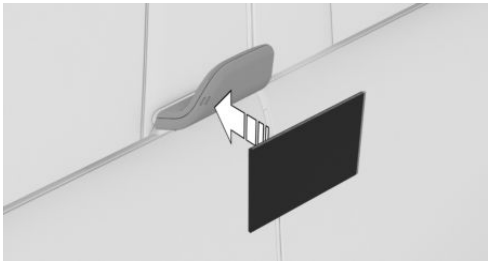
If the vehicle key or a digital key is not recognized due to a malfunction in the vehicle, the vehicle can be opened and closed via the driver's door window. The Setup Card is used for authentication on the driver's door handle and activation of the power window.

If the vehicle is de-energized, the hood must be unlocked and the vehicle battery charged.

Additional information:

Hood emergency release, refer to page 397.

Activating the power window

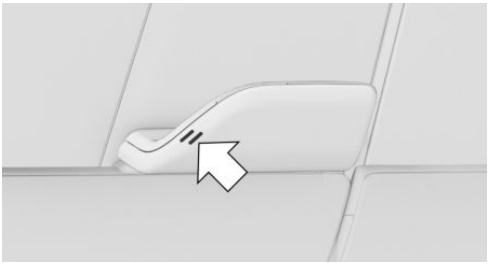


To activate the power window, hold the Setup Card in the middle of the driver's door handle and wait until the LED on the door handle illuminates.

Opening the driver's door

To open the driver's door, proceed as follows:

1. Press and hold the marked area on the door handle until the window in the driver's door opens completely.



2. Reach into the vehicle interior through the open window and pull the lever in the driver's door.

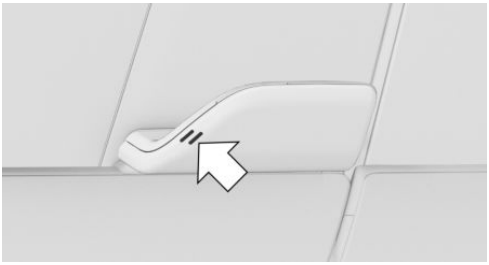
   The door is unlocked.



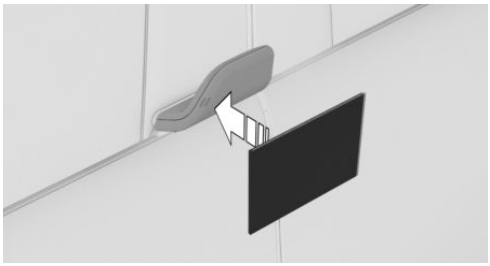
3. Pull the outer door handle to open the driver's door.

Close the driver's door

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press and hold the marked area on the driver's door handle until the window in the driver's door closes completely.



Deactivating the power window



To deactivate the power window, hold the Setup Card in the middle of the driver's door handle and wait until the LED on the door handle illuminates.

Turning off the alarm system

If the vehicle is opened via the driver's door window, an alarm may be triggered. The alarm can be deactivated by emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Emergency detection of the vehicle key, refer to page 102.

Automatic doors

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the automatic doors can be operated as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- Using the door handle.
- Inside the vehicle.
- With the My BMW app.

Multiple doors can be opened and closed at the same time.

The automatic doors can be stopped at any time and then opened and closed manually.

When opening and closing manually, the door movement is motor-assisted.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear while opening and closing.

WARNING

The system does not release the driver from their responsibility to assess the traffic and their surroundings. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Observe traffic and surroundings and actively intervene in corresponding situations, e.g., manually interrupt the door movement.

Functional requirements

To use the automatic doors, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle tilt is less than 10° in the longitudinal and transverse directions.
- The vehicle is at a standstill.
- The safety function is switched off. When the safety function is turned on, the rear doors cannot be operated from the vehicle interior, nor opened with the My BMW App.

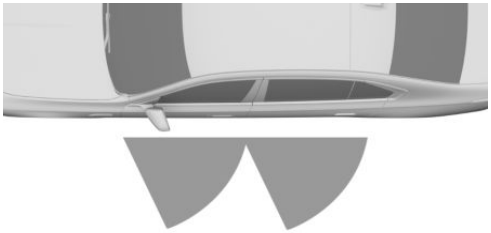
Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 134.

Detection of obstacles

When the doors open automatically, stationary and moving obstacles are detected by radar sensors under the following circumstances:

- The stationary obstacles are not closer than 10 in / 25 cm to the vehicle.
- The stationary obstacles are located below the window line.
- The detection range for moving obstacles is that of the Exit Warning.



The detection range of stationary obstacles.

If an obstacle is detected, a visual warning appears on the central display in Live Vehicle or in the Automatic Doors menu.

The respective door stops moving before the obstacle.

Additional information:

- Exit Warning, refer to page 330.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 39.

On the door handle

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Depending on national-market version, the doors can also be opened and closed automatically with the door handle using a compatible smartphones and a digital key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 103.

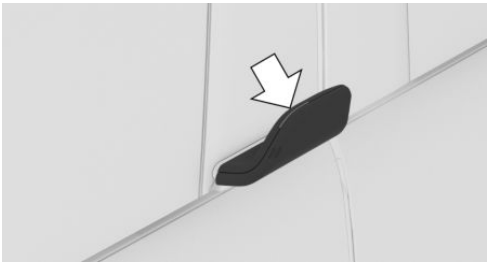
Functional requirements

To open/close using the door handle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to open/close the door with the digital key.
- Opening and closing by pulling the door handle or pressing against the outside of the door handle is enabled in the settings.

Opening the door automatically

When closed, doors can be opened automatically by briefly pulling the door handle or by briefly pressing the outside of the door handle.

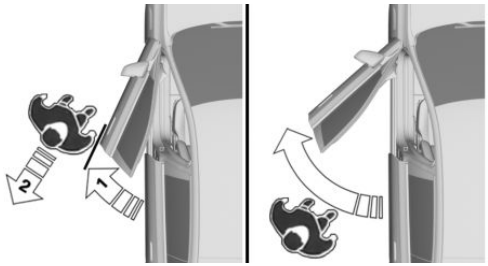


Inside of door handle:



Outside of door handle:

1. ▷ Grasp the door handle and pull it briefly.
   ▷ Briefly press against the outside of the door handle.
2. Leave the door's travel path if necessary.

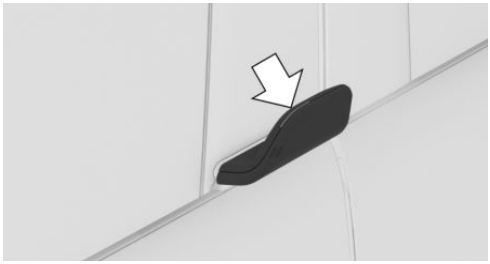


If the person opening the door is detected as an obstacle, the door stops, arrow 1. If the door's travel path is exited immediately, the door continues to move, arrow 2.

Briefly pulling the door handle again or briefly pressing the outside of the door handle again stops the door from moving automatically.

If the door does not continue to move, open the door manually.

Opening the door manually



Grasp the door handle and pull the door outward.

The movement of the door is motor-assisted.

Closing the door automatically

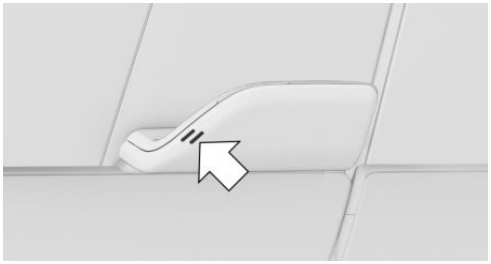


▷ Touch the outside of the door handle.

Touching the outside of the door handle again stops the door from moving.

▷ Push the door briefly.

Closing the door automatically via the marked area



To close the door automatically, proceed as follows:

1. Close one of the doors.
2. With your finger, touch and hold the marked surface on the handle of a closed door.

All open doors are closed automatically.

The vehicle is locked and the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection are closed.

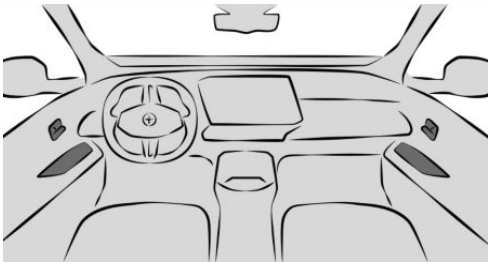
The exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Closing the door manually

Close the open door slowly and press slightly against the vehicle. The door closes automatically.

Inside the vehicle

Operating front doors



The automatic doors button is located on the front doors.

Press the automatic doors button to open or close the door automatically.

Pressing the button again stops it from moving.

Continue closing a stopped door by pressing the button again.

Operating rear doors



The automatic doors button is located on the rear doors.

Press the automatic doors button to open or close the door automatically.

Pressing the button again stops it from moving.

Continue closing a stopped door by pressing the button again.

On the central display

Doors can be opened, closed, and stopped, separately or together.

1. To operate the doors from the central display, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Automatic doors".
2. Select the desired function.

Operation of individual doors:

Icon	Meaning
 	Open the closed door.
 	Close the open door.
	Stop the door.
	Open all doors.
	Close all doors.

Live Vehicle can also be used for operation.

With the My BMW app

The My BMW app can be used to open and close automatically. To do so, a digital key for the vehicle must be installed on the smartphone.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 103.

Safety locks

If the vehicle is on a certain incline, e.g. on a slope, open doors are automatically closed to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. The doors close automatically within a period of approx. four to 30 minutes.

When the safety close activates, the following warnings are triggered:

- An acoustic warning sounds.
- A message appears briefly on the central display.

To ensure a continued air inlet, the window opens on the automatically closed door.

The vehicle is not locked.

Settings

Principle

There are various settings for the automatic doors depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Closing the driver's door with the brake pedal

The driver's door can be closed by depressing the brake pedal.

1. To activate/deactivate closing of the driver's door with the brake pedal, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Automatic doors".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. "Close driver's door with brake"
4. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting operation of door handle and interior buttons

Operation of the door handles and corresponding buttons in the vehicle interior can be adjusted.

1. To enable/disable the settings for operation of the door handle and buttons in the vehicle interior, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Automatic doors".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. "Configuration of door handle and button"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - "Button on the inside"

The automatic doors can be opened/closed automatically using the button in the vehicle interior.

- "Door handle"

  The automatic doors can be opened/closed automatically using the door handles.

Access to the cargo area

Principle

The cargo area can be opened and closed as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- In the cargo area.
- Inside the vehicle.
- Hands-free opening/closing.
- With the My BMW app.

The cargo area will be opened to the configured opening height.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

WARNING

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

WARNING

Sharp or pointed objects may strike the window glass and heating elements when driving. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects are not able to strike the window glass.

With the vehicle key

Principle

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the following settings can be changed:

- Unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key also unlocks the doors.
- Before unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key, first unlock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To open the cargo area using the vehicle key, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Opening with the vehicle key is enabled in the settings.
- The trailer socket is not occupied.
- Selector lever position P is engaged.

Opening the cargo area



To open the cargo area press and hold the open/close button for the cargo area on the vehicle key for approx. one second.

On the cargo area

Principle

The cargo area can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

The key is detected automatically when near the vehicle rear.

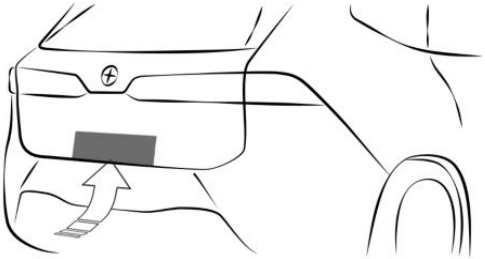
Depending on the national-market version, compatible smartphones with a digital key are also detected automatically. In this case, the cargo area can be opened with a smartphone.

Functional requirements

To access the cargo area using the cargo area, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to detect the digital key.

Opening the cargo area

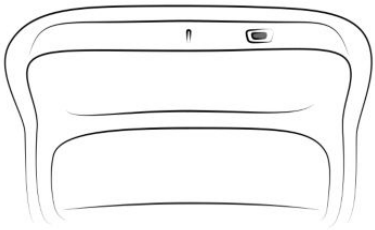


The cargo area can be opened as follows:

- Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outer side of the cargo area.
- Carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the cargo area.

  Locked doors are not unlocked.

Closing the cargo area



The cargo area can be closed as follows:

-  Press the button for closing the cargo area on the inside of the tailgate.
-  On the inside of the tailgate, press the lock button.

  The vehicle is locked after closing the cargo area. The driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the cargo area.
- Pull the tailgate down slightly. The tailgate closes automatically.

Inside the vehicle

Functional requirements

To access the cargo area from the vehicle interior, the following functional requirements must be met:

- To open, the trailer socket must not be occupied.
- To close, the vehicle key or digital key must be located in the vehicle interior.

When the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged before the tailgate can be opened using the button in the vehicle interior.

Opening the cargo area

 To open the cargo area, press the open/close button for the cargo area on the driver's door.

Closing the cargo area



To close the cargo area, pull and hold the open/close button for the cargo area on the driver's door.

An acoustic signal sounds before the cargo area is closed.

On the central display

The central display in the Live Vehicle can be used to open/close the cargo area or to stop movement of the tailgate.

Interruption of the opening procedure

It stops opening in the following situations:

- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key.

  Pressing the button again continues the opening process.
- By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening procedure.

Interruption of the closing procedure

It stops closing in the following situations:

- If the vehicle drives off with a jerky movement.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area

Principle

The cargo area can be opened/closed hands-free if the driver has a vehicle key with them.

Depending on the national-market version, hands-free opening/closing of the cargo area is also possible for compatible smartphones with a digital key.

Sensors detect specific foot movements in the middle rear area.

If contactless opening is used for the cargo area, the locked doors will not be unlocked.

If the vehicle key or digital key is located near the outside of the vehicle rear, the cargo area may open or close inadvertently if any movement is detected and interpreted as foot movement.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

With hands-free opening of the cargo area, there may be unintentional contact with vehicle parts, e.g., with the hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To open/close the cargo area hands-free, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- Hands-free opening/closing of the cargo area is activated in the settings.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to open/close the luggage compartment hands-free with the digital key.
- A vehicle key or digital key is located directly behind the cargo area.

Depending on vehicle equipment:

- The trailer socket is not occupied.

Hands-free opening of the cargo area

1. Carry a vehicle key or digital key with you.
2. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle, approx. one forearm's length from the rear of the vehicle.



3. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the driving direction and immediately pull it back. The foot movement is only complete when the foot has reached the ground again.



4. Wait until the hazard warning system flashes to confirm the foot movement. The cargo area opens automatically. If the foot movement is not detected, move your foot slightly to the right or left of center again, as necessary.

Moving a foot again will stop the opening proccedure. The subsequent foot movement will close the cargo area again.

Hands-free closing of the cargo area

To close the cargo area hands-free, move your foot in the same way as for opening the cargo area.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving a foot again will stop the closing process. The subsequent foot movement will open the cargo area again.

System limits

The detection of the foot movement may be limited due to the following external conditions:

- Ice, snow or slush on the rear of the vehicle.
- Dirt or road salt on the rear of the vehicle.
- Sensors dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers or covers.
- Paint work done incorrectly on the rear of vehicle.

Movement within sensor range may cause the cargo area to open/close unintentionally, e.g., when objects are lifted quickly into the rear of the vehicle, or due to the moving brushes of a car wash. To prevent the cargo area from opening unintentionally in such cases, make sure that the vehicle key or digital key is at a sufficient distance from the rear of the vehicle.

Malfunction

The vehicle may be unable to detect the vehicle key or the digital key if there are any objects or electronic devices between the vehicle key and the vehicle. Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects or electronic devices. For example, do not carry the vehicle key together with a smartphone. For

better recognition of the digital key, wear the digital key in front of your body.

With the My BMW App

The My BMW App Remote Services offer, among other things, the option to open/close the cargo area and to stop movement of the tailgate.

This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract, and the My BMW App must be installed on the smartphone used.

Malfunction

WARNING

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blocking. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the tailgate is experiencing an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate by hand with slow, smooth movements.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. The closing happens automatically.

Settings

Principle

There are various settings for access to the cargo area depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Setting the cargo area button on the vehicle key

To change the settings for the cargo area button on the vehicle key, a BMW ID or driver profile must be assigned to the vehicle key.

It is possible to choose where to assign the cargo area button on the vehicle key.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Keys" / "Tailgate button".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     The cargo area is opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     The cargo area is opened and the doors are unlocked.
   - ▷ "Tailgate opens only when unlocked"

     The vehicle must be unlocked before the cargo area can be operated with the vehicle key.
   - ▷ "Disable button"

     Operating the cargo area with the vehicle key is disabled.

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Tailgate".
2. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area

1. To configure the settings for hands-free opening/closing of the cargo area, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Tailgate" / "Operation by foot movement".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Open"

The tailgate can be opened by moving your foot.

▷ "Close"

The tailgate can be closed by moving your foot.

Central locking system buttons

Principle

The vehicle can be locked/unlocked from the inside using the central locking system buttons.

The vehicle is automatically locked when driving off.

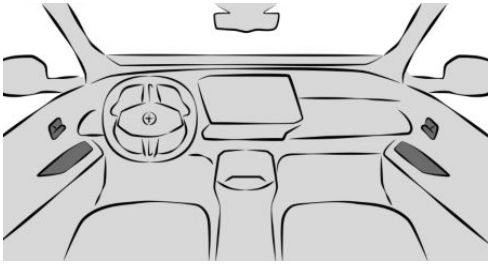
In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights are illuminated.

If the corresponding function is activated in the Door settings, all doors unlock whenever a door is opened from inside the vehicle.

Additional information:

Enabling/disabling unlocking of the doors, refer to page 109.

Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front doors.



The lock button.



The unlock button.

Locking the vehicle from inside



To lock the vehicle from the inside, press the lock button on one of the front doors when closed.

The LED in the button for locking illuminates.

Unlocking the vehicle from inside



To unlock the vehicle from the inside, press the unlock button on the front door.

Opening the door

1. To open a door, stop the vehicle.
2.  Press button on the door.

   Depending on the vehicle, press the button once or twice for a rear door.

   The door is unlocked and slightly open.
3. Push the door outward.

Opening and closing automatic doors

The automatic doors can be opened and closed automatically or manually.

Additional information:

Automatic doors, refer to page 113.

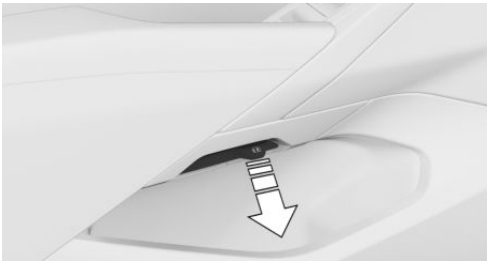
Malfunction

In case of a power failure, the doors can be unlocked manually.

1. To unlock the doors manually, pull the lever in the door.

   Depending on the vehicle, pull a rear door lever once or twice.

The door is unlocked.



2. Push the door outward.

Soft-close automatic function

Principle

The soft-close automatic function reduces effort and noise when closing vehicle doors.

The door can be pushed into the door lock without effort and the door will close automatically.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear while opening and closing.

Closing the doors

To close the doors, push lightly.

The closing process is automatic.

Storage compartment lock

Principle

The storage compartment lock enables the glove compartment to be locked by assigning a PIN. The PIN is assigned once.

The storage compartment lock can be used, e.g., when handing over the vehicle for valet parking.

Depending on national-market version, the storage compartment lock may not be available.

Activating the storage compartment lock

1. To activate the storage compartment lock, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Locking" / "Storage space locking".
2. Select the glove compartment function.

   The glove compartment is locked and the settings are PIN-protected.
3. "Activate"
4. Assign the desired PIN.
5. Confirm.

Deactivating the storage compartment lock

1. To disable the storage compartment lock, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Locking" / "Storage space locking".
2. "Deactivate"
3. Enter the PIN.

If the PIN for the storage compartment lock has been forgotten, the PIN can only be deactivated by resetting the vehicle data.

Resetting the vehicle data also deactivates the storage compartment lock.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page 92.

Saving the storage compartment lock as shortcut

A shortcut can be created so that it is easier to bring up the storage compartment lock on the central display.

1. To create a shortcut for the storage compartment lock, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Doors" / "Locking" / "Storage space locking".
2. Press and hold Storage compartment lock.
3. "Add to shortcuts".
4. Save.

Additional information:

Shortcuts, refer to page 53.

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are part of the alarm system.

The indicator lights on the interior mirror show the status of the alarm system, e.g., whether the alarm system is on or whether an alarm has been triggered.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Causes of an alarm

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- If a door, the hood, or the cargo area is opened.
- If movement is detected inside the vehicle.
- If the vehicle inclination has changed, e.g., due to an attempt to steal a wheel or when towing.
- If the battery voltage is interrupted.
- If the diagnostic socket is used incorrectly.
- If the vehicle is locked while a device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Optical alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system is activated or deactivated as soon as the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The alarm system does not turn on if the vehicle is locked manually from the inside.

Opening door with the Setup Card

The alarm system triggers when the driver's door window has been opened with the Setup Card and the driver's door has been unlocked from the inside.

If the vehicle is opened via the driver's door window, an alarm may be triggered. The alarm can be deactivated by emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Opening the cargo area with the alarm system switched on

The cargo area can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After closing the cargo area, the cargo area will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning system flashes once during closing.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

The alarm system can be triggered as follows:



- Press and hold the alarm system button on the vehicle key for at least three seconds.
- Press the alarm system button on the vehicle key three times in quick succession.

To turn off the alarm, press any button.

Indicator lights on interior mirror

The indicator lights on the interior mirror show the status of the alarm system:



- Indicator lights flash every two seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator lights flash for approx. ten seconds, then flash every two seconds:

  The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not activated because the doors, hood, or tailgate are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will turn on when all open access points are closed.
- Indicator lights flash even though all access points have been closed:

  Alarm system error.
- Indicator lights go out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- After unlocking, the indicator lights flash until drive-ready state is turned on, but no longer than approx. five minutes:

  The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt alarm sensor is part of the alarm system and monitors the vehicle inclination.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The interior motion sensor is part of the alarm system and monitors the vehicle interior.

The alarm system triggers when movement is detected inside the vehicle.

The windows and the SOS hatch in the headliner must be closed for this system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

Principle

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

An unintentional alarm can be triggered in the following situations:

- In car washes or tunnel car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains, ships, or trailers carrying vehicles.
- With animals in the vehicle.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be turned off as follows:

- As soon as the vehicle is locked, press the lock button on the vehicle key within 30 seconds.

  The indicator lights on the interior mirror illuminate for approx. two seconds then continue flashing.
- After standby is turned off, an option to turn off the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor appears on the central display.
- With a digital key via the My BMW App.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are deactivated until the vehicle is locked again.

Ending the alarm

To stop the alarm, unlock the vehicle.

Windows

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the windows can be operated as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- Using the door handle.
- Using the switches inside the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the windows is clear while opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening windows with the vehicle key

To open the windows with the vehicle key, unlock the vehicle, then press and hold the unlock button on the vehicle key.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing windows with the vehicle key

With Comfort Access: To close the windows with the vehicle key, lock the vehicle, then press and hold the lock button on the vehicle key.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

On the door handle

Principle

The windows can be closed using the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

General information

Function availability depends on vehicle equipment.

Depending on national-market version, the windows can also be closed via the door handle using a compatible smartphone and digital key.

Additional information:

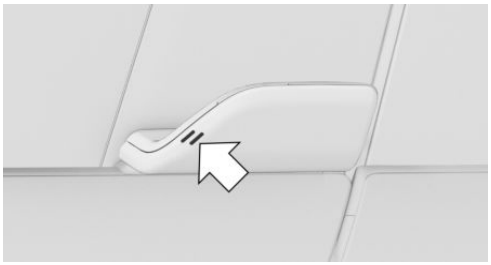
BMW Digital Key, refer to page 103.

Functional requirements

To close the windows using the door handle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key or a digital key with you, e.g. in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to close the windows with the digital key.

Closing windows with the door handle



To close the windows from the door handle, proceed as follows:

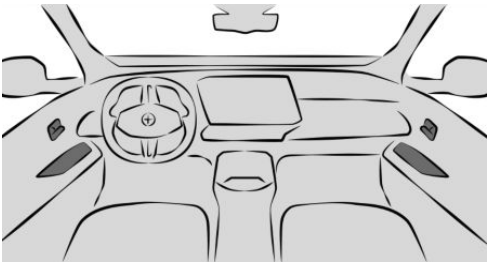
1. Close the door where the windows are to be closed.
2. With your finger, touch and hold the marked surface on the handle of a closed door.

The vehicle is locked and the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection are closed. If necessary, the automatic doors are closed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Inside the vehicle

Overview



The power window switches are located on the doors.

Functional requirements

The vehicle key or a digital key is inside the vehicle.

Opening windows

To open the windows, proceed as follows:

- On the door, press the power window switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- On the door, press the power window switch past the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing the windows

To close the windows, proceed as follows:

- On the door, pull the power window switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- On the door, pull the power window switch past the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically. Pulling again stops the motion.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts from becoming trapped between the door frame and window glass while a window closes automatically.

If resistance or blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing will be interrupted.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact anti-trap mechanism. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the travel path of the windows.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1.  On the door, pull the power window switch past the resistance point and hold it.

   The window closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a certain threshold, closing is stopped.

2.  On the door, pull the power window switch past the resistance point again within approx. four seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Open and close windows automatically

Principle

If the driver's window is frequently opened and closed at the same location, the opening and closing of the driver's window can be automated. This is useful if you frequently use the same parking garage, for example.

Functional requirements

The following functional requirements apply to automatic opening and closing of the driver's window:

- The location at which the driver's window is automatically opened and closed has been saved.
- Sufficient reception for position finding signal is ensured.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

To open the driver's window automatically, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle speed is below 6 mph / 10 km/h.
- The driver's window is closed when the saved location is reached.

To close the driver's window automatically, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle speed is above 6 mph / 10 km/h.
- The driver's window was opened automatically.
- The driver's window is not operated via the power windows.

Open and close windows automatically

1. To adjust the setting for automatic opening and closing of the driver's window, go to the following menu path: My Vehicle menu / "Doors".
2. Select the desired setting.

When this setting is activated, the driver's window opens automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches the previously stored location. The driver's window is automatically closed if the speed is above 6 mph/10 km/h.

Automatic closing takes place within two minutes of the driver's window being opened automatically.

Window roller sunblinds

Principle

The roller sunblinds on the rear windows reduce the sunlight entering the vehicle rear, keeping it cool.

Safety information

WARNING

With closed roller sunblinds and open windows, the roller sunblinds may be strained while driving due to the air stream. The roller sunblinds may be damaged and vehicle occupants may be harmed. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not open the windows while driving if the roller sunblinds are closed.

Functional requirements

To operate the roller sunblind, the corresponding window must be closed.

Operating the roller sunblind

Pull out the roller sunblind using the loop and hook it onto the holder.

Glass sunroof

Principle

The glass sunroof and sun protection can be operated as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- Using the door handle.
- Inside the vehicle.
- On the central display.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening glass sunroof



To open the glass sunroof, unlock the vehicle, then press and hold the unlock button on the vehicle key.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing glass sunroof



With Comfort Access: To close the glass sunroof, lock the vehicle, then press and hold the lock button on the vehicle key when close to the vehicle.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

On the door handle

Principle

The glass sunroof can be closed using the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Function availability depends on vehicle equipment.

Depending on the country, the glass sunroof can also be closed via the door handle using compatible smartphones and your digital key.

Additional information:

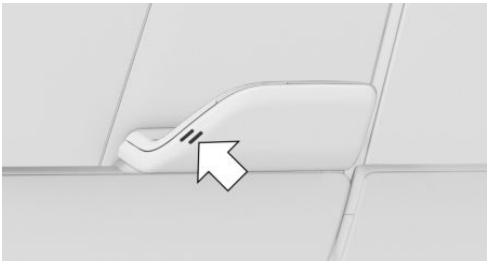
BMW Digital Key, refer to page 103.

Functional requirements

To close the glass sunroof using the door handle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to close the glass sunroof hands-free with the digital key.

Closing the glass sunroof with the door handle



To close the glass sunroof with the door handle, proceed as follows:

1. Close the door where the glass sunroof is closed.
2. Touch and hold the marked area on the door handle with your finger.

The vehicle is locked and the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection are closed. If necessary, the automatic doors are closed.

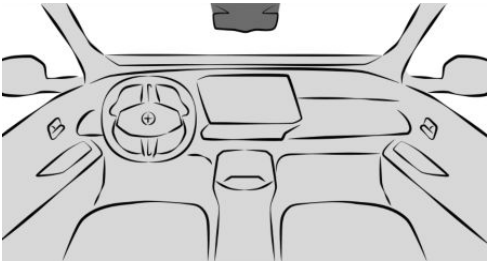
Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

Inside the vehicle

Principle

The glass sunroof and sun protection are operated using the same button.

Overview





The glass sunroof/sun protection button is located in the headliner.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and sun protection can be operated under the following conditions:

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be inside the vehicle.

Lifting/closing glass sunroof

To raise/close the glass sunroof, briefly press the glass sunroof/sun protection button in the headliner upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The raised glass sunroof and the sun protection are closed.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position.

  If the sun protection is fully open, the sun protection does not close.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately

To open/close the glass sunroof and sun protection separately, proceed as follows:

- Press the rear-facing arrow button for the glass sunroof and sun protection in the headlining.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already completely open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

  Pressing the button again stops it from moving.

- In the headlining, press the arrow button pointing to the front for the glass roof and sun protection.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or tilted, the sun protection closes automatically. An air gap remains in the raised position.

  Pressing the button again stops it from moving.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together

To open/close the glass sunroof and sun protection together, proceed as follows:

- Press the rear-facing arrow button for the glass sunroof and sun protection in the headlining twice in quick succession.

  The glass sunroof opens with a short delay after the sun protection.

  Pressing the button again stops it from moving.

- Press the forward-facing arrow button for the glass sunroof and sun protection in the headlining twice in quick succession.

  The sun protection closes with a short delay after the glass sunroof.

  Pressing the button again stops it from moving.

On the central display

To open/close the sun protection on the glass sunroof, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu /"Doors" /"Blinds".

Select the desired setting.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

If resistance or blockage is detected while closing the glass sunroof, it will stop closing.

Closing from the open position without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Turn on the drive-ready state or stop the vehicle if moving.
3.  Press and hold the forward-facing arrow button for the glass sunroof and sun protection in the headlining.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a certain threshold, closing is stopped.
4.  Press and hold the forward-facing arrow button for the glass sunroof and sun protection in the headlining again within approx. four seconds until the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism. Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Turn on the drive-ready state or stop the vehicle if moving.
3.  Press and hold the forward-facing arrow button for the glass sunroof and sun protection in the headlining.

Initializing after a power interruption

Principle

If the power is interrupted while opening or closing, it may not be possible to fully operate the glass sunroof. In this case, it can be helpful to initialize the system.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The outside temperature is above 41°F/5°C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Initializing the system

 To initialize the system, in the headliner, press and hold the middle glass sunroof/sun protection button until initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If closed, the glass sunroof or sun protection open and then close again.
- If the sun protection or glass sunroof are open, they close first, then open and close again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and the sun protection have opened then closed again.

Malfunction

In the event of a possible malfunction, note and follow the instructions on the central display.

Safety switch

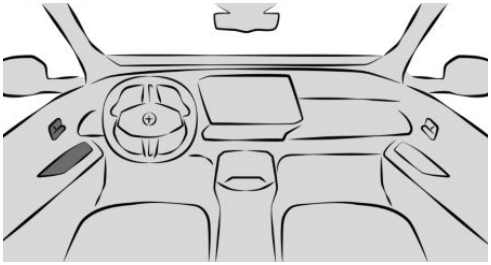
Principle

The safety switch can be used, for example, to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the opening and closing of the rear windows can be locked by pressing the safety switch via the switches in the rear or with the vehicle key.

Overview





The safety switch is located on the driver's door.

Turning the safety functions on/off



To activate/deactivate the safety function, press the safety switch on the driver's door.

The LED in the button illuminates when the safety function is switched on.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, having the correct seat position and using the protection systems correctly both play an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters:

- Front seats, refer to page 135.
- Seat belts, refer to page 139.
- Head restraints, refer to page 143.
- Airbags, refer to page 313.

Front seats

Safety information

WARNING

Adjusting the seat while driving can cause the seat to move unexpectedly, which may lead to an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.

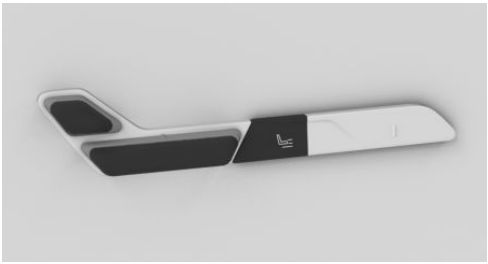
WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the seat belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview



The seat adjustment switches and the Seat Settings menu button are located on the front doors.

Seat settings menu



To open the Seat Settings menu directly from the central display, press

the Seat Settings menu button in the front door.

Electrically adjustable seats

Principle

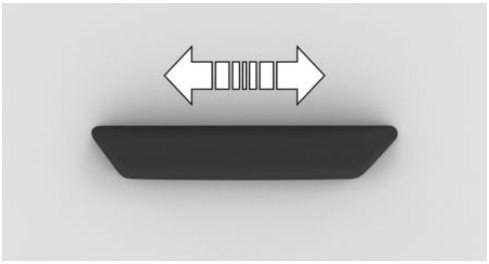
Electrically adjustable seats are operated using the switches on the front doors.

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Additional information:

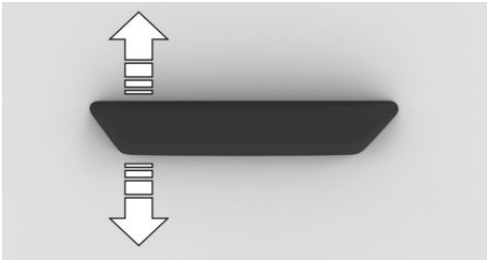
Memory function, refer to page 150.

Setting the longitudinal direction



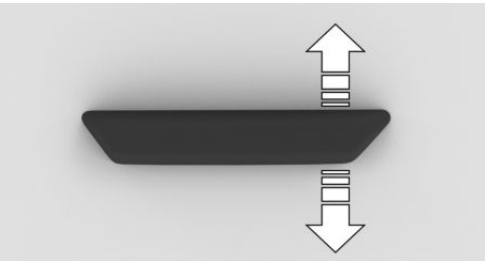
To adjust the longitudinal direction, push the longitudinal direction switch on the front door forward/backward.

Adjusting the height



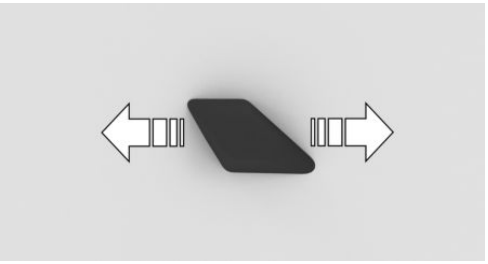
To adjust the seat height, push the seat height switch on the front door up/down.

Adjusting seat tilt



To adjust the seat tilt, push the seat tilt switch on the front door up/down.

Adjusting backrest tilt



To adjust the backrest tilt, push the backrest tilt switch on the front door forward/backward.

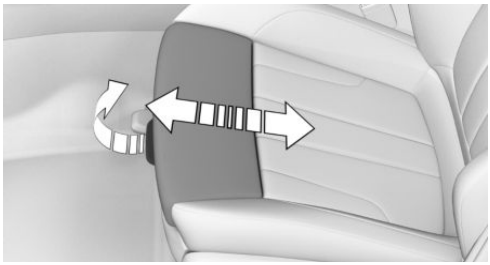
Adjusting the backrest width

1. To adjust the backrest width, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ To decrease the backrest width, use the corresponding inner arrow.
   - ▷ To increase the backrest width, use the corresponding outer arrow.

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width adjustment at very high and very low temperatures.

Thigh support

Sport seat



To adjust the thigh support, pull the thigh support lever at the front of the seat then push the thigh support forward or backward.

Multifunctional seat

1. To adjust the thigh support, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. Select the desired setting.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and spine are supported to promote an upright sitting position.

Adjusting the lumbar support

1. To adjust the lumbar support, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. Select the lumbar support setting.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ To increase the bulge, press the arrow to the left. To reduce the bulge, press the arrow to the right.
   - ▷ To move the bulge upwards, press the up arrow. To move the bulge downwards, press the down arrow.

Functional limitation

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Seat massage

Principle

Using the seat massage helps to relax the muscles and improve circulation in the lumbar region and shoulders, which, in turn, can help to prevent fatigue.

Turning the seat massage on/off

1. To activate/deactivate the seat massage, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. "Seat massage"
4. Select the desired setting.

Functional limitation

At very high temperatures, the operability of the seat massage may be restricted.

Calibrating the front seats

Principle

If the electric seat adjuster is no longer working properly, the front seats are calibrated automatically. The seat is calibrated automatically after the vehicle is exited and the doors closed.

A Check Control message appears on the central display when calibration is necessary. The front seats must be calibrated in order for the electric seat adjuster to work properly again.

Safety information

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Functional requirements

To calibrate the front seats, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- The seat to be calibrated is unoccupied.

Calibrating the front seat manually

1. To calibrate the rear seat position, press and hold the longitudinal direction switch backward until the seat stops.
2. Repeat step 1 until the seat stops then moves slightly in the opposite direction. The rear end position is calibrated.
3. To calibrate the front seat position, press and hold the longitudinal direction switch forward until the seat stops.
4. Repeat step 3 until the seat stops then moves slightly in the opposite direction. The front end position is calibrated.

Once the message on the central display disappears, calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If the message is still shown after repeated calibration, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Adjusting the seat position automatically

Principle

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. The seat position is saved during a journey with the vehicle.

The currently set seat position is saved for every journey with active BMW ID or active driver profile. If the seat position is adjusted and the vehicle is then driven, the seat position is saved again.

If the BMW ID or driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the last saved seat position will be applied automatically. When the BMW ID or driver profile is changed, the seat is automatically set to the position from the respective BMW ID or driver profile.

No seat settings are saved without an active BMW ID or active driver profile.

If comfort exit is enabled, the seat is set to its saved position when the seat belt is fastened or drive-ready state is turned on.

If comfort exit is disabled, the seat stays in the position from the active BMW ID or driver profile.

Additional information:

- Comfort exit, refer to page 139.
- BMW ID, refer to page 92.
- Driver profiles, refer to page 96.

Functional requirements

To automatically adjust the seat position and to save seat settings, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A BMW ID or driver profile is active.
- The vehicle is driven a short distance after adjusting the seat.

Activate/deactivate the function

1. To enable/disable automatic adjustment of the seat position, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. "Automatically use seat position"
4. Select the desired setting.

Comfort exit

Principle

The comfort exit setting makes it easier for the driver to get in/out of the vehicle by automatically adjusting the seat position. Comfort exit settings are saved to the active BMW ID or driver profile.

If comfort exit is disabled, the seat stays in the position from the active BMW ID or driver profile when getting in or out of the vehicle. The driver's seat is not moved. When the BMW ID or driver profile is changed, the seat is automatically set to the position from the respective BMW ID or driver profile.

Activating/deactivating comfort exit

1. To enable/disable comfort exit, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. "Comfort exit"
4. Select the desired setting.

Seat belts

Principle

The vehicle is fitted with five seat belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that seat belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace seat belts.

All seat belt anchorage points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect of the seat belts when used properly and with the correct seat settings.

The two outer seat belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center seat belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Use of a seat belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the seat belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not strap in more than one person per single seat belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, and must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

⚠ WARNING

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing seat belts correctly.

WARNING

With a rear seat backrest that is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. If you are using the middle seat belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

WARNING

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may be limited or fail in the following situations:

- The seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Seat belt tensioners or seat belt winders were modified.

Seat belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Keep clean and do not modify: Seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, seat belt winders, and seat belt anchors. After an accident, have the seat belts checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

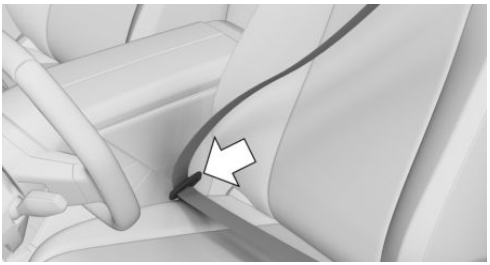
Correct use of seat belts

To use the seat belts correctly, note the following:

- Wear the seat belt so that it fits tightly to your body over your pelvis and shoulder and is not twisted.
- Wear the seat belt low down on your hips in the pelvic region. The seat belt must not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the seat belt against sharp edges or guide it across hard or fragile objects or jam it.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the seat belt frequently upward in your upper body area.

Fastening the seat belt

1. To fasten the seat belt, guide the seat belt slowly over the shoulder and pelvis.
2. Insert the buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. To unfasten the seat belt, hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the seat belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back into the seat belt winder.

Seat belt reminder

Principle

The seat belt warning warns the driver visually and acoustically if the seat belts are not fastened.

The seat belt reminder becomes active in the following situations:

- If the seat belt is not fastened on a seat.
- When the seat belt is unfastened while driving.
- When objects are lying on a seat.

Depending on the national-market version, sensors and the interior camera check whether the seat belts are fastened.

Additional information:

Interior camera, refer to page 35.

Display in the vehicle

The seat belt warning is shown on the following displays when drive-ready state is turned on and the seat belt warning is active:

- Indicator light on the driver's display.
- In the status field and in Live Vehicle on the central display.

If a seat belt warning appears, check whether the seat belts are fastened correctly.

Icon	Meaning
	Seat belt is not buckled.
	Seat belt is buckled on the corresponding seat.
	Seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding seat.

Presence Detection

Principle

Presence Detection indicates the possible presence of people and animals in the vehicle.

This function activates in the following situations:

- After parking the vehicle.
- If a door with access to the rear seat row is operated within 30 minutes before the start of a trip.
- If the trip is continued within 30 minutes.

The availability and range of functions of Presence Detection depend on the equipment and the country version.

If Presence Detection detects people or animals in the vehicle, the following warnings are triggered:

- After all doors have been closed and the vehicle has been locked, a visual or audible warning is given shortly after locking.
- During the warning, a message is sent to the My BMW App.

The interior camera is used to distinguish between children, adults, and animals on the front seats. If adults are detected on the front seats, no warning is issued.

Sensors detect people and animals on the rear seats.

Ending of the function is confirmed with a visual signal and sending of a message to the My BMW App.

Additional information:

Interior camera, refer to page 35.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its own limits, this system may not issue a warning or react, or may do so without justification. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not leave people, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To use Presence Detection and the warning via the My BMW App, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Presence Detection is enabled.
- The My BMW App is installed on the mobile terminal.
- The My BMW App is linked to a Connected-Drive account.

Disabling a warning

Warnings can be deactivated as follows:

- The persons or animals detected exit the vehicle.
- Presence Detection is disabled on the central display.
- Presence Detection is deactivated using the My BMW App near the vehicle.
-  Presence Detection is deactivated by quickly pressing the lock button on the vehicle key two times.

Goodbye screen on the central display

Presence Detection can be deactivated on the goodbye screen when drive-ready state is turned off.

To deactivate Presence Detection once, proceed as follows:

With alarm system:

1. ((•)) Tap the alarm systems icon.
2. Confirm the selection.

Without alarm system:

1. Tap the Presence Detection icon.
2. Confirm the selection.

The settings for deactivating Presence Detection can be configured on the goodbye screen.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, one of the following buttons can be selected:

- Alarm systems.
- Presence Detection.

To bring up the settings for deactivating Presence Detection, proceed as follows:

1. Tap the respective button again.

   The Presence Detection menu appears.
2. Select the desired setting.

Enabling/disabling Presence Detection

Presence Detection can be enabled and disabled.

To deactivate, the following options can be used:

- Deactivate once.

  Presence Detection is only disabled for the current trip. Presence Detection reactivates when the vehicle is unlocked again.

  If the vehicle is not locked within 15 minutes after Presence Detection is deactivated once, Presence Detection reactivates.
- Deactivate permanently.

  Presence Detection remains deactivated until it is activated manually.

  The deactivation is saved to the active BMW ID or driver profile.

1. To activate/deactivate Presence Detection, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Presence Detection".
2. Select the desired setting.

Additional information:

- BMW ID, refer to page 92.
- Driver profiles, refer to page 96.

System limits

The Presence Detection function can be triggered by various influences, e.g. in car washes or when there are balloons in the vehicle interior.

Front head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

The lack of protective effect due to removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- If possible, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- For manually adjustable head restraints: after adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

WARNING

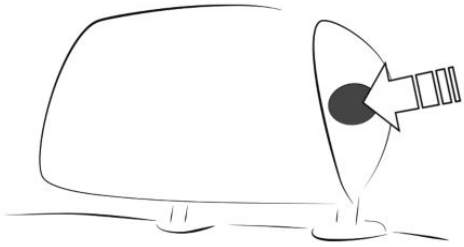
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Adjusting the height



- To lower the head restraint, press the release button on the head restraint then push the head restraint downward.
- To raise the head restraint, press the release button on the head restraint then push the head restraint upward.

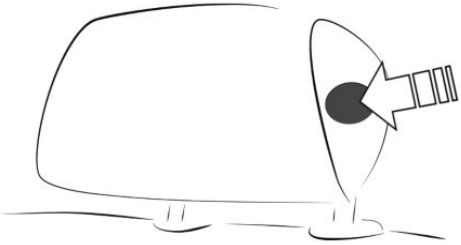
Adjusting the height: Multifunctional seat

1. To adjust the height of the head restraint, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. Select the desired setting:
   - To raise the head restraint, push the arrow upward.
   - To lower the head restraint, push the arrow downward.

Adjusting the distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

To move the head restraint forward, pull the head restraint forward.



To move the distance backward, press the button on the side of the head restraint, then push the head restraint backward.

Removing the head restraints

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

The lack of protective effect due to removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- If possible, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- For manually adjustable head restraints: after adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

WARNING

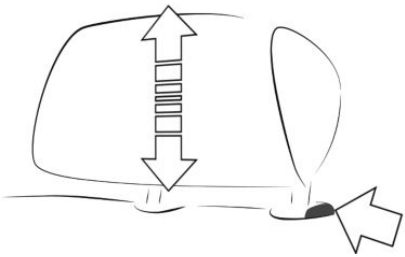
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

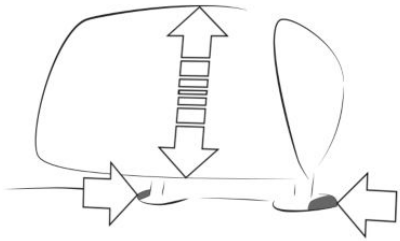
Outer head restraints: Adjusting the height



- To lower the head restraint, press the release button on the rear seat backrest and then push the head restraint downward.
- To raise the head restraint, push the head restraint upward.

Center head restraint: Adjusting the height

To improve your view to the rear, you can adjust the center head restraint so that it is fully down.



- To lower the head restraint, press both buttons on the rear seat backrest, then push the head restraint downward.
- To raise the head restraint, push the head restraint upward.

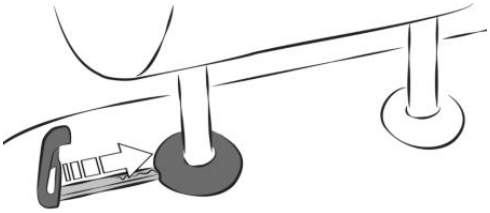
Removing/attaching the outer head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

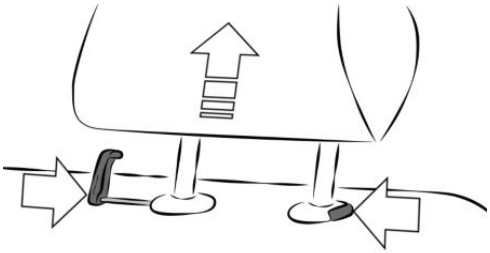
1. Fold down the corresponding rear seat backrest.

   To fold down the rear seat backrest, follow the steps for enlarging the cargo area.
2. Raise the head restraint to the resistance point.
3. Insert the integrated key.

Integrated key, refer to page 102.



4. Press and hold the integrated key and the button at the same time, then pull the head restraint completely out, arrows.



Proceed in reverse order to install the head restraint.

After installation, make sure that the head restraint engages.

Additional information:

Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 295.

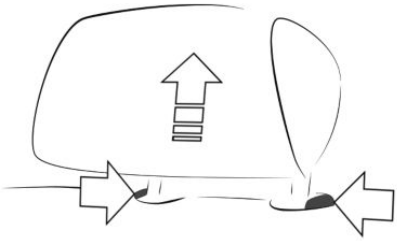
Removing/attaching the middle head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the corresponding rear seat backrest.

To fold down the rear seat backrest, follow the steps for enlarging the cargo area.

2. Raise the head restraint to the resistance point.
3. Press both release buttons on the rear seat backrest simultaneously, then pull the head restraint completely out.



Proceed in reverse order to install the head restraint.

After installation, make sure that the head restraint engages.

Additional information:

Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 295.

Pillow for head restraints in the rear

Principle

Cushions can be attached to the outer head restraints for increased comfort while driving.

Safety information

WARNING

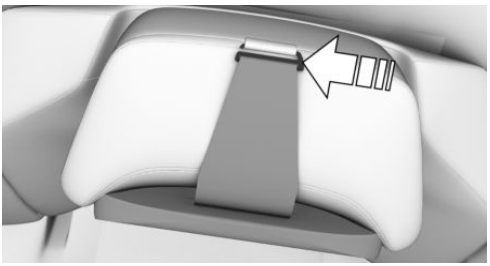
The protective effect of the head restraints may be limited or counteracted if the cushion is incorrectly fitted. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the top edge of the cushion is below the mark.

Attaching cushions

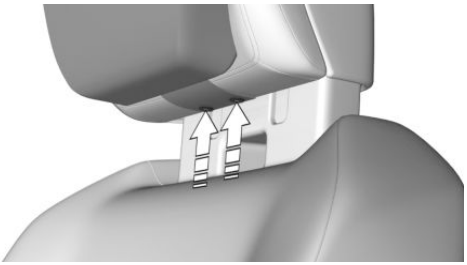
To attach the cushion to the head restraint, proceed as follows:

1. Attach the cushion with the clip to the tab on the back of the head restraint.

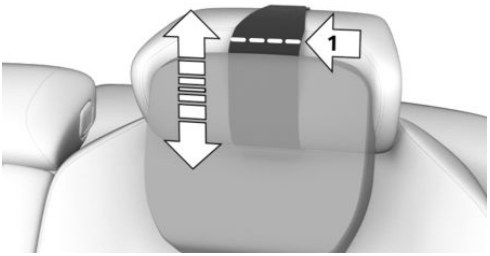
   Make sure that the tab sewn to the cushion is facing upwards.



2. Bring the head restraint to a sufficiently high position.
3. Close the push-buttons.



Adjusting the height



To adjust the height of the cushion, grasp the cushion with both hands and slide it up or down.

Adjust the height so that the top edge of the cushion is below the mark, arrow 1.

Exterior mirrors

Principle

For the exterior mirror adjustment, the interior camera automatically detects which exterior mirror the driver is looking at. Depending on the viewing direction, the corresponding exterior mirror can be adjusted without manually selecting the exterior mirror using the buttons on the driver's door.

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed.

The front passenger's side exterior mirror is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

Additional information:

Interior camera, refer to page 35.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Functional requirements

To select the exterior mirror automatically, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, camera, or microphone.

Overview



Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirrors in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select left exterior mirror. Automatic Curb Monitor.
	Select right exterior mirror.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

To adjust the exterior mirror, proceed as follows:

1. Engage selector lever position N or D.
2. Look at the exterior mirror being adjusted.
3.  On the driver's door, press the button for adjusting the exterior mirrors.

   The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

The LED does not illuminate.

Selecting an exterior mirror manually

-  To select the left exterior mirror manually, press the corresponding button on the driver's door. The LED illuminates.
-  To select the right exterior mirror manually, press the corresponding button on the driver's door. The LED illuminates.

Manually selecting an exterior mirror disables automatic selection of the exterior mirrors.

Automatic selection is reenabled shortly after the exterior mirrors are adjusted manually.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

Saving exterior mirror settings

Exterior mirror settings are automatically saved to the active BMW ID or active driver profile when drive-ready state is turned on. If the exterior mirrors are adjusted while standby is on, these settings are not saved automatically. When drive-ready state is on, the current settings can be saved using the central display.

If the BMW ID or driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored settings are used automatically.

Folding in/folding out the exterior mirrors

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in tunnel car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

 To fold the exterior mirrors in/out, press the button for folding the exterior mirrors in/out on the driver's door.

Folding is possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph /20 km/h.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

If folded in, the exterior mirrors fold out automatically at a vehicle speed of approx. 25 mph / 40 km/h.

Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor

Principle

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downward. Tilting the mirror glass downward improves the driver's view of the curb or other ground-level obstacles, e.g., when pulling into a parking space.

The last selected settings for the Automatic Curb Monitor are reapplied when the reverse gear is engaged next.

Activating the Automatic Curb Monitor

To activate the Automatic Curb Monitor, proceed as follows:

1. Engage selector lever position R.
2.  Press the driver's side exterior mirror button on the door. The LED illuminates.

The Automatic Curb Monitor remains on while reverse gear is engaged as long as the function is not deactivated.

When the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, the Automatic Curb Monitor is deactivated.

Deactivating the Automatic Curb Monitor

To deactivate the Automatic Curb Monitor, proceed as follows:

1. Engage selector lever position R.
2.  Press the front passenger's side exterior mirror button on the door. The LED illuminates and the LED of the driver's side outside mirror goes out.

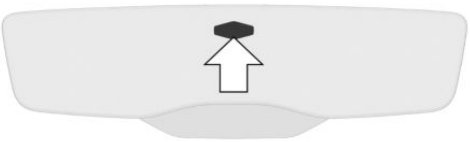
Interior mirror

Principle

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

This is controlled by photocells in the mirror glass.

Overview



The photodiodes are located in the mirror glass, arrow.

Functional requirements

The photocells must be kept clean for the auto-dimming interior mirror to function correctly.

Steering wheel

Safety information

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Electric steering wheel adjustment

Principle

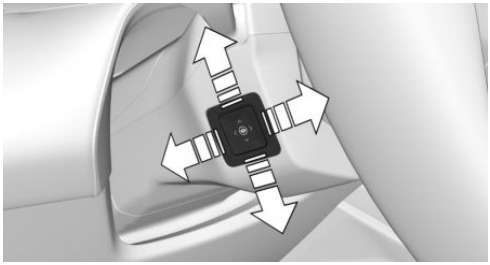
When the electric steering wheel adjuster is used, the steering wheel position is saved to the active BMW ID or driver profile. If the BMW ID or driver profile is reactivated later, the saved position is brought up automatically.

The current steering wheel position can be stored using the memory function.

To make it easier to get in/out of the vehicle, the steering wheel moves temporarily to the upper position.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The steering wheel position can be adjusted in height and longitudinal direction.



To adjust the steering wheel position, press the button on the steering column and adjust the longitudinal position and height of the steering wheel to match the seat position.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be saved and used as necessary using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Height of the Head-up display.
- Lumbar support position.
- Adjusting the backrest width.
- Steering wheel position.

The settings are adjusted on the central display.

Safety information

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Storing settings

1. To save your settings to the memory, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. Select the desired seat position.
4. Tap the icon for the SET button.

Calling up settings

1. To bring up the settings in the memory, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Seats".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. Select the desired seat position.

The process stops if a seat setting switch is operated or a seat setting is adjusted on the central display.

Follow the displays on the central display.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

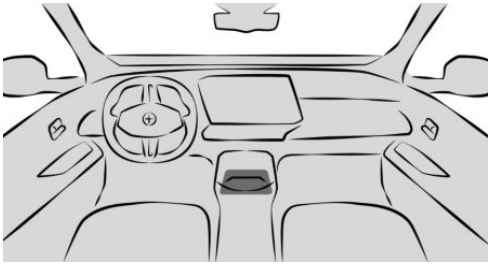
Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Start/Stop button

Principle

The Start/Stop button is used to turn the vehicle's drive-ready state on/off.

Overview



The Start/Stop button is located on the center console.

Turning drive-ready state on/off

Drive-ready state turns on when the brake pedal is depressed while pushing the Start/Stop button.

Pushing the Start/Stop button again will turn off drive-ready state and turn on standby state.

Additional information:

Operating states, refer to page 44.

Driving off

To drive off with the vehicle, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   Drive-ready state is turned on.
3. Engage the desired selector lever position, e.g., D or R.

   The parking brake is released automatically.
4. To drive off, release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

Artificial driving noise

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, acoustic pedestrian protection produces an artificial driving noise on vehicles with electric or electrically-assisted drives.

Additional information:

Acoustic pedestrian protection, refer to page 345.

Auto Start/Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start/Stop function helps to save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains on despite the engine being stopped. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

The Auto Start/Stop function switches to standby whenever the engine is started using the Start/Stop button.

The function is activated at low speeds.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

When stopping, the engine switches off automatically if the following requirements are met:

- Selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill, or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's seat belt is buckled, or the driver's door is closed.

Manual engine stop

If the engine does not shut off automatically when the vehicle is stopped, the engine can be shut off manually as follows:

- By quickly depressing the brake pedal from its current position.
- By engaging selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioning system when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is switched off.

View on driver's display



READY appears on the driver's display when the Automatic Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Functional limitations

The engine does not switch off automatically in situations like the following:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- If the brake pedal is not depressed firmly enough.
- When the outside temperature is high and the air conditioning system is on.
- If the vehicle interior has not been heated or cooled as desired.
- When there is heavy window condensation and the air conditioning system is on.
- If the engine or other parts are not at normal operating temperature.
- If the engine must be cooled.
- When the vehicle battery is deeply discharged
- At higher elevations.
- When the hood is unlocked.
- When Hill Descent Control is activated.
- For stop-and-go traffic.
- When selector lever position S or R is engaged.
- After reversing.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

When driving off, the engine starts automatically if the following requirements are met:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- If the accelerator pedal is pressed when Automatic Hold is activated.
- By the driver assistance systems activated, depending on vehicle equipment and driving situation.

Driving off with the Auto Start/Stop function

To drive off, accelerate normally after starting the engine.

Safety mode

If one of the following conditions is met, the engine will not start automatically after it has been stopped automatically:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and the driver's door is open.
- The hood has been unlocked.

Some indicator lights illuminate for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started using the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- With excessive warming of the interior when air conditioning is turned on.
- With excessive cooling of the interior when heating is turned on.
- When there is heavy window condensation and the air conditioning system is on.
- When selector lever position R is engaged.
- If the vehicle battery is deeply discharged.
- When starting an oil level measurement.

Deactivating Auto Start/Stop manually

Principle

In certain driving situations, e.g., traffic jams, it may be helpful to deactivate Auto Start/Stop manually. The engine will then no longer switch off automatically.

If this function is deactivated while the engine is being stopped automatically, the engine will start.

Via selector lever position or drive mode

The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated in the following situations:

- When selector lever position S is engaged.
- If Sport Mode is selected in My Modes.

On the central display

To deactivate the Automatic Start/Stop function from the central display, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Drivetrain" / "Auto Start/Stop".

Alternatively, the Automatic Start/Stop function can also be deactivated via quick access in the My Vehicle menu.

Depending on vehicle equipment, e.g., on vehicles with a diesel engine and mild hybrid technology, the Automatic Start/Stop function cannot be disabled from the central display.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

If the engine stops automatically, the vehicle can be parked safely as follows, e.g., to exit it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - Standby state is switched on.
   - Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Engage the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

Auto Start/Stop no longer switches off the combustion engine automatically in the event of a malfunction. A Check Control message is displayed on the instrument cluster. You may continue driving. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic transmission

Principle

The automatic transmission automatically shifts all gears for driving forward. Shift paddles allow you to shift manually as necessary.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving your vehicle, secure it against rolling away, e.g., by applying the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Display

The selector lever position engaged is indicated on the driver's display and selector lever.

Gear position D

Selector lever position D is the gear position used for normal driving. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

The vehicle drives off slowly when the brake pedal is released if Automatic Hold is not activated.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 158.

R reverse gear

To reverse, engage selector lever position R. Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary.

The vehicle drives off slowly when the brake pedal is released if Automatic Hold is not activated.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 158.

N Neutral

To push the vehicle or have it coast without using engine power, engage selector lever position N, e.g., in a tunnel car wash.

Parking lock, P

Selector lever position P is the gear position used to park the vehicle. In selector lever position P, the drive system is blocked.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After drive-ready state is turned off, if selector lever position R, D, N, or S is engaged.
- If the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, S, N, or R is engaged.

To prevent the vehicle from moving, make sure to engage selector lever position P and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 159.

Engaging selector lever positions

Principle

To prevent the vehicle from moving when a gear position is engaged or in reverse gear, depress and hold the brake pedal until ready to drive off.

In certain situations, e.g., to rock free on snow, it is possible to shift between reverse gear and gear position D without depressing the brake.

Functional requirements

To engage a selector lever position, the following functional requirements must be met:

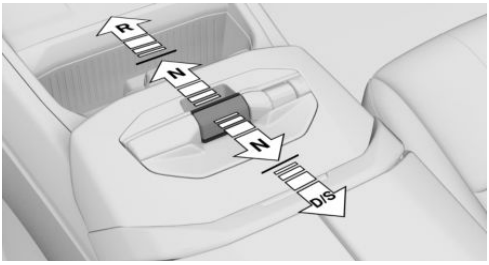
- The selector lever will only change from position P to another selector lever position if drive-ready state is on and the brake pedal is depressed.
- Selector lever position P cannot be disengaged until all technical prerequisites are met.

Engaging selector lever position R, N, D, S

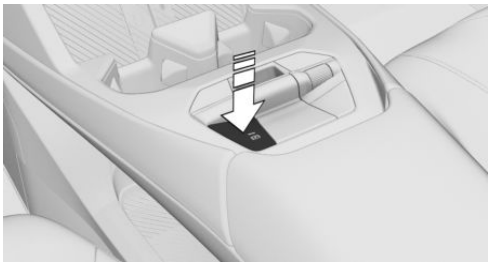
To engage selector lever positions R, N, D, or S, follow the steps below:

1. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
2. Tilt or pull the selector lever in the desired direction, past the resistance point as necessary. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

   To switch between selector lever position D and S, pull the selector lever to D/S.



Engaging selector lever position P



To engage selector lever position P, press the parking brake button on the center console.

The parking brake is applied and the parking lock is engaged.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

Principle

In some situations, the vehicle is supposed to coast for a short distance without using engine power, e.g., in a tunnel car wash or when pushing the vehicle.

Engaging selector lever position N

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a tunnel car wash.

To engage selector lever position N, proceed as follows:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. Engage selector lever position N.
4. Confirm the notification on the central display.

   The vehicle can coast without using engine power.

   The vehicle can be exited.

Irrespective of standby state, the selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approx. 35 minutes.

If the system is not operational, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

If necessary, release the parking lock electronically.

Additional information:

Releasing the parking lock electronically, refer to page 156.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum drive power in Drive mode.

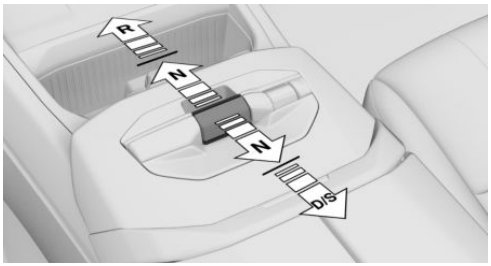
Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program S

Principle

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for sportier handling. The transmission shifts up later, for example, and the shift times are shorter, depending on vehicle equipment.

Activating the Sport program



Pull the selector lever from selector lever position D to D/S.

The engaged gear, e.g., S1, is shown on the driver's display.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Pull the selector lever to D/S.

D appears on the driver's display.

Releasing the parking lock electronically

Principle

To maneuver the vehicle out of a hazardous area, release the parking lock and parking brake electronically.

Before releasing the parking lock and parking brake, secure the vehicle in order to prevent it from rolling away, e.g., using a wheel chock.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Engaging selector lever position N

To engage selector lever position N, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the Start/Stop button three times in quick succession without pressing the brake pedal.
2. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the selector lever to position N and hold until position N appears on the selector lever.

An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

4. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Shift paddles

Principle

The shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to change gears manually.

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable RPM and road speeds.

Even in manual mode, the transmission shifts automatically in certain situations, e.g., when speed limits are reached.

Temporary manual mode

In selector lever position D, pulling a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

The engaged gear is also displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance D1.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Pull and hold the right shift paddle until D is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In Sport program S, pulling a shift paddle switches to manual mode M permanently.

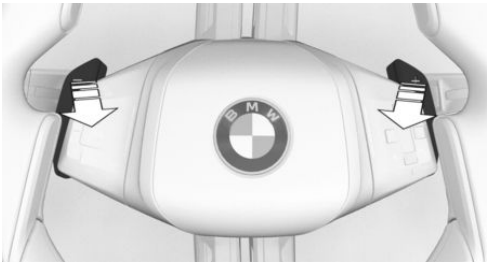
The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Pull and hold the right shift paddle until S is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.
- Pull the selector lever to D/S.

When M2 is set manually while the vehicle is stationary, the transmission will no longer shift back to M1. This shift behavior is maintained until M1 is engaged manually or manual mode M is exited.

Shifting



- For upshift, pull the right shift paddle.
- For downshift, pull the left shift paddle.

The selected gear is briefly shown on the driver's display, followed by the current gear.

Advanced mode

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the transmission offers an advanced mode with adapted shift characteristics.

- Automatic downshift to lowest possible gear.

  If the left shift paddle is pulled and held, the Steptronic transmission automatically shifts down to the lowest possible gear.
- Avoid automatic upshifting in manual mode.

In manual mode, the Steptronic transmission does not shift up automatically when speed limits are reached.

- There is no downshifting for kickdown.

Enabling advanced mode

The advanced mode is enabled in manual mode when Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the advanced mode can also be enabled in manual mode as follows, for example:

- Depending on vehicle equipment, activate "Sport", "M Sport", or "M Sport Plus" mode.
- Increased driving dynamics enabled.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

On inclines, in selector lever position D and R, the drive-off assistant prevents the vehicle from rolling away opposite the set driving direction and also provides drive-off support.

View on central display



When the parking brake indicator light on the central display illuminates green, the vehicle is secured against rolling away.

The vehicle is automatically held in place. The brake pedal can be released.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

Depending on the load and driving situation or when a trailer is used, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

If necessary, activate Automatic Hold and also apply the parking brake on the central display, as applicable. The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

Additional information:

- Automatic Hold, refer to page 158.
- Parking brake, refer to page 159.

Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, e.g., when driving off on inclines or in stop-and-go traffic.

When a gear position is engaged, the vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

In selector lever position N, Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Turning on standby or drive-ready state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

Drive-ready state must be turned on in order to activate/deactivate Automatic Hold.

Activating Automatic Hold

To activate Automatic Hold, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Chassis" / "Automatic Hold".



When Automatic Hold is activated, the indicator light for the parking brake on the central display illuminates green.



When driving, the indicator light changes from green to gray to show that Automatic Hold is ready.

Alternatively, Automatic Hold can also be activated via quick access in the My Vehicle menu.

Automatic Hold stops the vehicle

If Automatic Hold is activated and the driver's door is closed, the vehicle is automatically secured to prevent it from rolling away after stopping.



When the parking brake indicator light on the central display illuminates green, the vehicle is secured against rolling away.

The vehicle is automatically held in place. The brake pedal can be released.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the parking brake indicator light on the central display changes from green to gray.

The vehicle may roll back slightly when driving off, depending on the load and driving situation or when towing a trailer.

Drive off quickly to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

If necessary, also apply the parking brake on the central display. The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 159.

Deactivate Automatic Hold

To deactivate Automatic Hold, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Chassis" / "Automatic Hold".

The indicator light for the parking brake on the central display goes out.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also depress the brake pedal while deactivating.

Alternatively, Automatic Hold can also be deactivated via quick access in the My vehicle menu.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

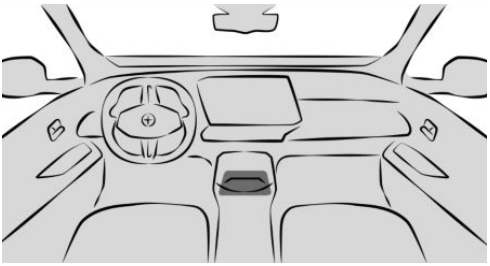
WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Turning on standby or drive-ready state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



The parking brake button is located on the center console.

Setting the parking brake

With a stationary vehicle

To engage the parking brake, press the parking brake button on the center console.

The LED on the parking brake button illuminates.

The parking brake is applied and parking lock is engaged.



The indicator light for the parking brake illuminates red on the driver's display.

While driving

Using the parking brake while driving serves as emergency braking.

To brake the vehicle, press and hold the parking brake button on the center console. The vehicle brakes hard for as long as the button is pressed.



The indicator light for the parking brake illuminates red on the driver's display.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed, an acoustic signal sounds and the brake lights illuminate.

The parking brake is applied and the parking lock engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Engaging the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically applied when the drive-ready state is switched off if the vehicle is secured against rolling away by another function such as Automatic Hold, at this time.

Additionally, the system can be set to always automatically engage the parking brake when the drive-ready state is turned off.

1. To always automatically engage the parking brake when drive-ready state is deactivated, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Chassis" / "Parking brake" / "Apply parking brake automatically".
2. Select the desired setting.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

To release the parking brake manually, proceed as follows:

1. Switch on the drive-ready state.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3.  Press the parking brake button on the center console.

   The LED on the parking brake button goes out. The red indicator light in the driver's display goes out.

   The parking brake is released.

   The parking lock remains engaged until a gear position is selected.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake releases automatically in the following situations:

- When switching from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.
- When driving off.

The LED on the parking brake button goes out. The red indicator light in the driver's display goes out.

Operating the parking brake on the central display

The parking brake can be engaged or disengaged on the central display. When the parking brake is operated on the central display, the current selector lever position remains engaged. Additionally, further information is displayed.

1. To operate the parking brake from the central display, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Chassis" / "Parking brake".
2. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction



If the electromechanical parking brake malfunctions or fails, the indicator light for the parking brake on the central display illuminates yellow.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after getting out of the vehicle.

After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake operability after a power interruption, an initialization may be required.

1. Activate standby state.
2.  Press the parking brake button on the center console.
3.  Press the parking brake button again after 2 seconds.

   The Check Control messages for the parking brake go out.

   Possible function-related noises are normal.

 The indicator light for the parking brake illuminates red on the driver's display and indicates that the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Launch Control

Principle

Launch Control ensures optimum acceleration on roads with good traction and with dry ambient conditions.

Using Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, increased drive power is provided when driving off with Launch Control.

Do not turn the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Do not use Launch Control when breaking in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Break-in procedure, refer to page 164.

Driving off with Launch Control

Depending on vehicle equipment, My Moment Launch Control can assist with performing the necessary steps.

To drive off with Launch Control, proceed as follows:

1. Switch on the drive-ready state.
2. Engage forward gear.
3. Depending on vehicle equipment, activate "Sport", "M Sport", or "M Sport Plus" mode.
4. Set the Dynamic Stability Control to Dynamic Traction Control.

    The Dynamic Stability Control indicator light illuminates in the driver's display.
5. Do not turn the steering wheel.
6. Depress the brake pedal firmly with the left foot.
7. Press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold.

   Launch Control information is shown on the driver's display.
8. Release the brake pedal within a few seconds of the Launch Control information illuminating.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Launch Control stays on as long as the Launch Control information is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

My Moments, refer to page 164.

My Modes

Principle

My Modes correspond to the different drive modes of the vehicle.

My Modes can be used to adjust vehicle handling and customize the overall experience and

effects of the vehicle interior, depending on the situation.

Depending on vehicle equipment and mode selected, the following systems may be affected, e.g.:

- Drive system.
- Steering.
- Suspension.
- Recuperation level.
- The displays.
- Comfort functions in the vehicle interior, e.g., the ambient lighting and climate control functions.

Various My Modes are available depending on vehicle equipment.

My Modes in detail

Personal Mode

Personal Mode is a drive mode that ensures a personalized ambiance in the vehicle interior and comfortable vehicle handling.

Sport Mode

Sport Mode is a drive mode that ensures sporty vehicle handling with greater agility.

Additional information:

- Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 319.
- Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 320.

Efficient Mode

Efficient Mode is a drive mode that ensures consumption-optimized, comfort-oriented vehicle handling and provides an anticipatory display.

Additional information:

- Efficient mode, refer to page 362.
- Efficiency Coach, refer to page 363.

Silent Mode

Silent Mode is the drive mode for a stripped-back view of the displays in the vehicle interior and comfort-oriented vehicle handling.

Selecting My Modes

1. To select a My Mode, go through the menu as follows: My Modes and My Moments menu / "My Modes".
2. Select the desired mode.

Configuring My Modes

My Modes can be configured individually.

Different ranges of adjustments are available depending on the mode selected.

1. To configure a My Mode, go through the menu as follows: My Modes and My Moments menu / "My Modes".
2. Select the desired mode.
3. "Configure"
4. Select the desired settings:
   - "Design"In Personal Mode, the color scheme of the displays and the ambient lighting can be set and saved in several memory locations. Various color palettes and ready-made background images are available. It is also possible to add your own background images using the My BMW App.
   - "Driving experience": Depending on the selected mode, various driving experience settings can be configured, e.g., for the drive, chassis, or recuperation level.
   - "General": Depending on the selected mode, it is possible to configure whether and how the displays on BMW Panoramic Vision adapt to the respective mode. In addition, the selected mode can be reset to factory settings.

Setting start mode

Start mode activates when drive-ready state is turned on.

1. To set start mode, go through the menu as follows: My Modes and My Moments menu / "My Modes".
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Start mode"
4. Select the desired mode.

My Moments

Principle

My Moments are programs that can be selected in addition to My Modes and allow various vehicle functions to be coordinated with one another. Some My Moments can be combined with other My Moments.

The respective My Moment selected affects the following systems temporarily or continuously:

- The displays.
- Ambiance of the vehicle interior.
- Comfort functions.
- Drive system.

Depending on vehicle equipment, various My Moments can be used permanently, for a limited time, or possibly after a software update.

Enabling/disabling My Moments

1. To enable/disable My Moments, go through the menu as follows: My Modes and My Moments menu / "My Moments".
2. Select the desired program.

Depending on the My Moment enabled, the corresponding app opens or an animation plays.

When the animation is playing, tap on the central display to disable the selected My Moment.

Break-in procedures

General information

Moving parts need to interact with one another smoothly.

The following break-in procedures will help the vehicle achieve a long service life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km, do not exceed the maximum engine speed and vehicle speed:

- Gasoline engine: 4,500 rpm and 100 mph / 160 km/h.

Avoid full throttle or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km, the engine speed and the vehicle speed can be gradually increased.

Tires

For technical reasons, new and unused tires do not yet ensure optimum adhesion to the

road. The adhesion improves after a short running-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake disks and brake pads must be broken in to avoid the conditions that can lead to brake noise. Drive carefully for the first 300 miles/500 km.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedure should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust gas or water may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

Drive with the tailgate closed. If it is necessary to drive with the tailgate open, note the following:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Increase the blower output of the air conditioning system significantly.
- Drive moderately.
- Secure the tailgate, e.g., with a tensioning belt.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., underground garage entrances, speed bumps or curbs, the ground may come into contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available. Adjust your driving style to the respective conditions.

Driving at high speeds

WARNING

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact handling at high speeds. This includes, among other things, tires, underbody and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Have damage corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe, when hot.

WARNING

If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts while driving, in Neutral or during parking.

Exhaust gas particulate filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particulate filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particulate filter as necessary.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an exhaust particulate filter. For more information on the exhaust particulate filter, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The following may occur when cleaning for several minutes:

- The combustion engine may not run as smoothly for a short time.
- A somewhat higher RPM is necessary to reach usual power development.
- Fuel consumption may be higher. The higher fuel consumption is included as mean value in the display for the current consumption.
- The exhaust system is emitting a small amount of smoke, even after the engine is shut off.
- There is audible noise, e.g., radiator fan is running, even several minutes after the engine is shut off.

  Overrun of the radiator fan for several minutes is normal even after short trips.

Continuously using a low-load driving style can negatively affect the self-cleaning function of the exhaust particulate filter. In this case, a Check Control message appears.

Condensation in drive system

Various driving profiles ensure that the drive system functions properly. A driving style with consistently low loads can negatively affect overall functionality, e.g., condensation formation in the drive system. Occasionally running the engine longer with higher loads can counteract this.

If, in vehicles with a gasoline engine, condensation has formed in the drive system, a corresponding Check Control message appears. In this case, on the next drive outside of town, proceed as follows for approx. 30 minutes:

- Deactivate the driver assistance systems.
- Activate Sport Mode via My Modes.
- If possible, drive at varying speeds.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, observe the following:

- Only drive through when the combustion engine is running.
- To prevent the combustion engine from being switched off by the Auto Start/Stop function, engage selector lever position S.
- The combustion engine also does not shut off in selector lever position R.
- Only drive through calm water.

- Drive through water at a maximum of walking speed, up to 3 mph /5 km/h.
- Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 19.6 inches / 50 cm.

Additional information:

Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 151.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through deep water, the water can penetrate the engine compartment, the electrical system, or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

Safety information

WARNING

Light but constant pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear, and even failure of the brake system. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system. Do not continuously depress the brake pedal and accelerator pedal at the same time. Do not let your foot rest on the brake pedal.

Antilock Braking System

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System as a standard feature. Perform emergency braking as required by the situation. To achieve the best possible braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering movement.

Sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System is regulating.

Objects in the travel path of the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

- Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell.
- Use (carpet) floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely attached to the floor.
- Do not use loose floor mats, and do not layer multiple floor mats on top of one another.
- Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals.
- Make sure that floor mats are securely reattached after removing them, e.g., when cleaning.

Pedal feel when driving off

After turning on drive-ready state from idle state, the pedal may feel unusual, e.g., the pedal travel path may feel short or long. After the brake pedal has been fully released, the pedal will feel as usual again.

Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt or in heavy rain, gently depress the brake pedal every few kilometers. Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way the brake power will be available when you need it.

Hills

Principle

Use the braking effect of the drive system on downhill gradients.

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat and reduce braking effect.

You can increase the engine braking effect by downshifting, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

In Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may be restricted or not available. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not attempt to drive in Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off.

Brake disk corrosion

Corrosion on the brake disks and soiling of the brake pads are increased under the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended stationary periods.
- Low load.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake disks causes a pulsating effect on the brakes when braking slowly, which generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

Condensation may form in the vehicle's air-conditioning system and exhaust system.

Condensation escaping under the vehicle is not a cause for concern.

Bright interior

With light interior colors, reflections may naturally occur on the side windows or exterior mirrors, depending on the incidence of light.

Driving on poor roads

Principle

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety and the safety of passengers, as well as of your vehicle when driving on poor-quality roads, note the following:

- Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving off.
- Do not take risks when driving.
- Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower your speed should be.
- When driving on steep uphill or downhill gradients, add engine oil up to near the max. level mark.

- Use Hill Descent Control when driving on steep downhill gradients.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, use the high level of the adaptive 2-axle air suspension.
- Do not allow the vehicle body or underbody to come into contact with the ground.
- To ensure the best possible traction when driving off, activate Dynamic Traction Control as necessary.
- If the wheels continue to spin, press the accelerator pedal with enough force that the driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels.

Additional information:

- Adaptive 2-axle air suspension, refer to page 255.
- Hill Descent Control, refer to page 211.
- Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 320.

After a trip on poor roads

To ensure driving safety, check the wheels and tires for damage after driving on poor-quality roads. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

If the vehicle body or underbody has come into contact with the ground, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving on racetracks

General information

Before and after driving on a racetrack, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M sport or motorsport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage.

Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motorsport-like competition. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the vehicle for motorsport or motorsport-like competitions.

Sport tires

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using special sport tires, e.g., high-performance tires. Sports tires are matched to the special requirements of a sporty driving style. For more information on sport tires, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Light and view

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Turn signal

Principle

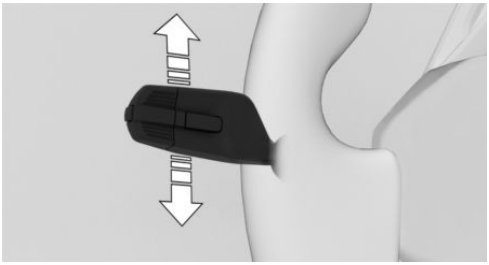
The turn signal indicates the change in your direction of travel. To indicate a turn, the following functions can be used:

- Flashing.
- One-touch signaling.
- Brief flashing.

Turn signal in exterior mirror

To ensure that the turn signal lights on the exterior mirrors are clearly visible, do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving or while using the turn signals or hazard warning system.

Flashing



To flash the turn signal, push the turn signal lever up or down past the resistance point.

One-touch signaling

For one-touch signaling: Lightly tap the turn signal lever up or down.

The one-touch signaling duration can be adjusted.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Exterior lighting".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. "One-touch signaling"
4. Select the desired setting.

Brief flashing

To flash the turn signal briefly: Push the turn signal lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

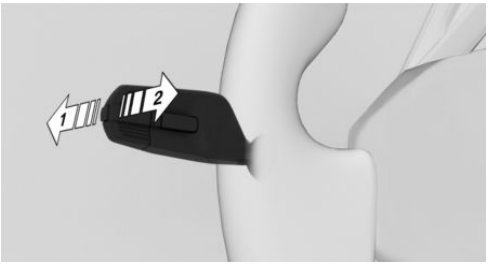
High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Principle

The high-beam headlights illuminate the road, also at great distances. The headlight flasher is used to emit a brief light signal by actuating the high-beam headlights. The high-beam

headlights can be turned on/off manually at any time.

High-beam headlights, turning headlight flasher on/off



To turn on the high-beam headlights, push the turn signal lever forward, arrow 1. The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

To turn off the high-beam headlights or operate the headlight flasher, pull the turn signal lever backward, arrow 2.

The blue indicator light on the central display illuminates when the high-beam headlights or the headlight flasher are activated.

High Beam Assistant

Principle

The High Beam Assistant promptly detects other road users as well as the ambient lighting, e.g., in towns, and automatically switches the high-beam headlights on or off depending on the traffic situation.

It may be necessary to activate the High Beam Assistant on the central display before it can be used. The turn signal lever can be used to temporarily deactivate or activate the High Beam Assistant, e.g., after turning the high-beam headlights on/off manually.

In the low speed range, the high-beam headlights are not switched on by the High Beam Assistant.

Functional requirements

To use the High Beam Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The automatic driving lights control is activated.
- The low-beam headlights are turned on.

Activating High Beam Assistant

1. To activate the High Beam Assistant, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Exterior lighting".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. "High Beam Assistant"
4. Select the desired setting.

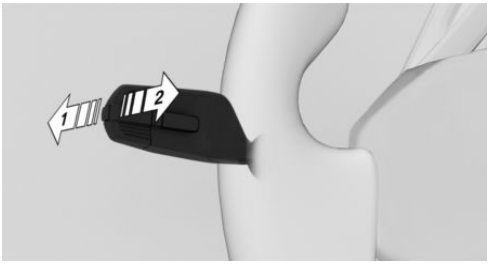
The headlights are automatically changed between low-beam headlights and high-beam headlights.

The green indicator light on the central display illuminates when the low-beam headlights are activated.

The blue indicator light on the central display illuminates when the system activates the high-beam headlights.

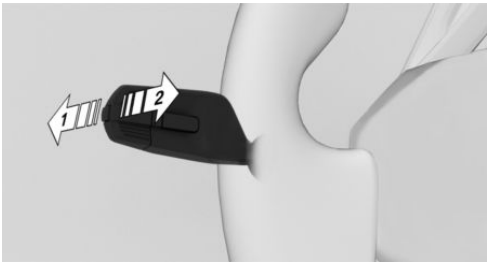
If the Automatic High Beam Assistant is on and you continue driving after an interruption, the Automatic High Beam Assistant will remain on.

The High Beam Assistant deactivates when the high-beam headlights are turned on/off manually.



To reactivate the High Beam Assistant, press the turn signal lever up, arrow 1.

Deactivating High Beam Assistant



Press the turn signal lever forward, arrow 1, or pull the turn signal lever backward when the high-beam headlights are on, arrow 2.

If the High Beam Assistant is deactivated on the central display, it cannot be operated using the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Turn off the high-beam headlights manually if required.

Functional requirements

To adjust the sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Adjustment is possible only while your vehicle is stationary.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- For US models: The low-beam headlights are turned off.

Increasing sensitivity

To increase the sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant, push the turn signal lever forward for approx. 20 seconds.

A message appears on the central display. The system responds more sensitively.

Resetting the sensitivity

To reset the sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant, push the turn signal lever forward again for approx. 20 seconds or turn off drive-ready state.

A message appears on the central display. The sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The High Beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of when to use the

high-beam headlights. Turn off the high-beam headlights manually in situations that require a person to act.

The system may not be fully operational in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users, e.g., pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders, and carts/wagons, when driving near a train or ship, or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in the area in front of the interior mirror is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Exterior lighting

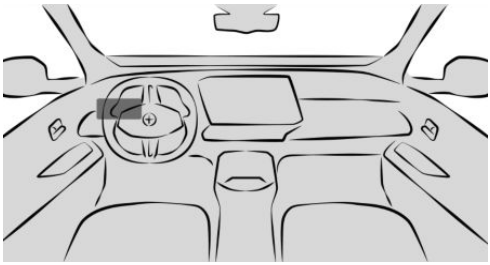
Principle

The exterior lighting comprises all lighting elements on the outside of the vehicle. The exterior lighting, or individual functions of it, can be operated using the buttons in the vehicle, the buttons on the vehicle key, or on the central display.

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



The exterior lighting switch and buttons are located on the turn signal lever, to the left of the steering wheel.

Icon	Function
	Exterior lighting menu.
	Low-beam headlights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

Functions on central display

Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control.
	Low-beam headlights.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

Icon	Function
	High Beam Assistant.
	Parking lights.
	Left roadside parking light.
	Right roadside parking light.

Buttons on the vehicle key

Icon	Function
	Interior lighting. Parts of the exterior lighting.
	Pathway lighting.

Automatic driving lights control

Principle

The automatic driving lights control switches the low-beam headlights on or off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, e.g., in tunnels, at dusk, or with precipitation.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be turned on.

The automatic driving lights control is deactivated if you turn on the low-beam headlights manually.

Automatic driving lights control



To activate the automatic driving lights control, turn the outer switch on the turn signal lever upward.

The LED under the automatic driving lights control icon illuminates.



The green indicator light on the central display illuminates when the low-beam headlights are activated.

System limits

The automatic driving lights control cannot replace your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, turn the lights on manually.

Low-beam headlights, parking light, and roadside parking light

Principle

The low-beam headlights are used to illuminate the road without dazzling oncoming traffic. The parking lights and roadside parking lights are used to illuminate the vehicle when stationary. These functions can be operated using the buttons in the vehicle or on the central display.

Low-beam headlights

Turning on low-beam headlights



To turn on the low-beam headlights, turn the outer switch on the turn signal lever downward.

The low-beam headlights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.



The green indicator light on the central display illuminates when the low-beam headlights are activated.

To turn on the low-beam headlights even when standby is on, turn the outer switch on the turn signal lever downward again.

Turning off low-beam headlights

Depending on national-market version, the low-beam headlights can be turned off as follows at low speeds:

- OFF Press the OFF button on the turn signal lever.
- Turn off the light on the central display.

Parking lights

General information

The parking lights can only be turned on at low speeds.

Turning on parking lights

1. To turn on the parking light, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Exterior lighting".
2. Tap the parking light icon.



The green indicator light on the central display illuminates when the parking light is turned on.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods, as otherwise this may drain the vehicle battery, which then may make it impossible to turn on the drive-ready state.

Turning off parking lights

The following options are available to turn off the parking lights:

- OFF Press the OFF button on the turn signal lever.
- Turn off the light on the central display.
- Switch on the drive-ready state.

  When drive-ready state is turned on, the automatic driving lights control activates.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

1. To turn on the roadside parking light, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Exterior lighting".
2. Tap the roadside parking light icon on the desired side of the vehicle.

Welcome lights

Principle

The welcome light turns on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the lighting effects and exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

The welcome light can be activated or deactivated.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Orchestration".
2. Select the desired setting, depending on vehicle equipment.

Additional information:

Welcome and goodbye, refer to page 98.

Turning on the welcome light

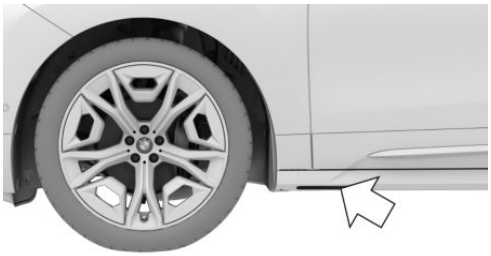
You can turn on the welcome light as follows:

- Automatic activation when approaching.
- Activation when unlocking vehicle with the vehicle key.
- With the vehicle locked, press the lock button on the vehicle key.

  Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

  This function is not available for the first ten seconds after locking.

Welcome Light Carpet



The light source is located in the rocker panel in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

Principle

For the pathway lighting, the exterior lighting that illuminates the vehicle's surroundings turns on for a certain period of time after leaving the vehicle.

Switching pathway lighting on

You can turn on the pathway lighting as follows:

- After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.
- On the vehicle key, press and hold the panic button for approx. one second.

Setting the duration

You can configure the duration of pathway lighting.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Exterior lighting".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. "Pathway lighting"
4. Select the desired setting.

Daytime driving lights

Principle

The daytime driving lights are used to ensure that the vehicle is more visible, e.g., in areas with sharply changing light conditions.

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Exterior lighting".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. Depending on vehicle equipment or national-market version, select the desired setting:
   - "Daytime driving lights"
   - "BMW Iconic Glow"

BMW Iconic Glow

Principle

BMW Iconic Glow enhances the parking lights, low-beam headlights, and daytime driving lights.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, BMW Iconic Glow includes the following functions:

- Radiator grille lighting.
- Front spotlight.
- Rear spotlight.

Activating/deactivating BMW Iconic Glow

1. To activate/deactivate BMW Iconic Glow, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Exterior lighting".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. "BMW Iconic Glow"

Depending on national-market version, BMW Iconic Glow may deactivate in Efficient Mode according to the ambient brightness.

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

The adaptive lighting functions provide dynamic illumination of the road.

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- Cornering light.

Activating/deactivating adaptive lighting functions



To activate the adaptive lighting functions, turn the outer switch on the turn indicator lever upwards.

The LED on the turn signal lever illuminates.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.



To deactivate the adaptive lighting functions, turn the outer switch on the turn indicator lever downwards.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional cornering light is switched on that illuminates the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

Adaptive headlight range control

Adaptive headlight range control compensates for vehicle acceleration, braking, and load conditions in order to prevent your headlights from dazzling oncoming traffic.

Driving lights mode

Principle

With driving lights mode, the appearance of the front/rear lights can be customized from the central display. This setting can only be used when drive-ready state is off.

Selecting driving lights mode

1. To select driving lights mode, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Exterior lighting".
2. Tap the icon for the desired mode.

Instrument lighting

Principle

The instrument lighting illuminates switches and buttons with the individually set brightness.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can only be adjusted in darkness and when the parking lights or low-beam headlights are turned on.

Setting the brightness

1. To adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Interior lighting" / "Brightness" / "Brightness at night".
2. Select the desired setting.

Interior lighting

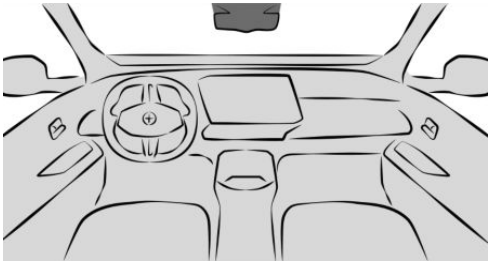
Principle

The interior lighting comprises all lighting elements inside the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following is controlled automatically:

- Interior lights.
- Ambient light.

Overview



The interior lighting menu button is located in the headliner.

The buttons for reading lights are located in the headliner.

The interior light button is located in the headliner.

Turning the interior lights on/off automatically

The interior lights turn on automatically when the doors are opened and at the end of the drive. The interior light illuminates in a cool white or warm white depending on the time of day.

To enable/disable this function, press and hold the button in the headliner for approx. three seconds or go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Interior lighting" / "Automatic reading lights".

Turning the interior lights on/off manually

The interior lights can be turned on/off using the button in the headliner.

Press the interior light button in the headliner.

The interior lights can also be turned on/off from the central display.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Interior lighting".
2. Select the interior lights icon.

Turning reading lights on/off

With button in the headliner

The reading lights can be turned on/off using the button in the headliner.



In the headliner, press the desired reading light button.

The reading lights illuminate in a cool white or a warm white. To change the color, press and hold the button for the desired reading light.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

On the central display

The reading lights can also be turned on/off from the central display.

1. To activate/deactivate the reading light, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Interior lighting".
2. Select the icon for the desired seat reading light.

If the interior lights have been configured to automatically activate on the central display and there is no one sitting on the front passenger seat, the reading light above the front passenger seat can be turned on by moving your hand.

To turn on the reading light above the front passenger seat, hold a hand over the front passenger seat. The reading light turns back off after your hand leaves the area above the front passenger seat.

Ambient light

Principle

The ambient lighting consists of multiple light elements that provide colorful lighting in the vehicle interior. Individual settings for the ambient lighting can be configured from the central display.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

1. To enable/disable the ambient lighting, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Interior lighting".
2. Tap the ambient lighting icon.

Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated on the central display, it will not turn on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the color

You can choose the color of the ambient light in Personal Mode.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting color".
2. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. To adjust the brightness of the ambient lighting, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Interior lighting" / "Brightness" / "Backlighting".
2. Select the desired setting.

Reduced lighting when driving at night

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

To enable/disable this function, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Lighting" / "Interior lighting" / "Brightness" / "Reduced for night driving".

Window wiper system

Principle

The wiper system makes sure that you have a clear view, e.g., in the rain. It is operated using the wiper lever on the steering wheel.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

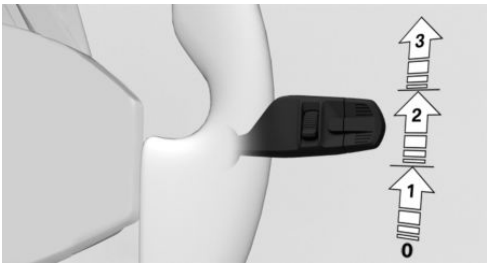
NOTICE

The wiper blades can become prematurely worn or damaged if used on dry window glass for long periods of time. The wiper motor can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the wipers when the window glass is dry.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the window glass before turning on the wipers.

Turning on window wiper system



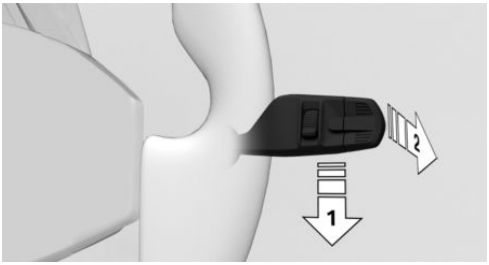
To turn on the wiper system, push the wiper lever upward to the desired position.

Position	Function
Position 0.	Rest position of wipers.
Position 1.	Rain sensor mode.
Position 2.	Normal wiper speed.
Position 3.	Fast wiper speed.

When you continue driving after stopping with the window wiper system on, the wipers will operate at the previous setting.

The wiper speed can be reduced gradually to protect the wiper motor from overheating.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



To turn off the wiper system, push the wiper lever down until it reaches position 0, arrow 1.

To flick wipe, proceed as follows:

- Push the wiper lever down from position 0, arrow 1.
- Push the wiper lever up from position 0 or position 1, arrow 2.

The wiper lever returns to its initial position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

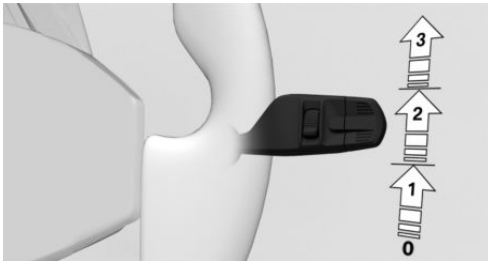
The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating rain sensor



To activate the rain sensor: Push the wiper lever upward from position 0, arrow 1, once.

Wiping operation is started.

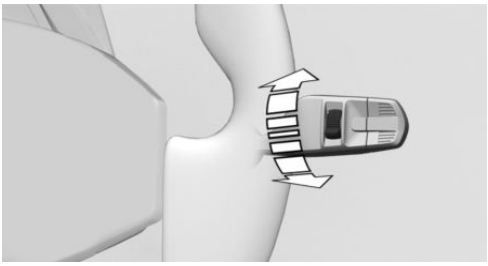
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiping operation may not start.

Deactivating rain sensor

To deactivate the rain sensor: Push the wiper lever back to position 0.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



To adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor, turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever as follows:

- To set the rain sensor sensitivity to high, turn the thumbwheel up.
- To set the rain sensor sensitivity to low, turn the thumbwheel down.

Window washer system

Safety information

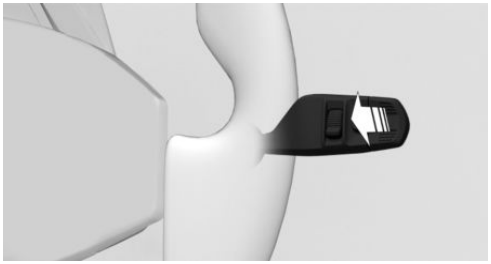
WARNING

The washer fluid may freeze to the window glass at low temperatures and obstruct your view. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the window washer system when the washer fluid will not freeze. Use antifreeze if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

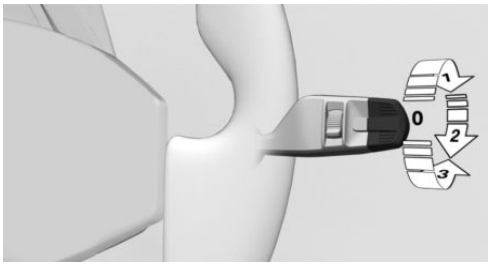


To clean the windshield, pull the wiper lever back.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield directly in front of the wiper blade when the wiper moves up.

Rear wiper

Switching on the rear wiper



To turn on the rear wiper, rotate the outer switch on the wiper lever upward.

Switch position	Function
Position 0.	Rest position of the wiper.
Position 1.	Intermittent operation. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Cleaning the rear window

To clean the rear window, turn the outer switch on the wiper lever as follows:

- In rest position: Turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch returns to its rest position when released.
- In intermittent operation: Turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

The function is deactivated if the washer fluid reservoir fill level is low.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which is important, for instance, when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

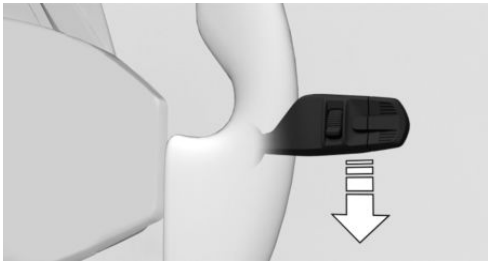
⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the window glass before turning on the wipers.

Folding out the wipers

To fold the wipers away from the windshield, proceed as follows:

1. Activate standby state.
2. Push the wiper lever down or forward and hold it until the wipers stop in an approximately vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way out from the windshield.



Folding in the wipers

To fold in the wipers, proceed as follows:

1. Fold the wipers back in toward the windshield.
2. Turn on standby state, then press the wiper lever down or forward again and hold it.

   The wipers return to their rest position and are ready for operation.

Driving assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Driver assistance systems

Principle

The driver assistance systems help when driving, e.g., by controlling the vehicle speed, maintaining distance, or keeping the vehicle in its lane.

These systems are operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The driver can intervene actively at any time by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal or by steering.

Information on the driver assistance systems is shown on the driver's display.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the driver assistance systems include the following individual systems:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 188.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 190.
- Adapting the speed to the route, refer to page 192.
- Distance Control, refer to page 194.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.
- Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 205.
- Highway Assistant, refer to page 208.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Turn driver assistance systems on/off, stop/resume driver assistance systems.
	Adopt and save the current speed. Speed Limit Assistant with manual adoption: Manually adopt the suggested speed.
	Adjust the speed.

The icons on the buttons illuminate according to the respective situation.

- If the icon does not illuminate, the button cannot be used.
- The icon illuminates white when the button can be used.
- The icon illuminates green when a driver assistance system is on.

Depending on the vehicle's operating state, an explanation or operating message appears on the driver's display when the buttons are touched or pressed.

Turning on driver assistance systems



If the functional requirements for the driver assistance systems have been met, the driver assistance system button on the left side of the steering wheel illuminates white.

To turn on a driver assistance system that is currently available, press the button that has illuminated white.

This system activates and provides the best possible driver assistance, depending on the functional requirements met.



When a driver assistance system is turned on, the button on the steering wheel illuminates green.

Stopping driver assistance systems automatically

Depending on the system, driver assistance systems stop automatically in the following situations, for example:

- When braking manually, depending on the Distance Control settings.
- Engage selector lever position P, N, or R.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- While Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

Stopping driver assistance systems manually

Driver assistance systems can be stopped manually.



Press the driver assistance system button that has illuminated green on the left side of the steering wheel.

The driver assistance system stops.

Resuming driver assistance systems

To resume a driver assistance system, press one of the driver assistance system buttons that have illuminated white on the left side of the steering wheel.

Turning off driver assistance systems

Driver assistance systems deactivate automatically in the following situations, for example:

- After a certain time when the system is stopped.
- If drive-ready state is turned off.

Individual driver assistance systems can also be deactivated on the central display.

1. To deactivate individual driver assistance systems, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving".
2. Deactivate the desired system.

Adjusting speed values

The speed values for driver assistance systems can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.



Repeatedly press the plus/minus button, illuminated white, on the left side of the steering wheel until the desired value is set.

- Pressing these buttons increases or decreases the set speed by 1 mph /1 km/h.
- Hard pressing these buttons changes the set speed by max. 5 mph / 10 km/h.

Views on driver's display

Status display



The status of the speed control system and the set speed are shown on the driver's display.

- The indicator illuminates green when a speed control system activates.
- The indicator illuminates gray when the system is stopped.

Notifications

Notifications for some functions appear on the driver's display in addition to the corresponding driver assistance system indicators.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on vehicle equipment, some driver assistance system information can also be shown on the Head-up display.

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Depending on national-market version, Speed Limit Info uses a camera behind the windshield to detect road signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead signs.

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit on the driver's display. Upcoming changes to the speed limit are also displayed.

If the permissible speed is exceeded, a visual and, as applicable, an acoustic speed warning is issued. The speed warning can be adjusted.

Speed Limit Info may also show speed limits that apply to routes that are not signposted if the navigation system has current map data.

General information

Road signs with supplementary signs are analyzed and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The road sign will then be either displayed or ignored on the driver's display, depending on the situation.

For Speed Limit Info to function correctly, current map data for the country in which the vehicle is operated must be downloaded.

Without map data, the system is subject to certain technical limitations. Road signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limits due to entering towns/cities, highway signs, etc., are not displayed. Speed limits with supplementary signs are always displayed.

To help continuously improve the map data, the following service must be selected in the Privacy menu: "Learning map".

Speed limits for trailer towing will be displayed when the trailer socket is occupied or trailer towing was activated via iDrive.

Depending on the equipment, an approved maximum speed can be set up for trailer towing, which will be taken into account for the display of speed limits.

Additional information:

- Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.
- Trailer towing, refer to page 299.
- Data protection, refer to page 91.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the

surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Camera, refer to page 42.

Speed warning

Principle

If the detected speed limit is exceeded, a warning is issued:

- Visual warning: The speedometer flashes when the detected speed limit is exceeded.
- Acoustic warning: An acoustic signal sounds when the detected speed limit is exceeded.

Depending on national-market version, the speed adjustment set in the Speed Limit Assistant menu is used for the speed warning.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

1. To enable/disable the visual and acoustic speed warning, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Speed Warning".
2. Select the desired setting.

Setting the changed speed limit sound

If a change in the speed limit is detected, an acoustic signal sounds.

1. To adjust the sound for when the speed limit changes, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Speed Limit Assistant" / "Sound when speed limit changes".
2. Select the desired setting.

Displays

Views on driver's display

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
 	Current speed limit. Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
	No data on current speed limit available.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

The sensors may not work properly, e.g., show something that is incorrect.

Additional information:

Camera, refer to page 34.

Functional limitations

Speed Limit Info may be limited and provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- Road signs are completely or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- Road signs do not adhere to applicable standards.
- In areas that are not included in the navigation system map data.
- If navigation system map data is invalid, outdated, or unavailable.

- When roads deviate from the navigation such as due to changes in road layout.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When passing buses or trucks with road signs applied to them.
- In case of electronic road signs.
- When road signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

Cruise Control

Principle

With the Cruise Control, the buttons on the left of the steering wheel can be used to adjust your set speed. The system maintains the set speed. This system automatically accelerates and brakes the vehicle as necessary.

Information on Cruise Control is shown on the driver's display.

Cruise Control is available starting from a vehicle speed of 10 mph /15 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the Cruise Control settings can change under certain conditions. For instance, the acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- With high traffic volume.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Turn driver assistance systems on/off, stop/resume driver assistance systems.
	Adopt and save the current speed. Speed Limit Assistant with manual adoption: Manually adopt the suggested speed.
	Adjust the speed.

Turning on the Cruise Control

Cruise Control can be turned on using the buttons on the steering wheel.



When Cruise Control is turned on, the indicator in the driver's display illuminates green.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

When Cruise Control is on, Dynamic Stability Control is activated as necessary.

For vehicles equipped with Distance Control: Change the Cruise Control mode to Cruise Control without Distance Control.

Additional information:

- Turning on driver assistance systems, refer to page 184.
- Switching between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control, refer to page 198.

Disabling/stopping the Cruise Control

The speed control system can be stopped manually and, if necessary, deactivate or stop automatically.

Additional information:

Driver assistance systems, refer to page 184.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining/adopting/saving the vehicle speed

The vehicle speed can be maintained, adopted, and saved using the buttons on the steering wheel.



When interrupted, press the plus or minus button illuminated in white on the left-hand-side of the steering wheel once.

When Cruise Control is switched on, the current speed is maintained and saved as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the driver's display.

If the Speed Limit Assistant is off, the vehicle's current speed can also be adopted and saved with the press of a button:



Press the OK button, illuminated white, on the left side of the steering wheel.

Changing the speed

The speed can be changed with the buttons on the steering wheel.



Press the plus or minus button illuminated in white on the left-hand-side of the steering wheel repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.

Press and hold the plus or minus button:
The vehicle accelerates or decelerates without the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being depressed. If the buttons are pressed harder, the vehicle accelerates or decelerates harder.

After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed.

Continuing Cruise Control

At the stored speed

⚠ WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch sur-

rounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted Cruise Control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.



To resume Cruise Control when this system has stopped, press the driver assistance system button that has illuminated white on the left side of the steering wheel.

Cruise Control is continued with the saved speed.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When Cruise Control is turned off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

At the current speed



To continue using the Cruise Control at the current speed, press the plus or minus button illuminated in white on the left-hand-side of the steering wheel.

Speed Limit Assistant: At the suggested speed



To apply the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Assistant to the Cruise Control, press the OK button illuminated in white on the left-hand-side of the steering wheel.

Views on driver's display



The status of the speed control system and the set speed are shown on the driver's display.

- The indicator illuminates green when a speed control system activates.
- The indicator illuminates gray when the system is stopped.

System limits

Depending on the drive mode or drive power, the vehicle may exceed or undershoot the set speed in some situations, e.g., when driving on downhill or uphill gradients.

Do not use Cruise Control when tow-starting/towing.

Speed Limit Assistant

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. Speeds suggested by the Speed Limit Assistant can be used by the driver assistance systems.

The Speed Limit Assistant is activated/deactivated from the central display and operated using the steering wheel buttons.

Suggested speeds can be adjusted by entering tolerances.

System information is shown on the driver's display.

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems, depending on national-market version:

- Cruise Control.
- Distance Control.
- Steering Assistance.
- Highway Assistant.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be operational.

Depending on the equipment, destination system and national-market version, the value can be applied automatically.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
OK	Accept suggested speed manually.
±	Set speed.

Functional requirements

Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Activating/deactivating the Speed Limit Assistant

1. To configure the Speed Limit Assistant settings, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Speed Limit Assistant" / "Speed limits".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adopt automatically": Depending on the equipment, detected speed limits are applied automatically.
   - "Adopt manually": Detected speed limits can be applied manually.
   - "Show current limit": Current speed limits are shown on the driver's display without being applied.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 186.

Views on driver's display

A message appears on the driver's display when the Speed Limit Assistant and a driver assistance system are activated. The Speed Limit Assistant icons appear on the left-hand side of the driver's display.

Icon	Function
SPEED LIMIT 30	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
50 km/h	Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
OK	If a white OK symbol illuminates on the speed limit icon, the detected speed limit can be adopted by pressing the OK button. When applied, the OK icon disappears.

Applying speed limits automatically

"Adopt automatically": Detected speed limits are used automatically by Distance Control.

It may not be possible to use this function when driving with a trailer.



If a speed is applied automatically, the OK button, illuminated white on the left side of the steering wheel, can be pressed in order to reactivate the last set speed. The OK button can only be used to switch back to a set speed for a limited time after automatic adoption and in suitable driving situations.

Applying speed limits manually

A detected speed limit can be applied manually for the active driver assistance system.



If the OK icon appears on the driver's display, press the OK button, illuminated white, on the left side of the steering wheel.

Speed adjustment

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant can be configured to adopt the speed limit 1:1 or with a tolerance.

A speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph /60 km/h can be set up.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph /60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. To adjust the speed for the Speed Limit Assistant, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Speed Limit Assistant".
2. Select the desired setting:

- "Adjust speed limits": Set a tolerance for a speed adjustment. This tolerance applies to all speed limits.
- "2nd adjustment up to ": Activate or deactivate additional speed adjustment.
- "Adjust speed limits": First activate additional speed adjustment, then set a tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph /60 km/h.

System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Note the system limits for Speed Limit Info.

If your vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, the speeds to be adopted are limited to the trailer towing speed set on the central display.

Additional information:

- System limits of Speed Limit Info, refer to page 187.
- System limits of the sensors, refer to page 34.
- Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

Adapting the speed to the route

Principle

The Cruise Control can be configured to automatically adjust the vehicle speed to the route when Distance Control is active.

For instance, the speed will be reduced in the following situations as necessary:

- Before a turning.
- Before a roundabout.
- Before a curve.
- In front of an exit ramp on highways or highway-like roads.

This function is operated from the central display.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

In addition, pay attention to any Cruise Control, Distance Control, Steering Assistance, and Speed Limit Assistant prompts.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 188.
- Distance Control, refer to page 194.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 190.

Functional requirements

To adapt the vehicle speed to the route, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Cruise Control and Distance Control are turned on.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, on the central display, set whether the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier, respectively.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

Adapting speed automatically to route

To enable/disable automatic speed adjustment by route, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Distance and route" / "Route control".

Adjusting the cornering speed

The cornering speed can be adjusted depending on national-market version.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Distance and route" / "Cornering speed".
2. Select the desired setting.

Views on driver's display

The following icons are displayed for the route, for example.

Icon	Meaning
 or 	There is a turn ahead.
	There is a roundabout ahead.
	There is an exit ahead to get off a road outside of city limits.
	There is a curve ahead.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Route Speed Control information is shown in Assist View on the central display.

Additional information:

Assist View, refer to page 56.

System limits

Depending on national-market version or the country in which the vehicle is currently being driven, the Route-Ahead Assistant may not be available.

The system does not react or reacts to a limited extent to the route ahead in the following situations:

- If the vehicle position cannot be clearly determined by the navigation system.
- The use of navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto may lead to functional limitations, for instance deviations with navigation instructions.
- On wintry roads.

Furthermore, the system limits of the Cruise Control, Distance Control, Steering Assistance, and Speed Limit Assistant systems apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 188.
- Distance Control, refer to page 194.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 190.

Distance Control

Principle

With the Distance Control, a distance to a vehicle driving ahead can be adjusted in addition to the Cruise Control.

The distance can be adjusted at several levels. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of the vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a standstill and then drives off again within a brief period, Distance Control is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Otherwise, drive off independently, e.g., by pressing the accelerator pedal or by pushing the speed adjustment button on the steering wheel.

Distance Control is operated using the buttons on the left of the steering wheel. The distance to preceding vehicles is set on the central display.

Information on Distance Control is shown on the driver's display.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Risk of accident is greater when there is a high speed differential to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When approaching a slowly moving vehicle at speed.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When approaching stationary vehicles at speed.

There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

Distance Control is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Front ultrasonic sensors.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the interior camera.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Functional requirements

To use Distance Control, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Cruise Control is turned on.
- This system detects preceding vehicles.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- To drive off automatically, the interior camera must detect that the driver is looking at surrounding traffic, depending on the situation.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Application range

Distance Control is best when used on well-maintained roads.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and depends, for example, on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, higher desired speeds can also be selected after switching to Cruise Control without Distance Control.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Do not use Cruise Control and Distance Control when tow-starting/towing.

Turning on Cruise Control with Distance Control

Cruise Control with Distance Control can be turned on using the buttons on the steering wheel.



When Distance Control is turned on, the display in the driver's display illuminates green.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The selected distance to a vehicle driving ahead is maintained.

When Distance Control is on, Dynamic Stability Control is activated as necessary.

Additional information:

Turning on driver assistance systems, refer to page 184.

Adjusting the speed

The speed can be set with the buttons on the steering wheel.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 188.

Interrupting Cruise Control with Distance Control automatically

Cruise Control with Distance Control is interrupted automatically in the following situations, for example:

- Engage selector lever position P, N, or R.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- While Dynamic Traction Control is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt and driver's door are opened.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- Depending on the setting, during manual braking.

It is possible to disable automatic stopping of this system when braking manually.

To disable automatic stopping when braking manually, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Distance and route" / "Distance Control remains active after braking".

Disabling/stopping Cruise Control with Distance Control

Cruise Control with Distance Control can be stopped manually and may be disabled/stopped automatically.

Additional information:

Driver assistance systems, refer to page 184.

Continuing Cruise Control while driving

⚠ WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch sur-

rounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted Cruise Control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 188.

Continuing Cruise Control while vehicle is stationary

The Cruise Control requires that the driver confirm their intention to drive off in certain situations.

The displays show the following:



The set speed illuminates gray.

The Distance Control icon illuminates green.

Cruise Control can be continued as follows:

- Pressing the accelerator pedal.
-  Press the plus/minus button, illuminated white, on the left side of the steering wheel.
- 

Press the OK button, illuminated white, on the left side of the steering wheel.

Activating/deactivating drive off reminder

When the Drive-Off Reminder is activated, an acoustic notice is issued as soon as it is possible to continue driving.

To activate or deactivate the drive off reminder, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Distance and route" / "Drive-Off Reminder".

After a Drive-Off Reminder, drive off independently or resume Cruise Control by doing as follows:

- Pressing the accelerator pedal.
-  Press the plus/minus button, illuminated white, on the left side of the steering wheel.
- 

Press the OK button, illuminated white, on the left side of the steering wheel.

Distance

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Be aware of the surrounding traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

The distance to preceding vehicles can be set to different levels. The largest possible distance that can be set is a maximum distance of two seconds to the preceding vehicle.

Adjusting the distance

1. To adjust the distance, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Distance and route" / "Preferred distance".
2. Select the desired setting.

Automatic adaptation of the distance

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Distance Control can be configured to automatically adjust the distance to

the preceding vehicle within the set distance. This system analyzes the traffic situation and ambient conditions.

If automatic adjustment is enabled, the distance is adjusted in the following situations, for example:

- With poor visibility, the distance is slightly increased.
- With heavy traffic, the distance is slightly decreased.

To have the distance adjusted automatically, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Distance and route" / "Situational Distance Control".

Changing between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing over the Cruise Control mode

To switch between Cruise Control with or without Distance Control, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Distance and route" / "Cruise Control without control of distance".



An indication is shown on the driver's display when Distance Control switched off.

The setting is reset when the vehicle is parked.

Views on driver's display

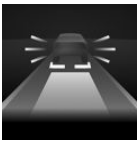
Status display



The status of the speed control system and the set speed are shown on the driver's display.

- The indicator illuminates green when a speed control system activates.
- The indicator illuminates gray when the system is stopped.

Situation-dependent displays

Icon	Description
	The display illuminates gray: No Distance Control because the accelerator pedal or, depending on the settings, the brake pedal is being depressed.
	The display illuminates green: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The display flashes green: Preceding vehicle has driven off.
	The display illuminates green: The vehicle symbol goes out because no vehicle has been detected ahead of you.
	The display flashes gray: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Icon	Description
	The display flashes red and a signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Eye icon illuminates white and acoustic signal sounds: The driver's line of sight is not directed at the surrounding traffic. Keep an eye on the surrounding traffic.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Eye icon illuminates red and acoustic signal sounds: The driver is still not looking at the surrounding traffic. Take note of the surrounding traffic immediately.

Assist View

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Distance Control information is shown in Assist View on the central display.

Additional information:

Assist View, refer to page 56.

System limits

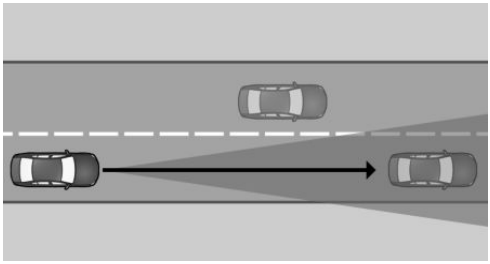
System limits of the sensors

Distance Control is subject to the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Detection range



The vehicle sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The sensor detection capability and automatic braking power are limited.

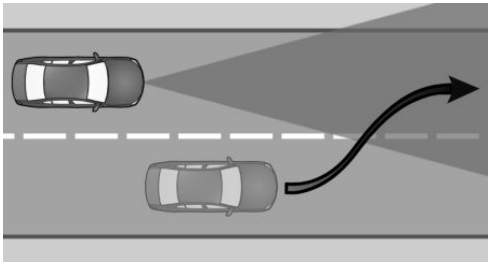
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

Distance Control does not decelerate in the following situations:

- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

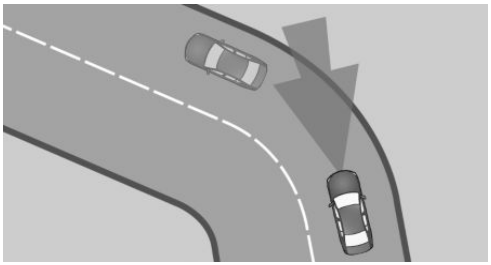
Merging vehicles



Distance Control may not be able automatically restore your chosen distance if a preceding vehicle suddenly cuts into your lane. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly

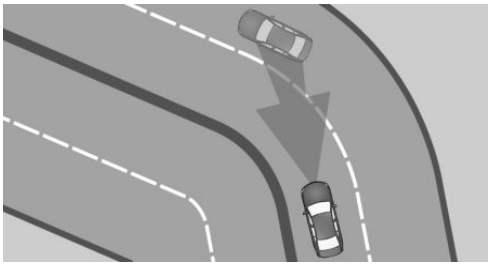
approaching a truck. When a vehicle has been detected ahead of you, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and making an evasive maneuver, if needed.

Cornering



When Distance Control is on, if your set speed is too high for a bend, your vehicle will be slowed slightly in the bend. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

Distance Control has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. Any deceleration of the vehicle by the system can be compensated for by briefly accelerating. Once the accelerator pedal is released, the system reactivates and controls the speed independently.

Driving off

Your vehicle cannot drive off automatically using Distance Control in the following situations, for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.
- With a heavy trailer.

In these cases, press on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

With unfavorable weather or lighting conditions, Distance Control may be limited as follows:

- Worse vehicle detection.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Drive power

Depending on the drive mode or drive power, the vehicle may exceed or undershoot the set speed in some situations, e.g., when driving on downhill or uphill gradients.

Steering Assistance

Principle

Steering Assistance enhances Distance Control by providing steering and lane keeping support. The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. This system assists the driver by moving the steering when necessary, e.g., when cornering.

Steering Assistance is operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

Depending on the vehicle speed, Steering Assistance orients itself using lane boundaries or preceding vehicles.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the Steering Assistance can provide accurate driving lane information, even if no lane boundary or preceding vehicle has been detected for a short time.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the interior camera monitors where the driver is looking.

The driver's display views and steering wheel LEDs provide information about the system.

If a lane boundary is crossed, the system issues a warning by vibrating the steering wheel.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

The Cruise Control and Distance Control alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 188.
- Distance Control, refer to page 194.

Overview

Sensors

Steering Assistance is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, via the exterior mirror cameras, the Rear View Camera and the front camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, via the front, side radar sensors.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, via the rear, side radar sensors.
- The sensors in the steering wheel.
- Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, via the interior camera.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Functional requirements

To use Steering Assistance, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Distance Control is turned on.
- Steering assistance has not been disabled permanently in the menu.
- Vehicle speed is below 110 mph / 180 km/h.
- The lane is sufficiently wide.
- Hands are on the steering wheel rim.
- The bend radius is sufficiently large.
- The vehicle is driving in the center of the lane.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- Driver's seat belt is fastened.
- Forward Collision Mitigation is activated.
- Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the interior camera must detect that the driver is looking at surrounding traffic.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, on the central display, set whether the ve-

hicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier, respectively.

- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

Activating Steering Assistance

After turning on speed control systems, Steering Assistance activates automatically once all functional lane keeping requirements have been met.

The status of Steering Assistance is shown on the driver's display.



The steering wheel icon and lane markings illuminate gray when the system is ready but not actively steering.



The steering wheel icon and lane markings illuminate green when this system activates.

When this system is operational, Forward Collision Mitigation and, depending on vehicle equipment, Side Collision Protection activate.

Additional information:

Turning on driver assistance systems, refer to page 184.

Stopping Steering Assistance automatically

Steering Assistance automatically stops steering the vehicle in the following situations, e.g.:

- At a vehicle speed above 110 mph /180 km/h.
- After releasing the steering wheel.
- With a strong steering intervention.
- When the brake pedal is depressed while the following function is on: "Distance Control remains active after braking".
- When leaving own lane.
- Lane is too narrow.
- If no lane boundary or vehicle ahead of you has been detected, depending on vehicle equipment and the respective situation.
- The Cruise Control with Distance Control is interrupted.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.

After being stopped, Steering Assistance goes into standby and reactivates when all functional requirements have been met.

Views on driver's display

Icon	Description
	Steering wheel icon and the lane markings illuminate gray: Steering Assistance is on standby.
	Steering wheel icon and the lane markings illuminate green: Steering Assistance is on. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Steering wheel icon and a lane marking flash yellow, and steering wheel vibrates: A lane boundary has been crossed inadvertently.

Icon	Description
	Steering wheel icon illuminates yellow, hand icons move, and/or acoustic signal sounds: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. Steering Assistance is still on. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
	Steering wheel icon illuminates yellow and an acoustic signal sounds: Steering Assistance will turn off soon.
	Steering wheel icon illuminates red, lane markings illuminate green, and an acoustic signal sounds: The driver's line of sight is not directed at the surrounding traffic. Steering Assistance is off or will be turned off soon. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. Keep an eye on the surrounding traffic.

Icon	Description
	Steering wheel icon illuminates red, the hands icons move, and an acoustic signal sounds: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. Steering Assistance is off or will be turned off soon. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. Immediately grasp the steering wheel with your hands and pay attention to the surrounding traffic.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Eye icon illuminates white and acoustic signal sounds: The driver's line of sight is not directed at the surrounding traffic. Keep an eye on the surrounding traffic.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Eye icon illuminates red and acoustic signal sounds: The driver is still not looking at the surrounding traffic. Take note of the surrounding traffic immediately.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a message appears if the interior camera detects that the driver is not paying attention.

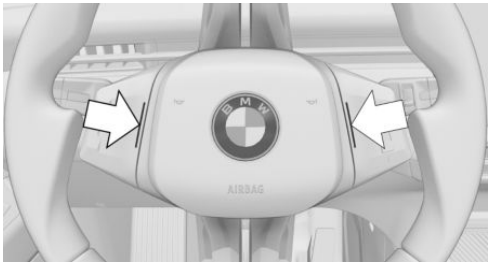
Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Steering Assistance informa-

tion is shown in Assist View on the central display.

Additional information:

Assist View, refer to page 56.

Displays on the steering wheel



Similar to the Steering Assistance indicators on the driver's display, both LEDs next to the steering wheel keypads illuminate.

Disabling Steering Assistance

Steering Assistance can be permanently disabled from the central display.

To disable Steering Assistance, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Steering Assistance".

If Steering Assistance is on, Distance Control activates when Steering Assistance is disabled.

When disabling Steering Assistance, confirm the deactivation as necessary and drive without Steering Assistance.

System limits

General information

Steering Assistance cannot be activated or used effectively in certain situations, e.g., when towing a trailer.

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

The Cruise Control and Distance Control alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 188.
- Distance Control, refer to page 194.

System limits of the sensors

Steering Assistance is subject to the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Weather

With unfavorable weather or lighting conditions, Steering Assistance may be restricted as follows:

- Worse detection of vehicles and lane boundaries.
- Short-term interruptions in case of already detected vehicles and lane boundaries.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Lane Change Assistant

Principle

Lane Change Assistant

The Lane Change Assistant helps when changing lanes and passing on multi-lane roads.

The Lane Change Assistant is activated or deactivated together with Steering Assistance.

Lane change assistance can be triggered manually by pushing the turn signal lever in the desired direction as necessary.

System information is shown on the driver's display.

The Lane Change Assistant uses the Steering Assistance sensors.

Active Lane Change

Active Lane Change is available depending on national-market version.

With Active Lane Change, a lane change can also be triggered by a steering movement.

Active Lane Change must also be activated or deactivated on the central display.

Depending on the speed and traffic situation, Active Lane Change can perform an automatic lane change.

If the Active Lane Change Assistant detects an opportunity to change lanes, a lane change recommendation appears on the driver's display.

The following situations, for example, are opportunities for an automatic lane change:

- There is a sufficiently large gap in the adjacent lane when a preceding vehicle in the same lane is moving slowly.
- If the navigation system detects that a lane change is necessary to reach a destination.

Active Lane Change can perform a lane change to the adjacent lane as follows:

- Without lane change suggestion: The system performs lane change after the turn signal lever is actuated or after the driver makes a steering movement.
- After a lane change suggestion: The system performs lane change after confirmation by the driver, e.g. by the driver looking at the adjacent lane.

Depending on the traffic situation, the Lane Change Assistant can move the vehicle closer to the adjacent lane before a lane change.

During a lane change, the turn signal turns on automatically and the speed is adjusted as necessary.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready

to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ WARNING

This system is only intended for use on roads with structural separation from oncoming traffic, e.g., highways. Because of the system limits, the system can also remain active on roads without structural separations and may not react as expected. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Deactivate the system if it is enabled on roads without structural separations.

Federal, state or local laws differ and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state and local laws.

In addition, pay attention to any Steering Assistance prompts.

Additional information:

Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Functional requirements

To use the Lane Change Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Steering Assistance is operational.
- The functional requirements for Steering Assistance have been met.
- Depending on national-market version: Driving on a highway-like road without pedestrians or cyclists on the roadway. The road is also structurally separated from oncoming traffic, e.g., guard rails.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.
- A vehicle has been detected at a sufficient distance behind your own vehicle since beginning the drive.
- This system detects the traffic situation clearly.
- The traffic situation in the adjacent lane permits a lane change.
- No lane change was performed immediately before the current situation.
- Crossable lane boundaries are detected.
- The speed is below approx. 110 mph/180 km/h.
- The minimum speed is country-specific.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, on the central display, set whether the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier, respectively.

To use Active Lane Change, the following functional requirements must also be met:

- Active Lane Change is operational.
- The interior camera monitors whether the driver is paying attention to surrounding traffic.
- The guidance must be activated on the navigation system in order to change lanes for a destination. The function is not available when using navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Additional information:

- Interior camera, refer to page 35.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.
- Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

Activating/deactivating Active Lane Change

To manually activate/deactivate Active Lane Change, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Active Lane Change".

Configuring Active Lane Change

To configure Active Lane Change, on the central display, go through the menu as follows:

1. My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Active Lane Change".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Start lane change with steering wheel movement": The triggering of lane changes by steering can be disabled.
   - ▷ "Notification sound": The acoustic signal for a lane change suggestion can be deactivated.

Changing lanes manually

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Start the lane change.

   To change lanes with the Lane Change Assistant, press the turn signal lever in the desired direction or steer in the desired direction.

After a short time, Lane Change Assistant initiates a lane change.

After changing lanes, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Cancel the lane change manually, e.g., by countersteering, in critical situations.

If the system cannot perform a lane change, a corresponding message appears on the driver's display.

An acoustic signal may sound if the system cancels the lane change.

Changing lanes automatically, after confirmation by the driver

After a lane change suggestion from Active Lane Change, a lane change can be triggered by operating the turn signal lever or by looking at the adjacent lane. To change lanes, follow the instructions on the driver's display.

1. The Active Lane Change Assistant suggests a lane change. A signal tone sounds when the corresponding setting is made.



2. Trigger the lane change, e.g., by looking at the adjacent lane.



After a short time, the Active Lane Change initiates a lane change.

After changing lanes, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Cancel the lane change manually, e.g., by countersteering, in critical situations.

If the system cannot perform a lane change, a corresponding message appears on the driver's display.

An acoustic signal may sound if the system cancels the lane change.

Canceling a lane change

A lane change can be canceled by steering in the opposite direction or by operating the turn signal in the opposite direction.

Views on driver's display

Icon	Description
	Steering wheel icon illuminates green and two triangles illuminate gray: The functional requirements have been met. The Lane Change Assistant is operational.
	Steering wheel icon illuminates green and an arrow symbol illuminates gray: System is searching for a gap in traffic in order to change lanes.
	Active Lane Change: Steering wheel icon illuminates green and lane change arrow symbol illuminates gray: A lane change suggestion is displayed.
	Steering wheel icon and lane change arrow symbol illuminate green: The system performs a lane change in the arrow direction.
	Steering wheel icon illuminates green, a lane change arrow symbol illuminates gray, and the desired lane illuminates yellow: System has detected a desire to change lanes. It is not currently possible to change lanes.
	If the navigation system suggests a lane change, a guidance icon also appears.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Lane Change Assistant information is shown in Assist View on the central display.

Additional information:

Assist View, refer to page 56.

System limits

The Lane Change Assistant is subject to the system limits of the following systems:

- Interior camera, refer to page 35.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Highway Assistant

Principle

The Highwayassistant allows for hands-free driving in suitable driving situations.

This system handles the following:

- Steering.
- Braking.
- Acceleration.
- Distance Control.
- Staying in lane.

The driver must always remain attentive and ready to steer and brake at all times.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

The Highway Assistant is activated/deactivated on the central display.

The driver's display views and steering wheel LEDs provide information about the system.

The permissibility of using the highway assistant depends on the legal controls of the respective country. The driver of the vehicle is responsible for the lawful use of the system and compliance with the applicable regulations. Before using the system for the first time and at regular intervals, it must be checked whether it is permissible to use the system -

especially when crossing borders. Other vehicle drivers must be informed accordingly.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

This system is only intended for use on roads with structural separation from oncoming traffic, e.g., highways. Because of the system limits, the system can also remain active on roads without structural separations and may not react as expected. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Deactivate the system if it is enabled on roads without structural separations.

Federal, state or local laws differ and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state and local laws.

In addition, pay attention to any Steering Assistance prompts.

Additional information:

Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.

Overview

Sensors

The Highway Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.
- The sensors in the steering wheel.
- The interior camera.
- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Functional requirements

To use the Highway Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The Highway Assistant must be available in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.
- The functional requirements for Steering Assistance have been met and Steering Assistance is operational.
- Driving on a highway-like road without pedestrians or cyclists. The road is also structurally separated from oncoming traffic, e.g., guard rails.
- Lane boundaries are detected.
- The lane is sufficiently wide.

- The bend radius is sufficiently large.
- The navigation system has clearly determined the street and the vehicle position.
- This function must be available on the road on which the vehicle is driving.
- Do not allow antennas on the roof to become covered, e.g., by roof loads or snow.
- The interior camera monitors whether the driver is paying attention to surrounding traffic.
- The Highway Assistant is enabled in the vehicle.
- The navigation data is up to date.
- Vehicle speed is below approx. 85 mph / 137 km/h.
- The systems in the vehicle, e.g., the Fatigue Alert and the interior camera detect that the driver is rested.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, on the central display, set whether the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier, respectively.

Additional information:

- Interior camera, refer to page 35.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.
- Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

Activating/deactivating the Highway Assistant

To activate/deactivate the Highway Assistant, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Hands-free Highway Assistant".

The Highway Assistant automatically becomes ready when Steering Assistance is activated and all functional requirements for the Highway Assistant have been met.



Green lane markings and a green steering wheel icon with white icons for the hands appear on the driver's display. The Highway Assistant is operational.

Two green LED lights are illuminated on the steering wheel.

If the surrounding traffic permits, the driver can turn on this system by taking their hands off the steering wheel.



When this system is on, the green steering wheel icon appears on the driver's display without the white hand icons.

The system begins to assist the driver with vehicle control.

Remain ready to steer and brake at all times.

When this system is on, the following functions activate:

- Forward Collision Mitigation.
- Other driver assistance systems, e.g. the adapt speed to route function.

When this system is on, the speed can be temporarily increased/decreased by depressing the accelerator pedal or, depending on the system settings, the brake pedal.

Turning off the Highway Assistant automatically

The Highway Assistant turns off automatically in the following situations, for example:

- When the brake pedal is depressed while the following function is on: "Distance Control remains active after braking".
- When the driver grips the steering wheel.
- In case of malfunction.
- When a system limit is reached.

Once the functional requirements for Steering Assistance have been met, Steering Assistance takes control of the vehicle in order to help the driver.

Views on driver's display

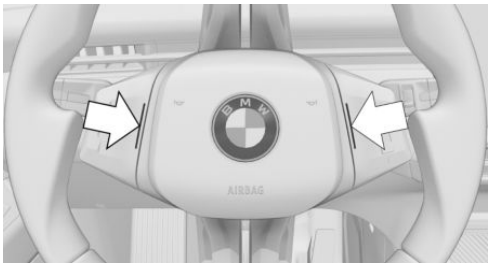
Icon	Description
	Steering wheel icon and lane markings illuminate green, hands icons illuminate white: The Highway Assistant is operational.
	Steering wheel icon and the lane markings illuminate green: Highway Assistant is on.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information on this system is shown in Assist View on the central display.

Additional information:

Assist View, refer to page 56.

Displays on the steering wheel



Both LEDs next to the keypads on the steering wheel illuminate depending on the respective situation.

- The LEDs on the steering wheel illuminate green when the Highway Assistant is on standby or turned on.
- The LEDs on the steering wheel illuminate yellow when a system limit has been reached. Highway Assistant is deactivated.

  Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
- The LEDs on the steering wheel illuminate red when a system limit is exceeded. Highway Assistant is deactivated.

  Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.

System limits

When operating with a trailer or rear-mounted luggage rack, the Highway Assistant cannot be activated or used sensibly.

The Highway Assistant is subject to the system limits of the following systems:

- Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.
- Steering Assistance, refer to page 200.
- Fatigue Alert, refer to page 341.

Hill Descent Control

Principle

Hill Descent Control is intended for all-wheel drive vehicles regulating their speed on steep downhill gradients, e.g., when driving off-road.

When Hill Descent Control is activated, the vehicle moves at a speed set by the driver without the brake pedal having to be depressed.

While Hill Descent Control is regulating the speed, this system automatically distributes the brake power to the individual wheels. Driving stability and steerability are improved. If necessary, the Antilock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 25 mph / 40 km/h.

The vehicle can be set to speeds between approx. 2 mph / 3 km/h and approx. 20 mph / 30 km/h. While driving downhill, this system reduces the vehicle speed to the set value, as physically possible.

Drive in selector lever positions D, N, or R for optimum system support.

Activating/deactivating Hill Descent Control

To activate/deactivate Hill Descent Control, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Assisted Driving" / "Hill Descent Control".

Hill Descent Control deactivates automatically at speeds above approx. 25 mph / 40 km/h.

Hill Descent Control can also be activated/deactivated via quick access in the My Vehicle menu.

Reverse Collision Mitigation is deactivated while Hill Descent Control is regulating the speed.

Additional information:

Reverse Collision Mitigation, refer to page 238.

Views on driver's display

The set speed is shown on the driver's display together with the indicator light for Hill Descent Control.

The status of Hill Descent Control can be also be shown on the Head-up display.



The indicator light illuminates green when the system is activated. Hill Descent Control brakes the vehicle.



The indicator light illuminates gray when the system is on standby but temporarily deactivated.

Views on the central display

If Hill Descent Control is deactivated due to excessive brake temperatures, a Check Control message appears at the top of the central display.

Further functional limitations, e.g. due to activation inhibitors, are indicated by messages in the lower display area of the central display.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Using the Cruise Control buttons



The set speed for Hill Descent Control can be adjusted using the plus/minus buttons, illuminated white, on the left side of the steering wheel.

- Press the plus button or minus button repeatedly until the desired speed is set.
- Press and hold the corresponding plus button or minus button until the desired speed is reached.

Using the brake pedal

While Hill Descent Control is regulating the vehicle speed, the set speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

Assistance camera views

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Camera views

Principle

Camera-based standalone systems consist of various camera views, which are turned on/off from the central display by selecting the corresponding icons. In addition, standalone systems assist with parking and maneuvering.

One or more cameras show the area around the vehicle from different selectable perspectives in the camera image on the central display. Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted. Depending on the national-market version, either the automatic or the semi-automatic camera perspective is displayed. The parking aid lines or obstacle markings shown in the camera image can help make parking and maneuvering easier.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Camera-based standalone systems

Depending on vehicle equipment, camera-based standalone systems provide an excellent look at the vehicle's surroundings by displaying different camera views when parking and maneuvering. Some standalone systems can assist with parking or reversing.

The following camera views can be used with the standard equipment:

- Rear View Camera, refer to page 218.
- Panorama view, rear, refer to page 222.
- Trailer hitch view, refer to page 221.
- Parking Collision Detection, refer to page 225.

Additional camera views can be used with Parking Assistant Plus:

- Semi-automatic camera perspective, refer to page 218.
- Automatic camera perspective, refer to page 218.
- Trailer view, refer to page 218.
- Curb view, refer to page 222.
- 3D view, refer to page 220.
- Tunnel car wash view, refer to page 221.
- Panorama view, direction-dependent, refer to page 222.
- Activation of panorama view and tunnel car wash view with activation points, refer to page 223.

The following standalone systems assist with parking and maneuvering:

- Park Distance Control, refer to page 227.
- Cross Traffic Warning, refer to page 230.
- Drive-Off Monitoring, refer to page 232.

The following standalone systems can be used for a limited time:

- Remote 3D View, refer to page 224.
- BMW Drive Recorder, refer to page 345.

Sensors

The camera views are controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Calling up Park menu

Some camera-based systems can be individually configured in the Parking menu.

1. To open the Parking menu, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking".
2. Select the desired settings.

Displays

View on central display

Turning on parking view with reverse gear

Parking view turns on automatically when selector lever position R is engaged while standby is on.

The central display shows the camera view with a top view of the vehicle and the image from the Rear View Camera.

Activating parking view on the central display



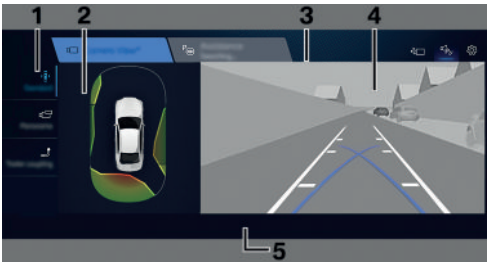
Parking view can be activated on the central display as follows:

- Tap the parking view icon in the driver's side status area.

  The vehicle speed must be below approx. 22 mph /35 km/h.
- Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" / "Parking".

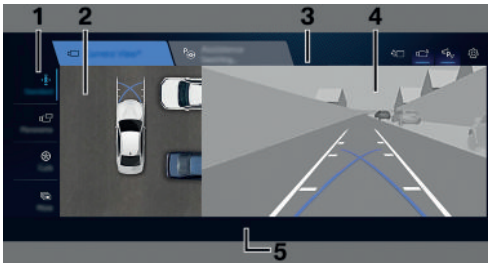
Once parking view is turned on, the display shows a top view of the vehicle and the camera image from the Rear View Camera.

Camera parking view with standard equipment



1 Toolbar, left
2 Vehicle top view
3 Toolbar, top
4 Camera image
5 Toolbar, bottom

Camera parking view with Parking Assistant Plus



1 Toolbar, left
2 Vehicle top view
3 Toolbar, top
4 Camera image
5 Toolbar, bottom

Toolbar, left

The left toolbar can be used to select different camera views, depending on vehicle equipment.

The icon illuminates blue when a system is selected.

- "Standard"

  A top view of the vehicle is displayed. Depending on the vehicle equipment and situation, the following camera views are shown:

  - View from the Rear View Camera.
  - Semi-automatic camera perspective.
  - Automatic camera perspective.
  - Trailer view.
- "Panorama"

  The cross traffic view is displayed.
- "Curb"

  The view next to the wheels is shown.
- "More"
  - "3D"

    A three-dimensional view of the vehicle is displayed.
  - "Trailer"

    The view shows the zoom onto the trailer hitch.
  - "Car wash"

    To make it easier to drive into a car wash, your own lane is shown.

Toolbar, top

The top toolbar is used to select parking view for the camera views and parking assistance systems.

The top toolbar can be used to select different camera views and settings, depending on vehicle equipment.

The camera cleaning can be turned on manually as needed.

When a selection is made, a blue line illuminates below the icon.

- "Camera view"

  Parking view can be turned on for various individual camera-based systems.
- "Assistance"

  Parking view can be turned on for various parking assistance systems.
-

  The acoustic warning of Park Distance Control can be enabled/disabled.
-

  Settings can be configured in the Parking menu.
-

  The automatic or semi-automatic camera perspective is shown, depending on national-market version.
-

  When drive-ready state is on, the Rear View Camera cleaning and, depending on

vehicle equipment, the front camera cleaning can be turned on.

- Depending on vehicle equipment, the integrated universal remote control can be used to open/close programmed garage doors.

Additional information:

- Integrated universal remote control, refer to page 279.
- Turning on camera cleaning manually, refer to page 43.

Toolbar, bottom

"Activation point"

The bottom toolbar is used to save activation points for panorama view or tunnel car wash view.

Turning off parking view automatically

Parking view deactivates automatically on the central display when the vehicle exceeds a certain speed while moving forward.

Additional displays

General information

Additional views, consisting of parking aid lines, obstacle markings, and the door opening angle, appear in the parking camera view on the central display.

The parking aid lines and obstacle markings can be used to make parking and maneuvering easier.

Showing the door opening angle helps to estimate how far the doors can be opened when parking. The obstacle markings indicate possible stationary obstacles restricting the doors' opening angles.

Several additional displays can be turned on at the same time.

Pathway lines

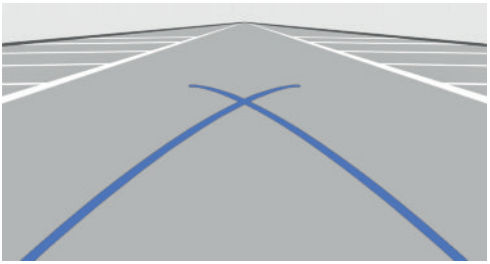


The pathway lines help to estimate the required space when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

The camera image shows pathway lines in front of or behind the vehicle depending on the gear engaged.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines are parking aid lines that show the path with the smallest possible turning circle on a level road in the camera image.

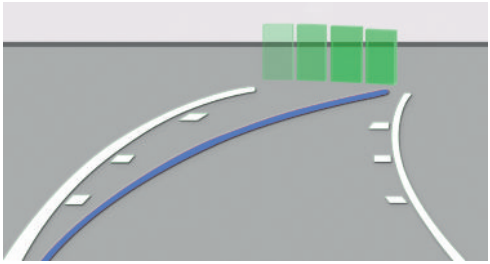
Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

The turning circle lines appear in the camera image together with the pathway lines. When the Automatic Park Assistant performs a parking maneuver, the turning circle lines fade out.

Using parking aid lines

1. To use the parking aid lines for a driving maneuver, position the vehicle so that the blue turning circle line leads into the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the white pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



The sensors detect obstacles when parking.

Obstacles detected by Park Distance Control are marked in the camera image.

Colored gradients for the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

Door opening angle



Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle top view automatically shows the door opening angle when the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position P is engaged. The maximum opening angles of the doors are shown.

The door opening angle view does not warn you of approaching road users.

The vehicle's surroundings are distorted in the display for technical reasons.

Even if the door opening angle indicator on the central display does show that the vehicle overlaps with any other objects, it is still necessary to park carefully next to other objects.

Because of the perspective, higher protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the central display.

Limited operability

When the parking display is on, the operability of some central display areas is restricted.

To operate these display areas, the parking display must be turned off.

System limits

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

The camera views may be subject to the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Field of view

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection capability

The sensors may not detect very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects, e.g., wall ledges.

Objects shown on the central display may be closer than they appear. Do not use the central display to estimate the distance to objects.

The camera's detection range can be limited by protruding cargo, a rear carrier, or a trailer.

Functional limitations

The camera views can only be used to a limited extent in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With open cargo area.

If the vehicle top view or camera view shows an area with gray shading and icon, this area cannot be currently shown, e.g., because the cargo area is open.

Malfunction

The central display indicates when a camera is malfunctioning.

The malfunctioning camera's detection range is shaded.

Standard view

Principle

The standard view on the central display shows different camera views depending on the vehicle equipment and situation.

The following camera views can be displayed:

- View from the Rear View Camera.
- Semi-automatic camera perspective.
- Automatic camera perspective.
- Trailer view.

Rear View Camera

Principle

The Rear View Camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown in the camera view on the central display. The additional views, e.g., parking aid lines, help the driver when maneuvering.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Rear View Camera activates automatically when parking view is turned on or when reversing only.

Functional requirements

To use the Rear View Camera, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The cargo area is fully closed.
- The Rear View Camera area is clean and clear.

Turning the Rear View Camera on/off

With standard equipment, the Rear View Camera turns on automatically when parking view is turned on.

To turn on car wash view, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.

With Parking Assistant Plus, the Rear View Camera turns on automatically when reversing.

The Rear View Camera turns off automatically when driving forward in excess of a speed.

Deactivated Rear View Camera

When the Rear View Camera is deactivated, for instance when the cargo area is open, the camera image is displayed with gray shading.

Semi-automatic camera perspective

Principle

Depending on national-market version, the semi-automatic camera perspective shows a fixed view of the areas in front of or behind the vehicle according to the parking direction and selector lever position engaged.

The camera perspective can be turned on/off from the central display.

Turning the semi-automatic camera perspective on/off

1. To turn on semi-automatic camera perspective, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.
2. Tap the semi-automatic camera perspective icon on the toolbar at the top.

To turn off fixed camera view, select another camera view or tap the parking view icon again.

Automatic camera perspective

Principle

Depending on national-market version, the automatic camera perspective provides a steering-related view of the respective driving direction. This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front of or behind the bumper, or switches to side Park Distance Control as necessary.

The side Park Distance Control is automatically displayed when the automatic camera perspective is turned on. The function shows obstacles located next to the vehicle.

The camera perspective can be turned on/off from the central display.

Turning the automatic camera perspective on/off

To turn on automatic camera perspective, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.

Depending on the national-market version, the icon for the automatic camera perspective is automatically selected in the upper toolbar.

To turn off the steering-dependent camera view, select another camera view or tap the parking view icon again.

Depending on the national-market version, when reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, exited and the system uses a semi-automatic camera perspective to the rear. If necessary, select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will then be maintained for the current parking operation.

Side Park Distance Control view



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

Colored obstacle markings warn the driver when obstacles have been detected.

If no obstacle markings are displayed, no obstacles have been detected.

Side Park Distance Control limits

The Lateral Parking Aid only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the marks are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

The functions of Active Park Distance Control with Side Protection are deactivated when towing a trailer or when the trailer socket is occupied. Obstacles next to the vehicle are not displayed.

Trailer view

Principle

When driving and maneuvering with a trailer, trailer view assists the driver by showing a split camera view, which is specially optimized for the trailer, on the central display.

This enables the trailer to be maneuvered more precisely and its movement to be monitored.

Turning trailer view on/off

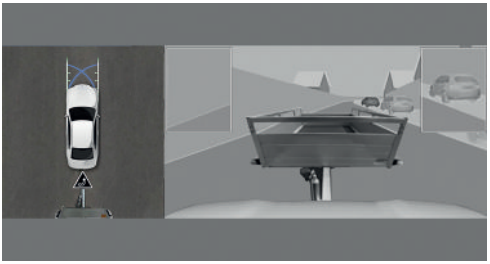
Once the trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle or trailer towing is activated on the central display, the standard view switches automatically to trailer view.

When using a rear carrier, the camera view remains in standard view.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

View on central display



The vehicle top view shows the connected trailer with an icon.

The camera image is split into two views. The view of the vehicle's rear or front is displayed depending on the selector lever position engaged. The views from the exterior mirror cameras are also shown.

When driving forward, the parking aid lines are shown in front of the vehicle in the vehicle top view and in the camera image.

3D view

Principle

With 3D view, a circular path appears around the vehicle top view.

Fixed perspectives can be selected directly from this circular path or by swiping the vehicle from the middle of the camera image.

The current perspective is marked with a camera icon on the circular path.

3D view can be turned on or off using the central display.

Turning the 3D view on/off

1. To turn on 3D view, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.
2. Go through the menu as follows: "More" / "3D".

To turn off 3D view, select another camera view or tap the parking view icon again.

Trailer hitch view

Principle

To make it easier to attach a trailer, you can zoom in on the surroundings of the trailer hitch.

When zooming in on the surroundings, remember that the display may no longer show certain obstacles.

Trailer hitch view can be turned on or off using the central display.

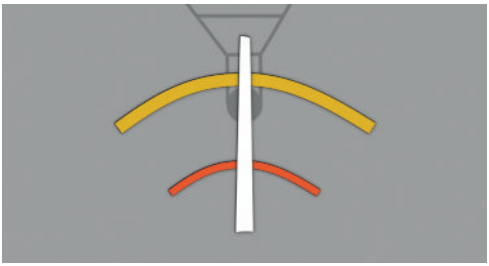
When trailer hitch view is turned on, Reverse Collision Mitigation can be temporarily deactivated for the current coupling operation. A corresponding message is displayed to confirm deactivation. Reverse Collision Mitigation is automatically reactivated after exiting trailer hitch view.

Turning the trailer hitch view on/off

1. To turn on trailer hitch view, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.
2. Go through the menu as follows: "More" / "Trailer".

To turn off trailer hitch view, select another camera view or tap the parking view icon again.

View on central display



Two static circle segments are displayed in the camera image. These circle segments help to estimate the distance of the trailer to the trailer hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering-wheel angle helps with aiming for the trailer with the trailer hitch.

Tunnel car wash view

Principle

Car wash view assists the driver by displaying the vehicle's own lane ahead when entering car washes.

This function can be turned on or off on the central display.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this function can be activated automatically by saving activation points.

In a tunnel car wash, it is necessary that the vehicle be able to coast freely.

Additional information:

- Activation points, refer to page 223.
- Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 155.

Turning the tunnel car wash view on/off

1. To turn on tunnel car wash view, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.
2. Go through the menu as follows: "More" / "Car wash".

To turn off tunnel car wash view, select another camera view or tap the parking view icon again.

View on central display



The display of the vehicle's own lane can be used to position the vehicle correctly within the car wash guide rails.

Curb view

Principle

Curb view assists the driver by showing the sides of the vehicle, next to the wheels, from above. This makes it easier to position the vehicle at curbs. It also makes it easier to estimate the distance between the rim and the curb.

The camera view can be changed to the front or rear depending on the gear position. Once selected, curb view will be shown in the camera view.

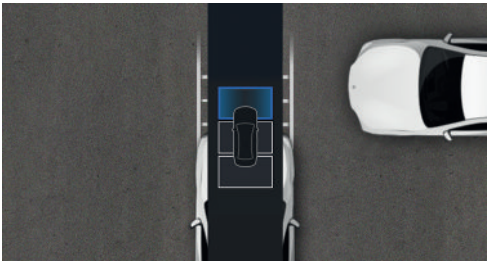
Curb view can be turned on/off from the central display.

Turning curb view on/off

1. To turn on curb view, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.
2. "Curb"

To turn off curb view, select another camera view or tap the parking view icon again.

View on central display



Depending on the view selected, the front wheels are shown when the vehicle is driving forward and the rear wheels are shown when the vehicle is reversing.

In the center of the display, the view can be changed by selecting the corresponding area of the vehicle without changing driving direction.

Panorama View

Principle

The panoramic view gives you an earlier view of crossing traffic at blind driveway exits and intersections.

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. To provide greater visibility, the front camera and, depending on vehicle equipment, Rear View Camera cover the side of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this function can be used when reversing or driving forward.

Panorama view can be turned on or off using the central display.

Depending on vehicle equipment, saved activation points can turn on panorama view automatically.

Additional information:

Activation points, refer to page 223.

Turning the panoramic view on/off

1. To turn on panorama view, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.
2. "Panorama"

To turn off panorama view, select another camera view or tap the parking view icon again.

View on central display



Red lines in the camera image indicate the vehicle's bumpers.

When reverse gear is engaged, the Rear View Camera view is displayed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the front camera view is displayed when forward gear is engaged.

In addition to panorama view, a minimized view of Park Distance Control is shown on the side of the central display. Park Distance Control is on in the background.

Additional information:

Park Distance Control, refer to page 227.

Activation points

Principle

Positions at which panorama view or tunnel car wash view should turn on automatically can be saved as activation points.

When the vehicle reaches a saved activation point on the distance covered, the corresponding view on the central display is turned on automatically.

Up to ten activation points can be saved and edited.

Activation points can be used when driving forwards. The activation points for panorama view can also be used for reversing.

Functional requirements

To have panorama view or car wash view activate automatically, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A position finding signal must be received.
- A BMW ID or driver profile must be enabled.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.
- The front camera and the Rear View Camera must be clean and clear.
- The direction of travel, the selector lever position, and the vehicle angle must match a stored activation point.

Storing activation points

Desired activation points can be saved.

1. Drive the vehicle to the location where panorama view or car wash view should turn on automatically, then stop.
2. Tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.
3. ▷ To save an activation point for panorama view, go through the menu as follows: "Panorama" / "Activation point" / "Save".
   ▷ To save an activation point for car wash view, go through the menu as follows: "More" / "Car wash" / "Activation point" / "Save".

Activation points are saved with the following information, for example:

- ▷ With the city/town.
- ▷ With the city/town and the street.
- ▷ A default name.

The default name for the saved activation point can be changed.

Editing activation points

You can rename or delete saved activation points.

1. To edit an activation point, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking" / "Saved activation points".

   A list of all saved activation points is displayed.
2. Select and edit the desired activation point.

Remote 3D View

Principle

The My BMW App and various camera views, e.g., automatic camera perspective, make it possible to view the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile terminal.

Remote 3D View shows a snapshot of the situation.

For reasons of data protection, Remote 3D View can only be used three times within two hours.

It may not be possible to use Remote 3D View due to local data privacy requirements.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Sensors

Remote 3D View is controlled by the following sensors:

- ▷ Front camera.
- ▷ Exterior mirror cameras.
- ▷ Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

To use Remote 3D View, the following functional requirements must be met:

- ▷ The areas around the sensors are clean and free of obstruction.
- ▷ The Privacy Policy in the Privacy menu has been accepted.
- ▷ Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

- Data transfer must be activated.
- The My BMW App must be installed on the mobile end device.
- In ConnectedDrive countries, you must activate a BMW ID with an existing ConnectedDrive account.

Additional information:

- Data protection, refer to page 91.
- BMW ID, refer to page 92.

Activating/deactivating Remote 3D View

Remote 3D View can be activated or deactivated individually or together with other functions.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "System" / "Data privacy".
2. Select the desired setting.

   After activation, Remote 3D View can be accessed using the My BMW App.

System limits

Remote 3D View may not be fully operational or may not be available in the following situations:

- With a door or the cargo area open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- The vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- In case of missing or weak Internet connection.

Parking Collision Detection

Principle

Parking Collision Detection sends a notification to your My BMW App when a collision with your parked vehicle has been detected. A Check Control message also appears on the central display.

The status of this system is shown by the indicator lights on the interior mirror.

In addition to this notification, media recordings can be saved using the Parking Collision Recorder, which is part of the BMW Drive Recorder.

Recordings can be sent to a mobile device.

Additional information:

BMW Drive Recorder, refer to page 345.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to system limits, some damage to the parked vehicle may not be detected and the parking collision notification may not be sent. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before driving off, check the vehicle's roadworthiness and operational safety.

Data protection

Whether or not Parking Collision Detection may be used depends on the applicable regulations of the country in which this system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with respective applicable regulations. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you verify there are no statutory or regulatory restrictions on using the system in your region or country prior to initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed. Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, you should inform others about the system when giving them the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To use Parking Collision Detection, first enable the parking collision notification or activate the Parking Collision Recorder of the BMW Drive Recorder.

To receive a notification when a parking collision is detected, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- The My BMW app is linked to the ConnectedDrive account.
- The Privacy Policy in the Privacy menu has been accepted.

Additional information:

- Data protection, refer to page 91.
- BMW Drive Recorder, refer to page 345.

Enabling/disabling Parking Collision Detection

Activating the system

Parking Collision Detection activates as soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside.

The system is not activated if the vehicle is locked manually from the inside.

Deactivating the system

Parking Collision Detection can be disabled as follows:

-  As soon as the vehicle is locked, press the lock button on the vehicle key within 30 seconds.

  The indicator lights on the interior mirror illuminate for approx. two seconds.
- Turn off the alarm system's tilt alarm sensor.
- Unlock the vehicle.

If Parking Collision Detection is disabled, the alarm system's tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are also disabled. The alarm system deactivates completely when the vehicle is unlocked.

Additional information:

Alarm system, refer to page 125.

Indicator lights on interior mirror

The indicator lights on the interior mirror show the status of Parking Collision Detection when activated:



- Indicator lights flash every two seconds:

  Parking collision recognition is activated.
- Indicator lights flash for approx. ten seconds, then flash every two seconds:

  Parking Collision Detection is not activated because the doors, bonnet, or cargo area were not closed correctly.

Parking collision recognition activates once all open vehicle access points are closed.

- Indicator lights flash even though all access points have been closed:

  There is a fault on the alarm system or Parking Collision Detection system.

Preventing unwanted triggering of Parking Collision Detection

In the following situations, Parking Collision Detection may inadvertently trigger even though there is no damage to the vehicle:

- In car washes or tunnel car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- During severe storms.

This system can be deactivated for such situations.

System limits

Damage to the parked vehicle may not be detected due to physical limits in the following situations, e.g.:

- When the parking brake is not applied.
- The exterior mirrors are damaged.
- The parking damage is minor, e.g., a scratch or small dent.
- The parking damage occurred at low speed.
- During severe storms.
- If the internet connection may be restricted or not available, it may not be possible to send a parking collision notification to a mobile device.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of, next to, or behind the vehicle.

The range of Park Distance Control, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft / 2 m.

Park Distance Control turns on and off automatically in certain situations.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Due to high speeds when the Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off quickly while Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Sensors

Park Distance Control is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.

Turning Park Distance Control on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Park Distance Control switches on automatically in the following situations:

- When drive-ready state is switched on when selector lever position R is engaged.
- While approaching detected obstacles if the speed is lower than approx. 2.5 mph /4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

Turning off the system automatically

Park Distance Control turns off automatically when a certain speed is exceeded when driving forward.

Turning the system on/off manually

To turn on Park Distance Control manually, tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.

If the system is turned on manually when reverse gear is engaged, the Rear View Camera image is turned on.

To turn off Park Distance Control, tap the parking view icon again.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

General information

An intermittent tone is given as acoustic warning for Park Distance Control to signal an approaching object. E.g., when an object is detected at the rear left of the vehicle, a sound is heard from the rear left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

An acoustic warning sounds if there is an impending collision with an object at a distance of approx. 27 in / 70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft / 1.50 m.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in / 20 cm, a continuous tone sounds.

If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, the continuous tone sounds at a greater distance. However, due to the length of the installed trailer hitch, the continuous tone may sound at a shorter distance from the object.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, at a distance less than approx. 8 in / 20 cm, an alternating continuous tone sounds between the front and rear speakers.

The acoustic warning is switched off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on the national-market version, the intermittent tones are turned off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle moves again, the acoustic warning is turned on.

Configuring the acoustic warning

1. To adjust the volume of the acoustic warning, go through the menu as follows: Media menu / "Volume" / "PDC".
2. Set the desired value.

Adjusting the audio volume when parking

The audio volume can be adjusted so that Park Distance Control's acoustic warning can

be heard clearly while an audio source is active.

1. To adjust the audio volume for an active parking maneuver, go through the menu as follows: Media menu / "Volume" / "Volume reduction for parking".
2. Select the desired setting.

Turning off the acoustic warning temporarily

Depending on national-market version, the acoustic warning can be turned off while performing a parking maneuver.

Select the icon for the acoustic warning on the central display.

When the Park Distance Control is switched on again, the acoustic warning is automatically switched on again.

Visual warning

General information

The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the central display.

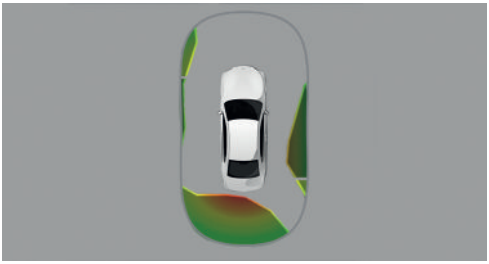
Objects that are farther away are already displayed before an acoustic warning sounds.

Parking aid lines and obstacle markings are shown so that it is easier to estimate the space required. Green, yellow, and red markings indicate when obstacles are detected within sensor detection range.

With the Cross Traffic Warning, the display also warns of crossing objects.

To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

View on central display



Colored markings around the vehicle indicate that obstacles have been detected within sensor detection range.

When the Park Distance Control display is overlaid by other systems, e.g., the navigation system, a minimized display is shown to the side of the central display. Park Distance Control is still active.

System limits

Detection capability

The function for protecting the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when passing by.

Park Distance Control does not detect when an obstacle moves later. If necessary, the area to the side of the vehicle must be captured again.

Trailer towing

The rear functions of Park Distance Control and Active Park Distance Control with Side Protection are deactivated when towing a trailer or when the trailer socket is occupied.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Park Distance Control displays on the central display are hidden when the system is activated.

Obstacles next to the vehicle are not displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the rear functions of Park Distance Control remain switched on when trailer towing is enabled.

The icon for trailer towing is shown on the central display.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

Unwarranted warnings

Unwarranted warnings may be given if the system limits of Park Distance Control are reached.

Malfunction

If the Park Distance Control system may not be operational, the Attention icon appears on the central display.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the sensor detection range may not be shown on the central display.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Park Distance Control may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

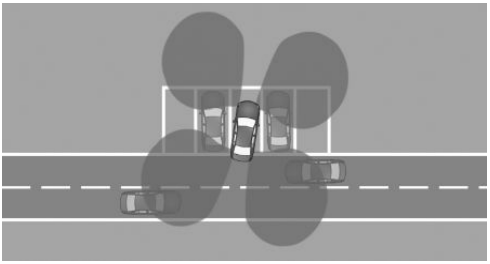
Cross Traffic Warning

Principle

The Cross Traffic Warning helps the driver by providing visual and acoustic warnings when driving through confusing exits or pulling out of perpendicular parking spaces.

Road users approaching from the side are detected earlier than is possible from the driver's seat.

This system warns when other road users are approaching, e.g., by an indicator on the central display.



The sensors monitor the area in front of and behind the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The Cross Traffic Warning is controlled by the following sensors:

- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Side radar sensors, front.

Turning on the cross traffic warning automatically

The Cross Traffic Warning activates automatically as soon as the Park Distance Control or panorama view is activated and a selector lever position is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

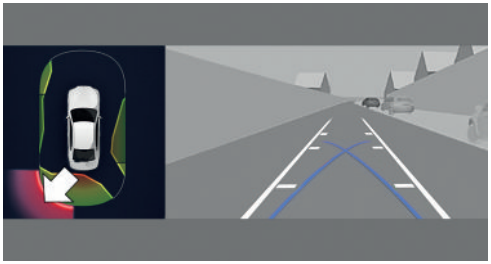
If a gear position is engaged, the front system turns on.

Turning off the cross traffic warning automatically

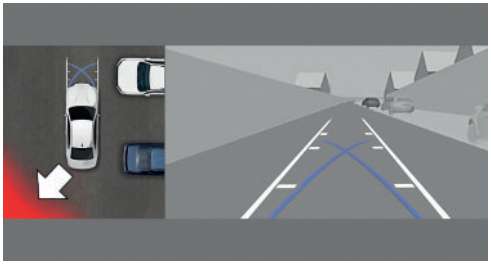
The Cross Traffic Warning deactivates automatically when driving in excess of a certain speed.

Visual warning

View on central display

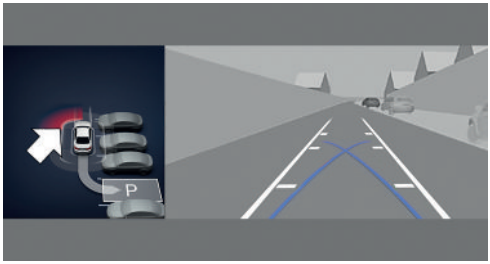


Display with standard equipment.



Display with Parking Assistant Plus.

In camera view, the area around the vehicle is shown in red in the vehicle top view if another vehicle is detected by the radar sensors.



In assistance view, the area around the vehicle is shown in red in Assist View if another vehicle is detected by the radar sensors.



In the panorama view camera image, the respective edge is shown in red if vehicles have been detected by the radar sensors.

The view of the vehicle's rear or front is displayed depending on the selector lever position engaged. Only the view of the rear may appear, depending on vehicle equipment.

View on driver's display



When a parking assistance system is on, the respective edge is shown in red if the radar sensors have detected other vehicles.

Warning light in exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if the rear sensors have detected other vehicles while the vehicle is reversing.

Depending on national-market version, the warning light flashes when the vehicle is at a standstill and reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning of the Cross Traffic Warning function, an acoustic signal sounds if your vehicle moves in the corresponding direction.

Depending on national-market version, the acoustic signal sounds when the vehicle has stopped while a gear position or reverse gear is engaged.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Additional information:

Collision warning systems, refer to page 323.

Functional limitations

The Cross Traffic Warning may be limited in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.
- If the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, the cross traffic warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

Drive-Off Monitoring

Principle

Drive-Off Monitoring reduces the drive power below walking speed down to a standstill if an obstacle is detected very close to the vehicle while the driver is pressing the accelerator pedal quickly and firmly. This can reduce the risk of a collision, e.g., if the accelerator pedal and brake pedal are mixed up.

If obstacles are detected in front of and behind the vehicle, the system brakes the vehicle to a standstill.

Drive-Off Monitoring can be activated/deactivated on the central display.

This braking can be canceled, e.g., by fully pressing the accelerator pedal twice.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Sensors

Drive-Off Monitoring is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Front camera.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

To use Drive-Off Monitoring, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Selector lever position D or R is engaged.
- Obstacles in the immediate vicinity are detected in front of or behind the vehicle.
- The accelerator pedal is heavily applied, nearly to the end point.

Activating/deactivating Drive-Off Monitoring

1. To activate/deactivate Drive-Off Monitoring, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking" / "Drive-Off Monitoring".
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on national-market version, this system automatically becomes operational for the next drive.

Disabling the Drive-Off Monitoring braking function

The Drive-Off Monitoring braking function is disabled in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is released and pressed again.
- After the accelerator pedal has been fully pressed two times.

View on central display



As soon as this system activates, an icon and a corresponding message appear on the central display.

Functional limitation

Drive-Off Monitoring is restricted when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack.

Malfunction

A Check Control message appears if the Drive-Off Monitoring system malfunctions.

Drive-Off Monitoring may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Parking assistance systems

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, various parking assistance systems and functions actively help the driver when parking or reversing.

The following parking assistance systems can be used:

- Reverse Collision Mitigation, refer to page 238.
- Automatic Park Assistant, refer to page 241.
- Back Up Assistant, refer to page 246.
- Maneuver Assistant, refer to page 249.
- Remote Control Parking, refer to page 252.

Depending on the active parking assistance system, the camera view on the central display shows all or some of the vehicle's surroundings.

Some parking assistance systems can be configured from the central display.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button on the steering wheel



The Park Assist key is located on the left-hand-side of the steering wheel.

The icon on the Park Assist key illuminates depending on the situation:

- The icon is not illuminated: The Park Assist key is currently inoperative.
- The icon is illuminated white: The Park Assist key can be used. The vehicle speed must be below approx. 22 mph /35 km/h.
- The icon is illuminated green: A parking assistance system is active.

Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Front camera.

- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Calling up Park menu

Some parking assistance systems can be set individually in the Park menu.

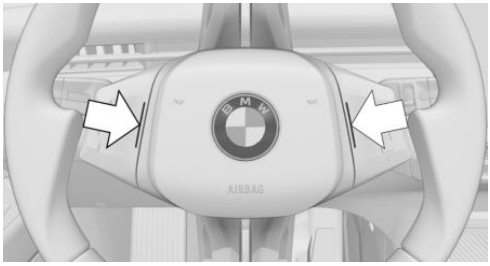
1. To open the Parking menu, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking".
2. Select the desired settings.

Enabling/disabling the acoustic signal

1. To enable/disable the acoustic signal for available parking spaces, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking" / "Sound when man- euver is available".
2. Select the desired setting.

Displays

Indicator on steering wheel



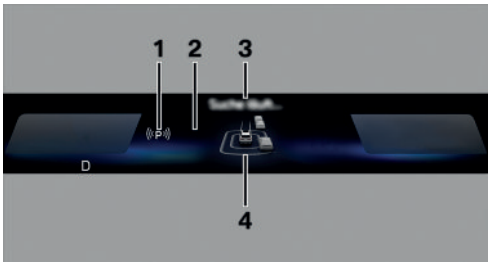
The status of the parking assistance system currently in use is indicated as follows by the LEDs next to the keypads on the steering wheel:

- LEDs illuminate green: A driving maneuver is being performed.
- LEDs flash green: The driving maneuver is complete and the driver must take control of the vehicle.
- LEDs slowly flash green: A driving maneuver is ready but not currently being performed. The system is waiting for driver interaction. Corresponding prompts appear on the central display.
- LEDs flash red: A driving maneuver has been stopped or canceled, or there is an error. Driver must pay closer attention.

View on driver's display

Overview

The driver's display contains views from some parking assistance systems, e.g., Automatic Park Assistant.



1 Status of parking assistance systems
2 Function selection
3 Information
4 Assist View

Status of parking assistance systems

The driver's display shows the status of the parking assistance systems. As well as the icon, additional messages also appear, as applicable.

The following parking assistance systems are displayed:

- Automatic Park Assistant.
- Back Up Assistant.
- Maneuver Assistant.

Icon	Meaning
	No search for parking assistance system offers. No other parking assistance systems available. Parking assistance systems have failed.
	Searching for parking assistance system offers is active.
	White: An available driving maneuver is selected but is not being performed. Functional requirements have not been met or the function transfer is complete. Green: A parking assistance system is on. Functions are used depending on the active system.
	The Maneuver Assistant records the driving maneuver to be saved.

View on central display

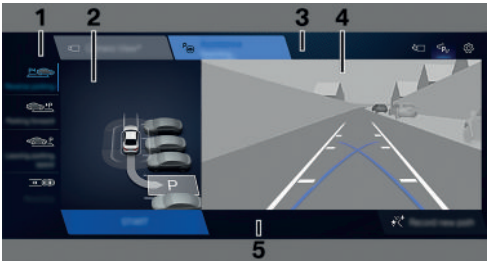
Turning on parking assistance view

To turn on parking view in the assistance view, press the Park Assist key on the left side of the steering wheel.

The display shows possible parking methods from the Automatic Park Assistant and, depending on the gear position engaged, the image from the Rear View Camera or front camera.

The indicator on the driver's display shows the status of the Automatic Park Assistant.

Parking assistance view



1 Selection of parking assistance systems
2 Assist View
3 Toolbar, top
4 Camera image
5 Toolbar, bottom

Toolbar, left

Depending on availability, different parking assistance systems are shown on the left-hand toolbar. The icon illuminates blue when a system is selected.

- "Reverse parking"

  The Automatic Park Assistant can be used to reverse into a parking space automatically.
- "Forward parking"

  The Automatic Park Assistant can be used to move forward into a parking space automatically.
- "Drive out of parking space"

  The Automatic Park Assistant can be used to reverse out of a parking space automatically.
- "Drive out of parking space"

  The Automatic Park Assistant can be used to move forward out of a parking space automatically.
- "Assisted reversing"

The Back Up Assistant can be used to drive back over a previous route with automated steering.

- "" The Maneuver Assistant can perform a recorded driving maneuver automatically.

Toolbar, top

The top toolbar is used to select parking view for the camera views and parking assistance systems.

The top toolbar can be used to select different camera views and settings, depending on vehicle equipment.

The camera cleaning can be turned on manually as needed.

When a selection is made, a blue line illuminates below the icon.

- "Camera view" Parking view can be turned on for various individual camera-based systems.
- "Assistance" Parking view can be turned on for various parking assistance systems.
- The acoustic warning of Park Distance Control can be enabled/disabled.
- Settings can be configured in the Parking menu.
- The automatic or semi-automatic camera perspective is shown, depending on national-market version.
- When drive-ready state is on, the Rear View Camera cleaning and, depending on vehicle equipment, the front camera cleaning can be turned on.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, the integrated universal remote control can be used to open/close programmed garage doors.

Additional information:

- Integrated universal remote control, refer to page 279.
- Turning on camera cleaning manually, refer to page 43.

Toolbar, bottom

Depending on the active parking assistance system, various functions can be selected, e.g.:

- "Start" When selected, an Automatic Park Assistant parking maneuver or a Back Up Assistant driving maneuver can be started.
- "Cancel" When selected, an Automatic Park Assistant parking maneuver or a Back Up Assistant driving maneuver can be canceled.
- "Record new path" A Maneuver Assistant driving maneuver can be recorded.
- A parking maneuver can be continued remotely using the My BMW App on a smartphone.

Using Assist View

Assist View can be shown on the central display.

Function	Operation
Select the parking space.	Tap the parking space once with a finger.
Zoom in on Assist View.	Open Assist View with two fingers.
Zoom out of Assist View.	Close Assist View with two fingers.

Function	Operation
Tilt Assist View.	Drag Assist View up/down with one finger.
Rotate Assist View.	Drag Assist View left/right with one finger.

Turning off parking view automatically

Parking view deactivates automatically on the driver's display and central display when the vehicle exceeds a certain speed while moving forward.

Limited operability

When the parking display is on, the operability of some central display areas is restricted.

To operate these display areas, the parking display must be turned off.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Parking assistance systems may be restricted by the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Reverse Collision Mitigation

Principle

Reverse Collision Mitigation initiates emergency braking when there is an acute risk of collision.

The emergency braking intervention system can be used below walking speed when reversing or coasting backward. In selector lever position N, there is no emergency braking intervention.

Emergency braking intervention is provided when crossing objects are detected or when objects are located behind or to the side of the vehicle.

After an emergency braking intervention, the camera view and a message appear on the central display.

Reverse Collision Mitigation can be activated/deactivated on the central display.

An emergency braking intervention can be disabled temporarily if objects are detected behind or to the side of the vehicle.

Depending on national-market version, up to ten location-based deactivation points, which prevent an emergency braking intervention, can be stored and edited.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Sensors

Reverse Collision Mitigation is controlled by the following sensors:

- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Rear View Camera.

Enabling/disabling Reverse Collision Mitigation

1. To activate/deactivate Reverse Collision Mitigation, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking" / "Reverse Collision Mitigation".
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on national-market version, this system automatically becomes operational for the next drive.

Enabling/disabling monitoring ranges

Various monitoring ranges for emergency braking intervention can be enabled or disabled.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking" / "Reverse Collision Mitigation".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Crossing traffic": Emergency braking intervention when reversing if there is a risk of collision with crossing objects.
   - "Active PDC rear": Emergency braking intervention when reversing if there is a risk of collision with objects behind the vehicle.
   - "Side protection": Emergency braking intervention when reversing if there is a risk of collision with objects on the side of the vehicle.

     If monitoring behind the vehicle is disabled, automatic monitoring of the vehicle's side areas is disabled.

Depending on national-market version, settings automatically become operational for the next drive.

Disabling an emergency braking intervention temporarily

If an emergency braking intervention is performed due to an object behind or to the side of the vehicle, the emergency braking intervention can be temporarily disabled on the central display.

In the message that appears, select the following option: "Deactivate temporarily".

As the vehicle is driven further in this environment, no further emergency braking intervention is performed due to an object behind or to the side of the vehicle.

This system reactivates automatically when Park Distance Control is operational again.

An emergency braking intervention due to a crossing object cannot be disabled temporarily. If there is a risk of collision, the emergency braking intervention will continue.

Disabling an emergency braking intervention automatically

Functional requirements

To enable automatic deactivation of the emergency braking intervention system due to objects behind/next to the vehicle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.
- A position finding signal must be received.
- A BMW ID must be activated.

Saving deactivation points

After an emergency braking intervention, the current location can be saved as a deactivation point.

In the message that appears, select the following option: "Excluded positions" / "Save".

Deactivation points are saved with the following information, e.g.:

- With the city/town.
- With the city/town and the street.
- A default name.

The default name for saved deactivation points can be changed.

Editing deactivation points

Saved deactivation points can be renamed or deleted.

1. To edit a deactivation point, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking" / "Excluded positions".

   A list of all saved deactivation points appears.
2. Select and edit the desired deactivation point.

Driving off after an emergency braking intervention

The vehicle brakes are held after an emergency braking intervention due to an object behind or to the side of the vehicle. The object can be approached cautiously. To move slowly forward, lightly press and release the accelerator pedal as needed. Pressing the accelerator pedal longer causes the vehicle to drive off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The brakes releases automatically after an emergency braking intervention due to a crossing object. The vehicle drives off as soon as the crossing object is no longer behind the vehicle.

Functional limitations

After vehicle delivery, the emergency braking intervention for the rear or side of the vehicle may be restricted because the calibration process for the Rear View Camera has not been completed yet. To complete the calibration process, drive a short distance of a few miles in daylight.

Reverse Collision Mitigation cannot be used in the following situations, e.g.:

- The Emergency Braking function is deactivated while Hill Descent Control is regulating the speed.
- With trailer towing.

If necessary, deactivate this system temporarily.

Additional information:

Hill Descent Control, refer to page 211.

Malfunction

A Check Control message appears if the Reverse Collision Mitigation system malfunctions.

Reverse Collision Mitigation may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic Park Assistant

Principle

The Automatic Park Assistant provides support when parking in parallel and perpendicular parking spaces and when driving out of such parking spaces.

The ultrasonic sensors and cameras measure the surroundings on both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly forward. Suitable parking spaces are calculated based on the objects detected, e.g., parked vehicles or lined parking spaces. The status of the system is shown on the driver's display and the central display.

The system calculates the best possible parking line for driving in or out of parking spaces, and takes control of the vehicle during the parking operation.

The parking operation while parking is performed automatically.

When driving out of parallel parking spaces, the vehicle maneuvers automatically until it reaches a position where it can be driven out of the parking space without further steering movements.

When driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, the vehicle is maneuvered out of the parking space to enable continued driving in the desired direction.

The driver can reduce the speed during parking by depressing the brake pedal.

A parking maneuver can be interrupted and continued manually.

The parking maneuver can also be performed using Remote Control Parking on a smartphone.

Additional information:

Remote Control Parking, refer to page 252.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

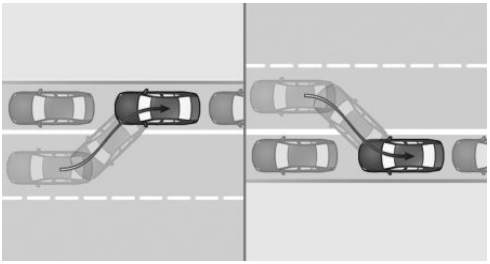
When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

WARNING

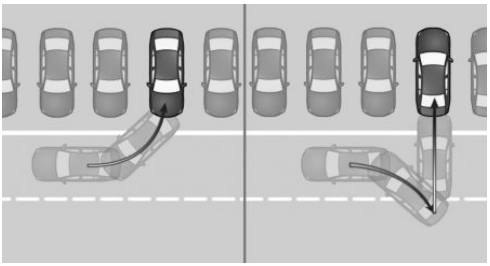
The system can steer over or onto curbs, which can result in an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Parking methods

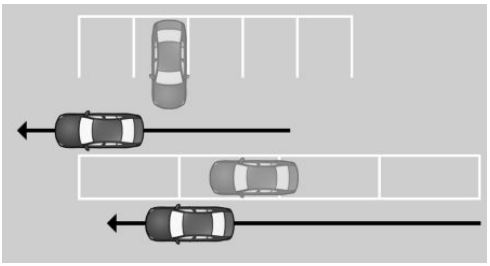
Automatic Park Assistant supports the following functions:



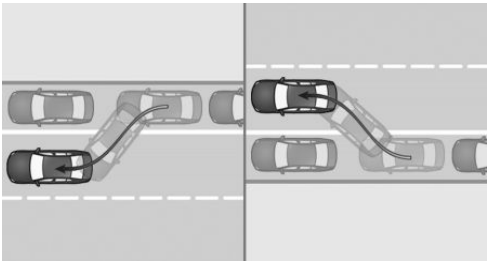
When parallel parking: Parking in reverse, parallel to the road.



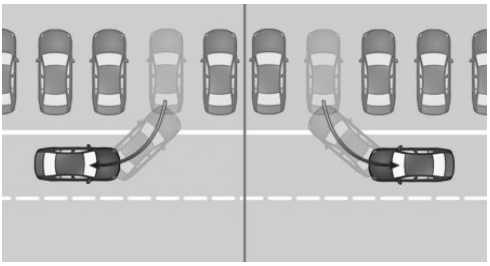
When perpendicular parking: Pulling into a parking space in reverse, or moving forward into a parking space perpendicular to the road.



When parking in parking spaces with parking lines.



When driving out of parallel parking spaces.



When driving out of perpendicular parking spaces.

Sensors

The Automatic Park Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

Measurement of parking spaces

To measure parking spaces, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Driving forwards at a maximum speed of 22 mph /35 km/h.
- A maximum distance to the row of parking spaces of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

To find suitable parking spaces, the following functional requirements must be met:

Longitudinal parking:

- Minimum length of detected object, e.g., parking vehicle, approx. 3.0 ft / 1.0 m.
- Minimum length of gap between two objects: Vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth of approx. 5.0 ft / 1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- Minimum length of detected object, e.g., parking vehicle, approx. 3.0 ft / 1.0 m.
- Minimum width of gap: Vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- The minimum depth corresponds to your vehicle's length.

  The depth of perpendicular parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces.

Parking lines:

- The parking space must be clearly marked with lines.
- The one-time calibration of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. To complete the calibration process, drive a short distance of a few miles in daylight.

Parking operation

To pull into a parking space, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Drive-ready state is on and the brake pedal is being depressed.
- The doors and cargo area are closed.

Leaving parking spaces

To pull out of a parking space, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle was parked using the Automatic Park Assistant, and an object has been detected in the area around the vehicle.
- The vehicle was manually reversed into a parallel parking space or driven forwards into a perpendicular parking space. Objects in the vehicle's immediate surroundings are detected. The distance to a detected curb is at least 6 inches/15 cm.

Displays

Status of the Automatic Park Assistant

The current status of the Automatic Park Assistant is shown as follows:

- On the driver's display with an icon in the status field.
- With an icon in assistance view and a message on the central display.
- By the LEDs next to the keypads on the steering wheel.

Selecting a parking method

The toolbar on the left side of the central display contains various icons for selecting the parking method.

The order that the icons appear corresponds to the parking option prioritized by the system.

Parking using the Automatic Park Assistant

1. To park using the Automatic Park Assistant, for the parking space search, drive past the parking spaces at a maximum speed of 22 mph / 35 km/h and at a maximum distance of 5.0 ft / 1.5 m.
2. Open parking view:

   -  Press the Park Assist key on the left side of the steering wheel. Assis-

tance view appears on the central display.

- ▷ Tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.

  Select the following menu item: "Assistance".

- ▷ Engage reverse gear. The camera view appears.

  Select the following menu item: "Assistance".

The parking space search is indicated on the driver's display by a status icon and a message.

3. Select the parking method:
   - ▷ Select the parking method selected by the system on the driver's display by pressing the OK button on the left-hand-side of the steering wheel.
   - ▷ Select the parking space and the method for forward or reverse parking on the central display.

     Select the following menu item: "Start".
4. Depress the brake pedal then release it. Remove your hands from the steering wheel. The system takes control of the parking operation.

   The status icon for the Automatic Park Assistant illuminates green on both displays. A message indicates that the system is performing the parking operation.
5. Follow the instructions on the respective display.

   The speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal. Other interventions will interrupt or cancel the parking operation.

   Depending on the national-market version, an acoustic warning from Park Distance Control sounds when approaching an object.

   At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is engaged and a message is shown on the respective display.
6. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Driving out of a parking space using the Automatic Park Assistant

1. Switch on drive-ready state to pull out of the parking space using the Automatic Park Assistant.
2. Open parking view:
   - ▷ Press the Park Assist key on the left side of the steering wheel. Assistance view appears on the central display.
   - ▷ Tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.

     Select the following menu item: "Assistance".
   - ▷ Engage reverse gear. The camera view appears.

     Select the following menu item: "Assistance".
3. Select the method for driving out of a parking space:
   - ▷ Select the method for driving out of a parking space on the driver's display by pressing the OK button on the left-hand-side of the steering wheel.
   - ▷ On the central display: Select the desired method for driving out of a parking space. To drive out of a perpendicular parking space, select the desired direction for driving out of the parking space.

     Select the following menu item: "Start".
4. Depress the brake pedal and remove your hands from the steering wheel. The system takes control of the operation for driving out of the parking space.

The status icon for the Automatic Park Assistant illuminates green on both displays. A message indicates that the system is performing the operation for driving out of a parking space.

5. Follow the instructions on the respective display.

   The speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal. Other interventions will interrupt or cancel the parking operation.

   At the end of the operation for driving out of a parking space, a message to take control of the vehicle is shown on both displays and the vehicle is held by the brakes.

6. Make sure that the traffic situation allows you to continue driving, and accept control of the vehicle.

   The Automatic Park Assistant is turned off automatically.

Canceling Automatic Park Assistant manually

The Automatic Park Assistant can be canceled as follows, for example. After cancellation, selector lever position P engages automatically, thus securing the vehicle.

- In assistance view, select the following menu item: "Cancel".
-  Press the Park Assist key on the left side of the steering wheel.

The Automatic Park Assistant can be canceled as follows, for example. The system is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

- Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- Step lightly on the accelerator pedal and move the steering wheel slightly at the same time.
- Depress the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

Stopping parking assistants automatically

The Automatic Park Assistant stops automatically in the following situations, e.g.:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes control of the steering.
- When pressing the accelerator pedal or operating the selector lever.
- When setting the parking brake.
- With open cargo area.
- With open hood.
- With the doors open.

The vehicle is braked to a stop after the parking maneuver is canceled.

Canceling Automatic Park Assistant automatically

The Automatic Park Assistant is canceled automatically in situations such as the following:

- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- When changing over to another function on the central display, e.g. navigation.
- When turning off assistance view.
- On snow-covered or slippery road.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- With insufficient distances, which are indicated by Park Distance Control.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts is exceeded.

When the system is automatically aborted, selector lever position P is engaged.

A message is displayed where applicable.

Resuming the Automatic Park Assistant

After an interruption of the Automatic Park Assistant, the parking operation can be continued at the same point by selecting a message on the central display.

System limits

No parking assistance

The Automatic Park Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- When towing a trailer.
- For special parking spaces, e.g., metered parking spaces with automatic locking mechanisms, or mechanical parking systems.

Functional limitations

The Automatic Park Assistant may be limited in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- If leaves or snow have accumulated in the parking space.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A message appears on the central display if the Automatic Park Assistant malfunctions.

The Automatic Park Assistant may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Back Up Assistant

Principle

The Back Up Assistant helps when reversing, e.g., when pulling out of tight or unclear parking spots or roads.

The vehicle automatically records its forward travel during the last recorded maneuver up to a maximum distance of 656 ft/200 m.

This stored distance can be driven in reverse with automated steering.

The Back Up Assistant takes control of steering. The driver must control the speed by depressing the accelerator and brake pedals.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

WARNING

The system can steer over or onto curbs, which can result in an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The Back Up Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Front camera.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

To use the Back Up Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph /35 km/h.
- No trailer towing.
- Sufficiently bright light conditions on the stored distance covered.
- The cameras on the vehicle must be clean and clear.
- The one-time calibration of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. To complete the calibration process, drive a short distance of a few miles in daylight.

Driving in reverse with automated steering

Depending on availability, the Back Up Assistant can be used to reverse with automatic steering.

1. To reverse with automatic steering, close the driver's door and turn on the drive-ready state.
2. Open parking view:
   -  When the vehicle is stationary, press the Park Assist key on the left side of the steering wheel. Assistance view appears on the central display.
   - Tap the parking view icon on the central display. The camera view appears.

     Select the following menu item: "Assistance".
   - Engage reverse gear. The camera view appears.

     Select the following menu item: "Assistance".
3. Select the Back Up Assistant:
   - On the driver's display, select the Back Up Assistant by pressing the OK button on the left side of the steering wheel.
   - On the central display, go through the menu as follows: "Assisted reversing" / "Start".
4. Depress the brake pedal then release it.

   Reverse gear engages automatically.

   The distance covered by the recorded maneuver is shown on the central display and driver's display.

   The status symbol for the Back Up Assistant illuminates green on both displays. A message indicates that the Back Up Assistant has taken control of the steering.

5. Take your hands off the steering wheel and back up carefully by depressing the accelerator and brake pedals.

   Follow the instructions on the respective display as necessary.

   In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.

6. Shortly before reaching the end of a recorded maneuver, an acoustic signal sounds and a message appears on both displays. The LEDs next to the steering wheel keypads also flash red.

   Stop at the end of the recorded maneuver and take control of the vehicle, e.g., by engaging forward gear.

Canceling the Back Up Assistant manually

The Back Up Assistant can be stopped manually:

- In assistance view, select the following menu item: "Cancel".
-  Press the Park Assist key on the left side of the steering wheel.

Canceling the Back Up Assistant automatically

The Back Up Assistant is canceled automatically in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes control of the steering.
- When switching from reverse gear to another selector lever position.
- When safety systems activate or intervene, e.g., rear emergency braking intervention.
- When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for instance with maximum steering-wheel angle.
- When the Back Up Assistant view is turned off.
- In case of a slippery surface.
- When the vehicle is rolling such as on a slope.
- In case of changed ambient conditions.
- When the trailer power socket is occupied or when trailer towing is activated.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph /10 km/h.
- If sensor functionality is limited beyond approx. 164 ft/50 m.
- When the end of the recorded maneuver is reached.

System limits

Speed threshold

The maximum speed when reversing is limited to approx. 6 mph /10 km/h.

A warning is issued at a speed of approx. 4 mph /7 km/h.

If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.

Functional limitations

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving the stored distance covered in reverse. The following influences, for example, can lead to deviation:

- Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.
- Certain road characteristics such as gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.
- Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the route, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like weather.
- Lighting conditions have changed.

Maneuver Assistant

Principle

The Maneuver Assistant helps with parking and maneuvering by recording and automatically performing repeated maneuvers.

Driving maneuvers must be performed manually and then recorded. When the vehicle reaches the activation range for the distance covered by the recorded driving maneuver, this maneuver can be activated on the central display or driver's display.

Once a maneuver is activated, this system takes control of the vehicle and performs the maneuver automatically. Driving maneuvers can also be performed using Remote Control Parking on a smartphone.

Up to 15 driving maneuvers can be recorded at different locations, and identical driving maneuvers with different conditions, e.g., weather conditions, can be recorded. Up to four overlapping driving maneuvers can be recorded.

The distance covered by each maneuver must be between 20 ft / 6 m and 656 ft / 200 m. In total, approx. 3,937 ft / 1,200 m can be recorded.

When the maximum total distance is reached, the distance that must be deleted to record an additional maneuver is displayed.

When recording a driving maneuver, the Automatic Park Assistant may offer to help with parking. This parking maneuver will be saved with the recording.

Additional information:

Remote Control Parking, refer to page 252.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

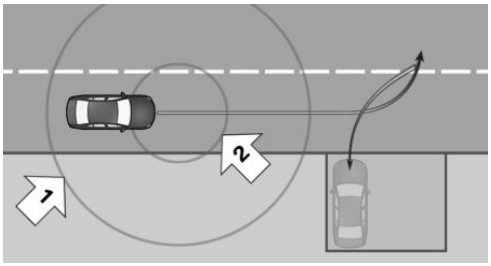
WARNING

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

WARNING

The system can steer over or onto curbs, which can result in an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Detection range



The detection range for a driving maneuver is divided into the following areas:

- Proximity range, arrow 1: The system begins localization in the background within a range of approx. 49 ft / 15 m around the recorded driving maneuver.
- Activation range, arrow 2: Within a radius of approx. 10 ft/3 m around the recorded driving maneuver, and up to approx. 20 ft/6 m before the end point, the recorded driving maneuver is shown automatically on the central display and driver's display. The driving maneuver can be activated on the central display or driver's display. Once a maneuver is activated, this system takes control of the vehicle and performs the maneuver automatically.

Sensors

The Maneuver Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

To use the Maneuver Assistant, the one-off calibration process of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. To complete the calibration process, drive a short distance of a few miles in daylight.

Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Recording a driving maneuver

1. To record a driving maneuver, drive the vehicle to the desired starting point.
2. Press the Park Assist key on the left side of the steering wheel. Assistance view appears on the central display.
3. "Record new path"
4. Drive the vehicle to the desired end position.

   The record icon for the driving maneuver appears.

   When recording a maneuver, do not drive faster than approx. 16 mph /25 km/h.

   While recording, the distance covered will be displayed.

   When the maximum distance covered or the maximum speed is reached, a message will be displayed and a signal tone will sound.
5. If necessary, fold in the exterior mirrors when recording. This procedure is saved for the recording.
6. Tap the Save Recording icon.

   The driving maneuver can be saved with an automatically generated name, or renamed or discarded.
7. Select the desired action.

Additional information:

Exterior mirrors, refer to page 147.

Performing a recorded driving maneuver

1. To perform the recorded maneuver, drive the vehicle into the activation area. As soon as the system detects a recorded driving maneuver, this driving maneuver is shown on the central display and driver's display.
2. ▷ On the central display:

   Tap the Activate icon for the recorded driving maneuver.

   Select the following menu item: "Start".

   ▷ On driver's display:

   Select a recorded driving maneuver by pressing the OK button on the left side of the steering wheel.

   The status symbol for the Maneuver Assistant illuminates green. The system takes control of the vehicle and performs the driving maneuver automatically.

   If the Cross Traffic Warning is issued and an emergency braking intervention is additionally performed due to a crossing object, the vehicle is braked to a stop. Resume the driving maneuver as soon as the traffic situation allows. Otherwise, the driving maneuver is canceled automatically.

   The exterior mirrors fold in automatically as necessary in order to prevent the Maneuver Assistant from being canceled automatically.
3. Follow the instructions given on the central display or driver's display.

   The speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is set.

   If necessary, fold the exterior mirrors back out after they have folded in automatically.

Canceling the Maneuver Assistant manually

The Maneuver Assistant can be canceled manually, e.g.:

- ▷ In assistance view, select the following menu item: "Cancel".
- ▷ Press the Park Assist key on the left side of the steering wheel.
- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- ▷ Step lightly on the accelerator pedal and move the steering wheel slightly at the same time.
- ▷ Depress the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

The Maneuver Assistant is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Stopping the Maneuver Assistant automatically

If the Maneuver Assistant performs a driving maneuver, the system stops automatically in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes control of the steering.
- ▷ When pressing the accelerator pedal or operating the selector lever.
- ▷ When selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ With open cargo area.
- ▷ With open hood.
- ▷ With the doors open.
- ▷ When the Cross Traffic Warning turns on automatically or Reverse Collision Mitigation is activated.

The vehicle is braked to a stop after the driving maneuver is canceled.

Canceling the Maneuver Assistant automatically

If the Maneuver Assistant performs a driving maneuver, the system stops automatically in the following situations, for example:

- Driver's door is open.
- If the view on the central display or driver's display is closed, or when messages are superimposed.
- When switching to another function or view on the central display.
- If a Check Control message or other messages appear due to a fault in a monitored system.
- If the parking display fails briefly.
- If Dynamic Stability Control deactivates or performs an intervention.
- With trailer towing.
- If the position finding for the driving maneuver is lost.
- If the maximum duration of the driving maneuver is reached.
- When the system limits of the ultrasonic sensors and cameras are reached.
- In case of obstacles.
- On snow-covered or slippery road.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.

In the event of an automatic cancellation of the system, the vehicle is decelerated to a complete stop and selector lever position P is engaged.

Resuming the Maneuver Assistant

After the Maneuver Assistant stops, the driving maneuver can be continued at the same point by selecting a message on the central display.

If canceled, a driving maneuver can be continued as applicable. Restart the Maneuver Assistant and follow the instructions on the central display or driver's display.

Editing recorded driving maneuvers

1. To edit one or more recorded driving maneuvers, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Parking" / "Recorded paths".
2. Select the driving maneuver to be edited.
3. Select the desired action.

Functional limitations

The Maneuver Assistant does not provide support when towing a trailer.

System limits can cause functional limitations such as in the following situations:

- If there is a poor signal for position finding.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- If driving maneuvers are recorded but the system's minimum distance to other objects cannot be maintained.
- Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the distance covered, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like light conditions or weather.
- Overlapping maneuvers are shown at a delay when driving into activation range.
- At multilevel parking garages, maneuvers are recorded on different parking levels or across several parking levels.

If the camera is not fully calibrated after vehicle delivery, an icon appears on the central display when reverse gear is engaged.

Tap the icon and follow the instructions on the central display.

Remote Control Parking

Principle

With Remote Control Parking, the vehicle can be driven remotely from outside the vehicle when parking and maneuvering.

The parking operation is performed independently from outside the vehicle using a smartphone in the My BMW App. Remote Control Parking makes getting in and out of the vehicle easier.

The function can be used when parking and maneuvering using the Maneuver Assistant and the Automatic Park Assistant.

When using this function, observe applicable national regulations.

When parking in a suitable spot, e.g., a garage, the vehicle's parking position can be corrected by maneuvering manually with the My BMW App.

A parking operation that has already been started can be continued at any time with Remote Control Parking.

The smartphone is protected against unauthorized use.

The low-beam headlights are turned on for the duration of the parking operation.

A parking operation offered by the Automatic Park Assistant is only available for Remote Control Parking for a short time after exiting the vehicle.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Functional requirements

To use Remote Control Parking, the following functional requirements must be met:

- All occupants have left the vehicle.
- The doors and cargo area are closed.
- Make sure that no one is located within range of the parking operation.
- Make sure that no one is located in the narrow spaces between the vehicle and stationary objects, e.g., between the vehicle and a garage wall.
- To manually correct the vehicle position using the My BMW App, the minimum width of the parking space must be the vehicle width plus 1.9 ft/0.6 m.
- The smartphone is compatible with Remote Control Parking.
- The My BMW App must be installed on a compatible smartphone.
- The My BMW App must be linked to a ConnectedDrive account.
- Notifications for starting a remote-controlled parking operation has been enabled in the My BMW App.
- Bluetooth must be enabled on the smartphone.
- The smartphone must be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
- The distance between vehicle and smartphone is no greater than approx. 19 ft/6 m.
- To select the function on the parking display, a valid digital key must be set up in the vehicle and correctly detected.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 103.

Parking with Remote Control Parking

1. To perform the parking maneuver with Remote Control Parking, engage selector lever position P.
2. Leave the vehicle and close the doors and cargo area.
3. Open Remote Control Parking in the My BMW app and maneuver forward or backward, or select the desired parking method.
4. Follow the instructions on the smartphone.

   Stop the vehicle manually if obstacles are present.

   Depending on the option selected in the My BMW app, the vehicle is either parked at the end of the parking maneuver or you can take control of the vehicle again.

System limits

Due to ambient conditions, e.g., impaired Bluetooth connection transmission due to external faults, Remote Control Parking may be interrupted.

If the power supply of the vehicle battery is not sufficiently ensured, e.g., due to excessive discharge, Remote Control Parking may not be available. Follow the instructions in the My BMW App.

It may not be easy to maneuver into a parking space. This function is offered on the My BMW app but cannot be used due to ambient conditions.

If there is a functional limitation of the sensors, manual maneuvering using the My BMW App may only be possible in one direction of travel. Before maneuvering, make sure that the function is fully available.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Adaptive suspension

The adaptive suspension is a variable, electronically controlled sport suspension that reduces movement of the vehicle body with a sportier driving style or on uneven roads.

Driving dynamics and driving comfort are increased through the adjustment of the chassis.

Depending on the selected drive mode, the suspension characteristics can be set to be more sporty or comfortable.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the regulated rear axle differential lock is adjusted to the respective traction conditions as necessary.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

Adaptive M chassis

The Adaptive M Suspension is a variable, electronically controlled sports suspension that reduces movement of the vehicle body while driving with a sporty style or on uneven roads, and is thus designed to be sporty.

Driving dynamics and driving comfort are increased through the adjustment of the chassis.

Depending on the selected drive mode, the suspension characteristics can be set to be more sporty or comfortable.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the regulated rear axle differential lock is adjusted to the respective traction conditions as necessary.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

Adaptive 2-axle air suspension

Principle

The adaptive 2-axle air suspension uses air springs to ensure the greatest possible driving comfort. Regardless of the load, the vehicle will be maintained at the configured vehicle level.

Height adjustments are shown on the central display in the menu for the adaptive 2-axle air suspension.

The suspension settings can be set to more comfortable or more sporty via My Modes.

Depending on the driving situation, the vehicle level can be set to different levels:

- "HIGH": The raised vehicle level setting is designed for driving with reduced speed on light off-road terrain or uneven ground.

  As the driving speed increases, the vehicle is lowered and the system switches to automatic mode.
- "AUTO": The automatic setting is designed as the default setting for trips with normal road conditions and normal speeds.

  The vehicle is lowered to the lowest driving level in two stages as the driving speed increases, depending on the drive mode.

In SPORT drive mode, the vehicle is lowered to the lowest driving level regardless of the speed.

- "LOW": The lowest adjustable vehicle level setting is designed, e.g., to make getting in or loading easier.

  When the vehicle is stationary, the vehicle level can be adjusted as follows:

  - On the central display.
  - With the button in the tailgate.
  - With the My BMW app.

  When driving off, the vehicle is raised and the system switches to automatic mode.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

Safety information

WARNING

Adjusting the vehicle height may result in trapped body parts or damaged vehicle parts. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When adjusting the vehicle height, make sure that the areas of movement around the vehicle and at the wheel housing are free.

Functional requirements

All doors must be closed to change the vehicle level.

If a door is opened while the vehicle is being raised or lowered, the process stops. The process continues after closing the door.

Setting the vehicle level manually

1. To manually adjust the vehicle level, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Air suspension".
2. Select the desired setting.

The My Vehicle menu can also be used to bring up the Air Suspension menu via quick access.

Vehicle levels can also be selected in advance. The vehicle level is changed once the requirements for the respective vehicle level are met.

View on central display

Indicator light

A level change by the self-leveling suspension is indicated by an indicator light on the central display. The indicator light can be operated.

Icon	Meaning
	Indicator light flashes white: Vehicle level is raised.
	Indicator light flashes white: Vehicle level is lowered.

Selecting the indicator light opens the Air Suspension menu. A different vehicle level can be selected as necessary.

Air Suspension menu

The status of the self-leveling suspension, ongoing level changes, and further information is shown in the Air Suspension menu.

Setting the vehicle level automatically

The vehicle lowers automatically when driving in the following situations:

- When switching to SPORT drive mode.
- At higher speeds.

When a set vehicle level is exited due to the speed, the vehicle level will be adjusted according to the selected driving mode.

Location-based height adjustment

Principle

If the same vehicle level is frequently required at a certain location, the vehicle level can be adjusted automatically based on the location.

Activation points can be saved for location-based height adjustment.

Automation is helpful if, for example, frequently driving a route that requires larger ground clearance. If the vehicle reaches a saved activation point and all functional requirements have been met, the vehicle is automatically raised to its high level.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, switching to a lower vehicle level can also be automated based on the location.

Functional requirements

To use location-based adjustment of the vehicle level, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The speed is not too high.
- A position finding signal must be received.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Saving and managing activation points

Multiple activation points can be saved and managed in the Routines section of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant for location-based adjustment of the vehicle level.

1. To save and configure an activation point, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Air suspension".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. "Location-based height adjustment"
4. Apply the desired settings.

Additional information:

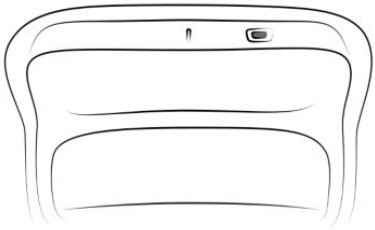
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 80.

Adjusting vehicle level using button on tailgate

Principle

To make loading/unloading easier, the vehicle can be lowered to the lowest level using the button on the tailgate.

Setting the vehicle level





To adjust the vehicle level, press the button on the inside of the tailgate. The vehicle is lowered to the lowest level. Press the button again to raise the vehicle.

The flashing of the LED in the button indicates the level change.

While raising, the vehicle raises itself to the last selected level or the normal level.

Canceling a level change

To cancel a level change, press the button in the tailgate again. The vehicle raises or lowers itself back to the starting level.

Lowering the vehicle level via the My BMW app

Principle

With the My BMW App installed on a compatible smartphone, the vehicle level can be ad-

justed when the vehicle is stationary, e.g., to make getting in or loading easier.

Setting the vehicle level

To lower the vehicle with the My BMW App, proceed as follows:

1. Apply the parking brake and turn off drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
2. Closing the doors.
3. In the My BMW App, switch to the Entry height menu and follow the instructions.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Canceling the adjustment procedure

If an adjustment procedure was started with the My BMW app, it can be canceled with the app.

Activating/deactivating the self-leveling suspension

The self-leveling suspension can be deactivated, e.g., to change a wheel or for towing.

1. To activate/deactivate the self-leveling suspension, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Air suspension".
2. ▪▪▪ Select the settings icon.
3. "Service mode"

When Service Mode is activated, the vehicle level is maintained and the self-leveling suspension is deactivated.

To reactivate the self-leveling suspension, deactivate Service Mode or drive off.

The self-leveling suspension activates automatically after driving off at speeds above approx. 6 mph / 10 km/h.

Long stationary periods

During long stationary periods, the vehicle may lower itself. This is not a malfunction.

When the drive-ready state is switched on with the doors closed, the vehicle is raised to the normal level automatically.

Depending on the condition of the vehicle, raising to normal level may take several minutes.

System limits

The following system limits apply to level adjustment, for example:

- It may not be possible to change the vehicle level during sporty driving.
- It may not be possible to change the vehicle level with articulated axles.
- It may only be possible to raise the vehicle level in the drive-ready state.
- If the vehicle battery charge is too low, the vehicle level cannot be changed.
- If the vehicle level is frequently changed in quick succession, the system switches off to prevent overheating and will be temporarily unavailable or operate at a delay. Let the system cool down, if needed.
- If the payload is increased, the highest driving level may be disabled or automatically exited in order to protect the system.
- When the trailer power socket is occupied, only the normal level is available.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

In case of a malfunction, the vehicle will have changed handling characteristics or a noticeably reduced driving comfort.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving sound

The driving sound can be adjusted, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Media menu / "System sounds" / "Drive sound".
2. Select the desired setting.

The driving sound characteristics vary depending on the drive mode selected.

Active noise reduction

Active noise reduction decreases distracting vehicle noise within the interior by actively generating a sound signal.

Disabling this feature reduces overall acoustic comfort in certain driving situations.

To turn active noise reduction off and on again, go through the menu as follows: Media menu / "System sounds" / "Active noise reduction".

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Climate control

Principle

Climate control functions can be operated from the central display and using the buttons on the center console.

If the vehicle is equipped with rear passenger compartment air conditioning, the rear passenger compartment air conditioning is operated at the rear air-conditioning display.

Some functions can be operated from the My BMW App, e.g., pre-conditioning or temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

To open the Climate Control menu, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar on the central display.

In fullscreen mode, the menu bar is hidden, e.g., for third-party apps. To show the menu bar again, swipe up from the bottom edge of the central display.

Overview

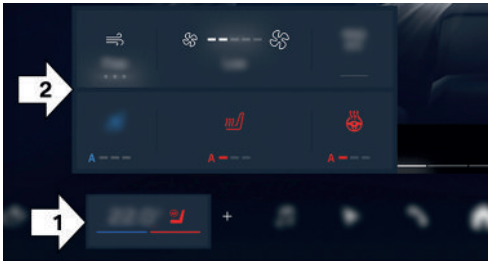
Climate menu



1 Turning the air conditioning system on/off
2 Automatic program
3 Air recirculation mode
4 Air conditioning
5 Maximum cooling
6 Air quality
7 Rear air conditioning menu
8 Settings
9 Ventilation menu
10 Air flow
11 SYNC program
12 Temperature
13 Climate control quick access

Climate control quick access

Some climate control functions can be operated manually via the climate control quick access on the central display, e.g., seat heating.



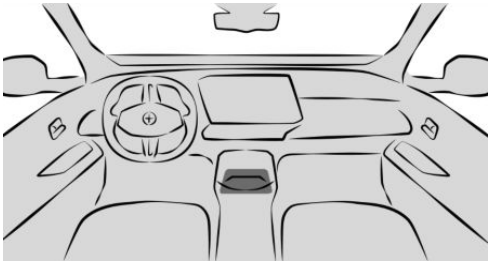
1. To bring up the climate control quick access, tap the marked area, arrow 1.
2. Select and adjust the desired climate control function, arrow 2.

Functions in Climate Control menu

Some climate control functions, e.g., seat heating or air flow, can be configured using the Climate Comfort menu on the central display.

Icon	Function
	Turn the air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.
	Manual program.
72.0°F	Temperature in the vehicle interior.
	Air flow.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
A	Automatic air recirculation.
	Fresh air.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat heating.
	Seat ventilation.
	Steering wheel heating.
	Settings.
REAR	Go to the rear air conditioning menu.

Buttons in the vehicle



The defrost function and rear window heating can be turned on/off using the center console.

Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

Rear air conditioning functions

The rear air conditioning can be operated at the central display or rear air conditioning display.

Icon	Function
	Turn the rear air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.
72.0°F	Temperature in the vehicle interior.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
	Seat heating.
	Lock the rear air conditioning.

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

The air conditioning system can be turned on/off from the central display.

1. Tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Tap the on/off icon.

The air conditioning system activates/deactivates with the last settings applied, except for the seat heating, active seat ventilation in rear, and steering wheel heating.

When the air conditioning system is on, individual climate control functions can be turned off.

Make sure that there is sufficient ventilation when staying in the vehicle for extended periods of time with the air conditioning system off, e.g., when sleeping.

Turning the rear air conditioning system on/off

Functional requirements

To use the rear air conditioning system, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The air conditioning system is on.
- The defrost function is off.

On the central display

1. To turn the rear air conditioning on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. REAR Tap the rear air conditioning settings icon.
3. Tap the on/off icon.

The rear air conditioning can be activated with the default settings for temperature and the AUTO program: "Reset settings at the end of the trip".

Locking the rear air conditioning system

Use of the rear air conditioning can be disabled from the central display in order to prevent incorrect operation by children, for example.

1. To disable the rear air conditioning, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. REAR Tap the rear air conditioning settings icon.
3. Tap the disable icon for the rear air conditioning.

Settings

The central display can be used to configure individual settings for climate control functions, e.g.:

- Seat heating intensity.
- Pre-ventilation.

1. To configure climate control functions, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

Comfort functions

Seat-based air conditioning

This function regulates the air conditioning automatically depending on the seat occupancy. This function includes temperature control for the seats and surfaces as well as air conditioning for the vehicle interior.

If automatic mode for seat temperature control is activated, the temperature of the seats is regulated automatically.

The interior air conditioning is adjusted automatically for unoccupied seats, and the target temperatures are synchronized for the driver and front passenger. The rear is set to the default settings, e.g., 72°F/22°C.

The SYNC program can be used to overwrite the automatic settings for interior climate control. The settings for the driver's side are used for each seat.

Additional information:

Seat heating, refer to page 269.

Ventilation in head area

At very high temperatures, the air in the upper head area can also be cooled. The air flows through the indirect air vents behind the central display into the upper head area.

1. To activate/deactivate the head area ventilation, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "General"
4. "Ventilation in the head area"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automatic program

Principle

The automatic program ensures a comfortable climate, which can be adjusted by setting the desired temperature and configuring the settings.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the automatic program automatically adjusts the following climate control functions:

- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- Temperature.

The settings are affected by the following factors:

- Outside temperature.
- Interior temperature.
- Amount of direct sunlight.
- Seat occupancy.
- Desired temperature set.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the automatic program in order to prevent window condensation to the extent possible.

When the AUTO program is deactivated, the manual program is activated.

Turning the automatic program on/off

1. To turn the AUTO program on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. AUTO Tap the automatic program icon.

Turning the automatic program on/off for the rear air conditioning system

On the central display

1. To turn the automatic program for the rear air conditioning on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. REAR Tap the rear air conditioning settings icon.
3. AUTO Tap the automatic program icon.

On the rear air-conditioning display

AUTO To activate/deactivate the AUTO program for the rear air conditioning, tap the AUTO button on the rear air-conditioning display.

Temperature

Principle

The air conditioning system cools/heats the interior to the set temperature, keeping the temperature constant.

If, when starting the vehicle, the interior temperature is very hot or cold and there is no heater output or cooling power, the automatic program reduces the air flow until a more comfortable air flow temperature is reached.

Setting the temperature



The desired temperature can be set individually for the driver's side and front passenger side.

Tap the desired icon to change the temperature:

- Red: Increase the temperature.
- Blue: Decrease the temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the air conditioning system will not have enough time to adjust to the set temperature.

Adjusting the temperature of the rear air conditioning system

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the temperature can be configured individually for the right and left seat.

On the central display

1. To turn the automatic program for the rear air conditioning on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. REAR Tap the rear air conditioning settings icon.
3. - \+ Increase the temperature.
   - — Reduce the temperature.

On the rear air-conditioning display

To adjust the temperature of the rear passenger compartment air conditioning, tap the desired icon:

- + Increase the temperature.
- — Reduce the temperature.

Footwell temperature

General information

The air temperature in the footwell can be adjusted.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting the footwell temperature

1. To configure climate control functions, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
4. "Temperature adjustment footwell"
5. Set the desired temperature:
   - + Increase the temperature.
   - — Reduce the temperature.

Ventilation

Principle

The air conditioning system can be adjusted any number of ways in order to optimize the movement of air within the vehicle, e.g., direct or indirect ventilation.

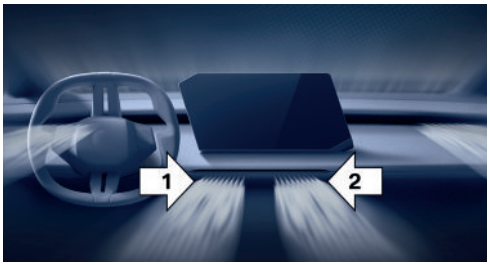
The front air vents are electrically controlled and operated from the central display.

For effective, optimal air conditioning, it is recommended to keep the air vents open at all times.

Front ventilation

Opening/closing the air vents

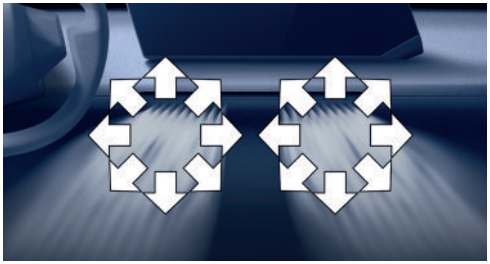
1. To fully open/close the air vents, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the desired air vent, e.g.:
   - Center air vent on driver's side, arrow 1.
   - Center air vent on front passenger side, arrow 2.



All air vents, on the driver's side and front passenger side, can be turned off simultaneously via the Climate Control Quick Access menu.

Adjusting the airflow direction

1. To adjust the airflow direction, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Press and hold near the desired air vent on the central display, then pull the airflow direction to the desired position.



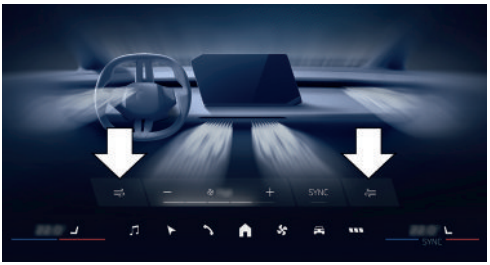
Selecting a ventilation mode

Various ventilation modes can be selected depending on the desired ventilation.

The following ventilation modes can be selected for the driver's side and front passenger side:

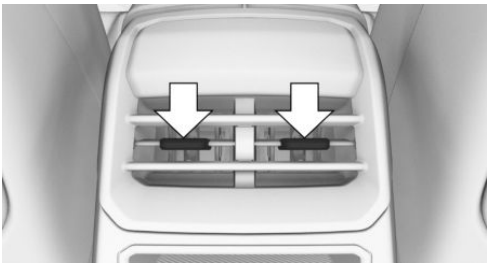
Mode	Description
"FREE"	The airflow direction can be adjusted manually.
"DIRECT"	The airflow is aimed directly at the body.
"INDIRECT"	The airflow is not aimed at the body.
"PERSONAL"	The airflow direction can be adjusted as desired. The current airflow directions can be saved by long pressing.
"[US:] WAVE"	The airflow direction changes continuously from left to right and back.

1. To set a desired ventilation mode, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Tap the Ventilation menu icon, see arrows.



3. Select the desired ventilation mode.

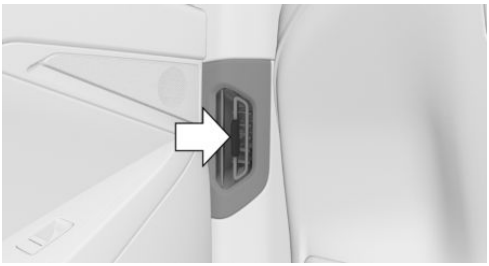
Ventilation in the rear



Change the airflow direction, arrows.

To close the air vents, push the levers horizontally inward.

Ventilation in the rear, on the side



Change the airflow direction, arrow.

To close the air vents, push the lever downward.

Air flow

Principle

The air flow generated by the blower can be adjusted as needed.

In the automatic program, the air flow for the first seat row cannot be turned off.

If, when starting the vehicle, the interior temperature is very hot or cold and there is no heater output or cooling power, the automatic program reduces the air flow until a more comfortable air flow temperature is reached.

Adjusting the air flow

1. To adjust the air flow, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. The air flow can be adjusted as desired for the driver's side and front passenger side:
   - + To increase the air flow.
   - — To decrease the air flow.

Adjusting the air flow of the rear air conditioning system

On the central display

1. To adjust the air flow of the rear air conditioning, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. REAR Tap the rear air conditioning settings icon.
3. Depending on vehicle equipment, the air flow can be adjusted as desired for the driver's side and front passenger side:
   - + Increase the air flow.
   - — Decrease the air flow.

On the rear air-conditioning display



To adjust the air flow of the rear air conditioning system, tap the air flow icon on the rear air-conditioning display.

Air distribution settings

Principle

The air distribution can be used to direct the air to certain areas in the vehicle interior, e.g., the footwell. In manual mode, the air distribution can be adjusted as needed.

Adjusting the air distribution

1. To adjust the air distribution, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the desired setting:
   - Aim the air flow into the footwell, arrow 1.
   - Aim the air flow toward the upper body area, arrow 2.
   - Aim the air flow at the windshield, arrow 3.



Adjusting the air distribution of the rear air conditioning system

On the central display

1. To adjust the air distribution of the rear air conditioning, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. REAR Tap the rear air conditioning settings icon.
3. Select the desired setting.

On the rear air-conditioning display



To adjust the air distribution of the rear air conditioning system, tap the air distribution icon on the rear air-conditioning display.

Air recirculation mode

Principle

With air recirculation, if unpleasant odors or pollutants are detected in the outside air, the outside air supply can be temporarily stopped. The interior air is recirculated.

With automatic air recirculation, outside air is fed in, or the interior air is recirculated, depending on the outside air quality.

When air recirculation is off, outside air is channeled into the interior.

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Turning air recirculation on/off

1. To turn the air recirculation on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Tap the icon for the desired operating mode.
   - ▷ Recirculating air.
   - ▷ Automatic air recirculation.
   - ▷ Fresh air.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the air recirculation turns off automatically after some time based on the ambient conditions.

If there is window condensation, switch to fresh air or automatic air recirculation mode.

A clean windshield is less prone to fogging up. Clean the inner side of the windshield regularly.

Air conditioning

Principle

With the climate control function, the air inside the vehicle is cooled and dehumidified, then warmed again depending on the temperature settings.

Condensation may form in the vehicle air-conditioning system. Condensation leaking under the vehicle is due to technical reasons and does not constitute a malfunction.

Switching the cooling function on/off

1. To turn the air conditioning on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. A/C Tap the air conditioning icon.

The air conditioning activates automatically with the AUTO program.

In recirculated-air mode, the air conditioning is automatically turned on to dry the air and avoid window condensation.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Maximum cooling

Principle

The maximum cooling function is used to cool the vehicle interior quickly and effectively.

The lowest temperature and the maximum air flow are set automatically.

Functional requirements

To use Maximum Cooling, the following functional requirements must be met:

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above 32° F / 0° C.

Turning maximum cooling on/off

1. To turn maximum cooling on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. MAX A/C Tap the maximum cooling icon.

Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area.

Seat heating

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the seat heating system warms the backrest and seat surface of the seats selected. The heat distribution between backrest and seat surface can be adjusted.

The seat heating can be used in automatic mode or manual mode.

Automatic mode

Principle

In automatic mode, a specific control range for the intensity is defined for each automatic level. The intensity is adjusted dynamically while driving, depending on the ambient conditions. Manually changing to another level is not necessary while driving. Individual settings for climate control functions are stored and reactivated automatically, e.g., when the vehicle is started.

In automatic mode, the seat heating activates and deactivates automatically.

Setting the intensity

1. To configure the intensity of automatic mode, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
4. Select the desired setting.

Activating automatic mode

1. To activate automatic mode, select the Climate Control quick access option.
2. Tap the seat heating icon repeatedly until automatic mode is selected.

   Automatic mode is indicated by the letter A.

Manual operation

Three different levels can be selected for the heater output. A fixed temperature is set by the system for each level. It is also possible to switch back to automatic mode.

1. Select the Climate Control quick access.
2. Tap the seat heating icon until the desired level is selected.

To turn off the seat heating, proceed as follows:

- Press and hold the seat heating icon for approx. three seconds.
- Press the seat heating icon repeatedly until the seat heating turns off.

Adjusting the rear seat heating

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the rear seat heating can be set to three levels.

In the rear, the seat heating can only be used in manual mode.

On the central display

1. To adjust the rear seat heating, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. REAR Tap the rear air conditioning settings icon.
3. Tap the seat heating icon until the desired level is selected.

To turn off the seat heating, proceed as follows:

- Press and hold the seat heating icon for approx. three seconds.
- Press the seat heating icon repeatedly until the seat heating turns off.

On the rear air-conditioning display



To adjust the rear seat heating, tap the seat heating icon on the rear air-condi-

tioning display. Tap the seat heating button until the desired level is selected.

To turn off the seat heating, proceed as follows:

- Press and hold the seat heating icon for approx. three seconds.
- Press the seat heating icon repeatedly until the seat heating turns off.

Seat ventilation

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, with active seat ventilation in rear, fans in the seat draw in cooled air through the seat cushion, thus ensuring a pleasant seat temperature.

The active seat ventilation can be used in automatic mode or manual mode.

Automatic mode

Principle

In automatic mode, a specific control range for the intensity is defined for each automatic level. The intensity is adjusted dynamically while driving, depending on the ambient conditions. Manually changing to another level is not necessary while driving. Individual settings for climate control functions are stored and reactivated automatically, e.g., when the vehicle is started.

In automatic mode, the active seat ventilation in rear activates and deactivates automatically.

Setting the intensity

1. To configure the intensity of automatic mode, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
4. Select the desired setting.

Activating automatic mode

1. To activate automatic mode, select the Climate Control quick access option.
2. Tap the active seat ventilation icon repeatedly until automatic mode is selected.

   Automatic mode is indicated by the letter A.

Manual operation

Three different levels can be selected for the ventilation. A fixed temperature is set by the system for each level. It is also possible to switch back to automatic mode.

1. Select the Climate Control quick access.
2. Tap the active seat ventilation icon repeatedly until the desired level is selected.

To turn off the active seat ventilation, proceed as follows:

- Press and hold the active seat ventilation icon for approx. three seconds.
- Press the active seat ventilation icon repeatedly until the active seat ventilation turns off.

Armrest heating

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the armrests on the door trim panel, center console, and rear console can be heated together with the seats.

Turning the armrest heating on/off

The armrest heating can be turned on/off in addition to the seat heating.

1. To turn the armrest heating on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
4. "Heat surfaces and seat"

Adjusting the armrest heating

Three different levels can be selected for the heater output. A fixed temperature is set by the system for each level. It is also possible to switch back to automatic mode.

1. Select the Climate Control quick access.
2. Tap the seat heating icon repeatedly until the desired level is selected.

To turn off the seat heating, proceed as follows:

- Press and hold the seat heating icon for approx. three seconds.
- Press the seat heating icon repeatedly until the seat heating turns off.

Steering wheel heating

Principle

In automatic mode, the steering wheel is heated according to the outside temperature and interior temperature.

The steering wheel heating can be used in automatic mode or manual mode.

Automatic mode

Principle

In automatic mode, a specific control range for the intensity is defined for each automatic level. The intensity is adjusted dynamically while driving, depending on the ambient conditions. Manually changing to another level is not necessary while driving. Individual settings for climate control functions are stored and reactivated automatically, e.g., when the vehicle is started.

In automatic mode, the steering wheel heating activates and deactivates automatically.

Setting the intensity

1. To configure the intensity of automatic mode, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
4. Select the desired setting.

Activating automatic mode

1. To activate automatic mode, select the Climate Control quick access option.
2. Tap the steering wheel heating icon until automatic mode is selected.

   Automatic mode is indicated by the letter A.

Manual operation

The heater output can be adjusted manually. Three different levels can be selected in manual mode. A fixed temperature is set by the system for each level. It is also possible to switch back to automatic mode.

1. Select the Climate Control quick access.
2. Press the steering wheel heating icon repeatedly until the desired level is selected.

To turn off the steering wheel heating, proceed as follows:

- Press and hold the steering wheel heating icon for approx. three seconds.
- Press the steering wheel heating icon repeatedly until the steering wheel heating turns off.

SYNC program

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, if the SYNC program is activated, the climate control settings for the driver's side are transferred to the front passenger side and to the rear.

With the SYNC program, the following settings can be applied:

- Temperature.
- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- Automatic program.

For improved comfort, when the SYNC program is deactivated, the following settings are adjusted automatically in the automatic program depending on seat occupancy:

- If the front passenger seat is unoccupied, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger side.
- If the seats in the rear are unoccupied, the default settings for the rear are applied.

When the seat is occupied again, the most recent settings are reapplied.

Turning the SYNC program on/off

1. To turn the SYNC program on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. SYNC Tap the SYNC program icon.

If the settings for the front passenger's side or rear are changed, the SYNC program turns off automatically.

Defrost, window condensation

Principle

With the defrost function, ice and window condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air flow and air temperature are automatically optimized for the removal of ice and window condensation.

The air distribution is directed toward the windshield and front side windows.

If there is window condensation, turn on the automatic program to take advantage of the condensation sensor.

A clean windshield is less prone to fogging up. Clean the inner side of the windshield regularly.

When the defroster is on, the rear air conditioning system is deactivated to provide maximum performance.

Switching function on/off



To turn the defrost function on/off, push the defrost button on the center console.

The button LED illuminates when the function is turned on.

Make sure that air is able to flow to the windshield and front side windows.

Rear window defroster

Principle

The rear window heating quickly removes ice and condensation from the rear window, depending on the outside temperature.

The rear window heating can either be set to turn off automatically after some time or used in continuous operation.

Functional requirements

To use the rear window heating, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- The rear window heating can only be activated and kept on at an outside temperature of below approx. 41°F / 5°C.

Turning the rear window heating on/off



To turn the rear window heating on/off, briefly push the rear window heating button on the center console.

The button LED illuminates when the function is turned on.

To keep the rear window heating on, press and hold the button for at least three seconds.

Air quality

Principle

The following measures improve the air quality inside the vehicle:

- Emissions-tested vehicle interior.
- Interior filter.
- The air conditioning system for controlling temperature, air flow, air recirculation, and reducing air humidity.
- Pre-ventilation.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on vehicle equipment, different filter types using activated carbon may be installed:

- The microfilter removes dust and pollen, as well as microbacterial particles, from the incoming air.
- Over its service life, the nanoparticle filter provides better and faster air filtration than the microfilter.

Both filter types have an activated carbon layer that adsorbs gaseous pollutants from the incoming outside air.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the interior filter changed during preventive maintenance of the vehicle.

Interior filter status indicator

 The interior filter icon indicates the status of the interior filter in the Climate Control menu.

- Icon illuminates white: The interior filter is clean.
- Icon illuminates yellow: The interior air filter will need to be replaced soon.
- Icon illuminates yellow with an additional warning sign: The interior filter is due for replacement.

Additional information on the interior filter can be viewed in the Condition Based Service menu. To open the Condition Based Service menu, select the interior air filter status indicator.

Additional information:

Condition Based Service, refer to page 407.

Air purification

Air purification starts when the air conditioning system is turned on and may take up to three minutes.

Air purification activates when the pre-conditioning is turned on.

The status of air purification is shown as follows:

Status	Description
Purify air	The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.
Filtered air	The interior air is purified.

Status	Description
Refresh air	Outside air purified by the interior filter flows into the vehicle interior. This increases the air flow.
Unfiltered air	The air conditioning system is off. The vehicle no longer has filtered air.

To achieve optimum air cleaning, keep the doors and windows closed if possible and avoid additional pollutants, e.g., by smoking.

Refreshing the air

1. To refresh the interior air, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Tap the desired air cleaning icon, e.g., Clean Air.
3. Tap the Refresh Air icon.

   The remaining time to refresh the air is displayed.

Viewing the outside air quality

Using the air quality index, the outside air quality is shown on a multilevel color scale. The higher the displayed value is, the dirtier the outside air is.

1. To view the outside air quality, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Tap the desired air cleaning icon, e.g., Clean Air.

   The value for the region in which the vehicle is located is displayed.

Efficient air conditioning

ECO air conditioning

Principle

When ECO air conditioning is activated, the temperature of the vehicle interior is regulated with respect to achieving a balance between energy efficiency and limited climate comfort.

Activating/deactivating ECO air conditioning

To activate ECO air conditioning, go through the menu as follows: My Modes and My Moments menu / "My Modes" / "Efficient".

The air conditioning system switches to the AUTO program and cannot be adjusted.

To deactivate ECO air conditioning, either deactivate Efficient Mode or switch to another climate control function.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

Pre-ventilation

Principle

Pre-ventilation is used to cool or heat the vehicle interior before the start of a trip. This ventilates the vehicle interior. Depending on the model variant, the vehicle may be heated by residual heat from the engine.

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the outside temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Functional requirements

To use the preventilation, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

  If pre-ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehi-

cle battery. The system can be used again once engine is started or after a short drive.

Switching pre-ventilation on/off

1. To turn the pre-ventilation on/off from the central display, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. Select the desired setting.

Pre-ventilation at departure time

Principle

Departure times can be set by selecting the respective day of the week.

The pre-ventilation promptly activates based on the ambient conditions before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set the departure time.
- Activate the departure time.

Preventilation at the departure time can only be activated once.

Setting the departure time

1. To set the departure time from the central display, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the desired departure time.
7. Select the day of the week, as necessary.

Activating the departure time

1. To activate a departure time on the central display, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

View on central display

Icon	Description
	Icon flashes: The vehicle is in standby and the pre-ventilation is on.

Activation on the My BMW app

Depending on vehicle equipment, the pre-ventilation can be activated directly or for preset departure times using the My BMW App Remote Services.

Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning regulates the interior temperature before starting a trip. This function makes it easier to remove snow and ice.

The pre-conditioning can be activated/deactivated directly or for a preset departure time:

This system starts the engine automatically and lets it run for a limited time.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on pre-conditioning in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

WARNING

When pre-conditioning is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system. If combustible materials come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during pre-conditioning, e.g. leaves, grass, natural gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

To use the pre-conditioning, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The fuel tank is at a sufficient level.
- The hood is closed.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system. Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to air-condition the vehicle interior.

1. Tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Remote Engine Start"
5. Confirm the legal disclaimer.

Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

General information

The pre-conditioning turns off automatically after max. 15 minutes for safety reasons.

The pre-conditioning can only be activated twice in a row.

The pre-conditioning can be used again as soon as drive-ready state is activated and then deactivated again.

On the central display

1. Tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Start pre-conditioning" or "End pre-conditioning"

Via the vehicle key

Using the vehicle key, the pre-conditioning can be activated with the target temperature 72°F/22°C.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the seat heating, active seat ventilation in rear, armrest heating, and steering wheel heating activate according to the situation.

Press the lock button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

The engine turns on shortly after the vehicle key is pressed.

To turn off the pre-conditioning, press the button again three times within 1 second.

Turning off with the Start/Stop button

Pre-conditioning can be turned off directly by pushing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal.

Air conditioning for departure time

Principle

Departure times can be scheduled for specific days of the week in order to ensure a comfortable interior temperature at the time of departure:

The pre-conditioning promptly activates with the target temperature 72°F/22°C based on the ambient conditions before the set departure time.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the seat heating, active seat ventilation in rear, armrest heating, and steering wheel heating activate according to the situation.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set the departure time.
- Activate departure times.

Pre-conditioning will be turned off automatically a few minutes after the set departure time.

For safety reasons, the air conditioning can only be activated once for the departure time.

The pre-conditioning can be used again as soon as drive-ready state is activated and then deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:

For your own safety, refer to page 9.

Setting the departure time

1. To set the departure time from the central display, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select the day of the week, as necessary.

Activating the departure time

To turn on the pre-conditioning prior to a departure time, the respective departure time must be activated beforehand.

1. To activate a departure time from the central display, tap the Climate Control menu icon.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display



When activated, the pre-conditioning is shown on the central display and the Head-up display:

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Icon	Description
	Icon flashes: The vehicle is in standby and the pre-conditioning is on.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Activation of the pre-conditioning is confirmed by the exterior light.

The parking light turns on while the pre-conditioning is activated.

Operation with the My BMW App

Depending on vehicle equipment, the pre-conditioning can be activated directly or for a preset departure time using the My BMW App Remote Services.

When started directly from the My BMW App, the pre-conditioning starts with the personal target temperature and seat configuration. The possible seat configuration depends on the vehicle equipment.

With direct start, the seat heating, active seat ventilation in rear, armrest heating, and steering wheel heating only activate for the selected seats.

The remaining service life and range of functions are shown during pre-conditioning. The target temperature and seat configuration can be adjusted.

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The integrated universal remote control can be used to operate remote-controlled systems like garage doors, alarm systems, or locking systems.

The integrated universal remote control replaces various hand-held transmitters for remote-controlled systems. The desired functions must be configured on the central display. They can be operated by enabling location or using the shortcuts on the central display.

To ensure that everything works as well as possible, do not install the radio-controlled system's antenna near metal objects.

A maximum of 15 remote-controlled systems can be added.

Safety information

WARNING

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control such as the garage door may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility



If this icon is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions for the remote-controlled system, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Programming the integrated universal remote control

Functional requirements

To program the integrated universal remote control, the following functional requirements must be met:

- To ensure optimum range of the integrated universal remote control, the hand-held transmitter's battery must be fully charged at the time of programming.
- The vehicle is parked within range of the remote-controlled system.
- There are no persons or objects in the area around the remote-controlled system.
- Standby state is switched on.

If operated while using location sharing, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for

the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., GPS coordinates.

Adding remote-controlled systems to the vehicle

1. To add a remote-controlled system, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Keys" / "Garage doors" / "Add garage door".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Standard"

     Select standard mode if the remote-controlled system has a hand-held transmitter.
   - ▷ "D-mode" or "UR-mode"

     Select D or UR mode if the remote-controlled system does not have a hand-held transmitter.
3. Follow the instructions on the central display.

Enabling location at a later time

If location is enabled after setting up a remote-controlled system, the corresponding system must then be assigned to a location. This assignment must be done at the remote-controlled system's location.

1. To enable location at a later time for a remote-controlled system, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Keys" / "Garage doors".
2. Select and hold the desired remote-controlled system.
3. "Location"
4. Select the desired remote-controlled system.
5. "Update location"

Saving a remote-controlled system as shortcut

If location has not been enabled for a remote-controlled system, a saved function can be run using its shortcut.

1. To create a shortcut for a remote-controlled system, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Keys" / "Garage doors".
2. Select and hold the desired remote-controlled system.
3. "Add to shortcuts"

Additional information:

Shortcuts, refer to page 53.

Activating a remote-controlled system

Two functions can be used to activate a remote-controlled system.

- ▷ Enable location:

  A known remote-controlled system is detected when the vehicle approaches it. The detected remote-controlled system will appear for selection in BMW Panoramic Vision.

  To use this function, select the desired remote-controlled system using the operating element on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Saved shortcut:

  Any remote-controlled system saved as a shortcut can be selected.

  To use this function, select the corresponding shortcut on the central display.

Special feature of Park Distance Control

When using Park Distance Control, remote-controlled systems can be operated using the respective remote-controlled system icon on the central display. Location must be enabled to do so.

If there are multiple remote-controlled systems at the same location, select the desired remote-controlled system.

1. To operate the remote-controlled system, tap the respective remote-controlled system icon.
2. Select the desired remote-controlled system as necessary.
3. The remote-controlled system is run.

Editing remote-controlled systems

Saved remote-controlled systems can be edited. A remote-controlled system can be deleted or renamed, for example.

1. To edit a remote-controlled system, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Keys" / "Garage doors".
2. Select and hold the desired remote-controlled system.
3. Select the desired setting.

Sun visor

Glare shield

To prevent glare, fold the sun visor up or down.

Glare shield from the side

Folding the sun visor in/out

To prevent glare from the side window, proceed as follows:

1. Fold down the sun visor.
2. Detach the sun visor from its holder and swing it toward the side window.
3. Push the sun visor back to the desired position.

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when standby or drive-ready state is turned on.

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 W at 12 V.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags such as portable navigation devices can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior while unfolding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

WARNING

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Close the socket again after use, e.g., with the socket cover.

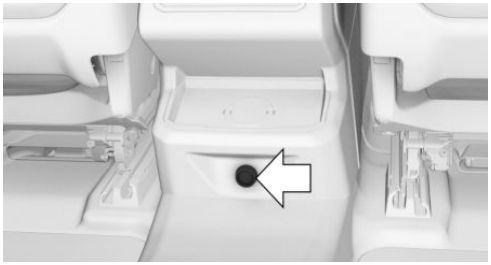
WARNING

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery from sockets in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

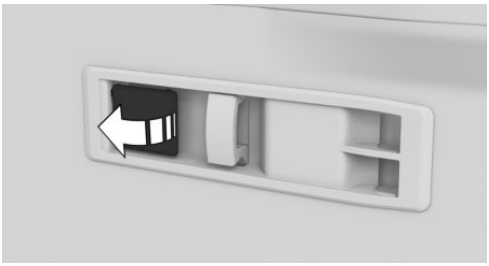
Unsuitable connectors or exceeding the maximum power consumption can damage the socket and the vehicle electrical system. There is a risk of property damage. Only use devices with suitable connectors. Make sure that the maximum power consumption of all sockets is not exceeded.

Rear center console



One socket is located in the rear center console. Pull off the cover before using the socket.

In the cargo area



A socket is provided on the right side of the cargo area under a cover. Open the cover before using the socket.

Malfunction

General information

If a socket overload is detected, e.g., due to a defective device, the corresponding socket is switched off for safety reasons.

A Check Control message is displayed.

This socket can be reactivated manually.

Manually activating a socket

To activate a socket manually, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the defective or incompatible device and do not plug it in again.
2. Turn the vehicle off and on.

   The socket can now be used again.

If an outlet switches off repeatedly or permanently, have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB port

Principle

Mobile devices can be charged via USB cable using the USB port.

The range of functions is indicated by an icon on the USB port.

Icon	Meaning
	Compatible mobile devices can be supplied with charge current.
	Mobile devices can be connected to send data, e.g., to play audio. Compatible mobile devices are supplied with charging current.

Safety information

WARNING

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Close the socket again after use, e.g., with the socket cover.

Front center console



Two USB ports are located on the front center console.

These USB ports have the following characteristics:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices.
- Max. charging power: 3 A / 45 W.

Connecting mobile devices

When connecting the mobile device to the USB port, note the following:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- If necessary, use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the mobile device from mechanical damage.
- Do not expose the mobile device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g., very high temperatures. See the device operating instructions.
- Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure that saved data is transferred properly, do not charge the USB device from the 12V socket if the USB device is connected to a USB port.
- It may be necessary to configure the device settings in order to enable data transferring.

The connected USB device is shown in the device list on the control display.

Incompatible USB devices

The following mobile USB devices are not suitable for connection to the vehicle:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.

- HFS-formatted USB devices.
- Devices such as fans or bulbs.
- Devices with a power consumption of more than 3 A.

Travel & Comfort system

Principle

The Travel & Comfort system provides mounts for special accessories, e.g., universal holders for tablets or clothes hangers, as well as connection ports.

These connections are as follows:

- One USB Type-C port per seat.
- Charging function for mobile devices with max. 3 A / 45 W per seat.

The Travel & Comfort System is located on the front seat backrests.

Assembly of optional accessories: Sport seat

1. To mount optional accessories, push the cover on the front seat backrest all the way down.

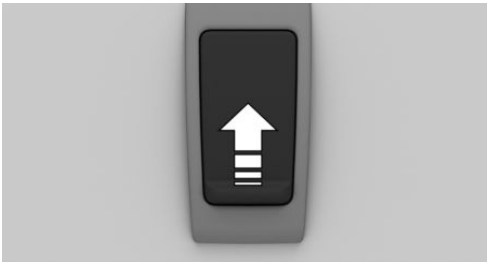


2. When installing optional accessories, refer to the assembly instructions.

For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Assembly of optional accessories: Multifunctional seat

1. To mount optional accessories, push the cover on the front seat backrest all the way up.



2. When installing optional accessories, refer to the assembly instructions.

For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Magnetic holder

Principle

The magnetic holder is attached in the mounts of the Travel & Comfort System and is used to hold smartphones.

The magnetic holder can be used for smartphones weighing up to 8.8 oz / 250 g.

The tilt of the magnetic holder can be adjusted by tilting the holder.

Functional requirements

The smartphone must have a magnetic component, e.g., a thin metal plate on the rear.

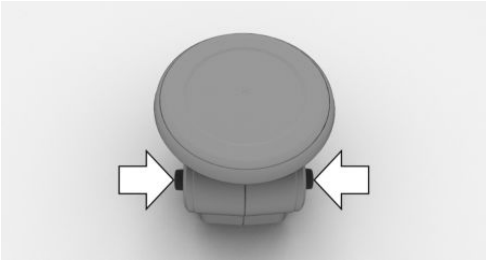
Mounting the magnetic holders

To mount the magnetic holder, slide the magnetic holder into the mount until the locking mechanism snaps in.

Removing the magnetic holders

To remove the magnetic holder, proceed as follows:

1. Press and hold the lock buttons on both sides of the magnetic holder, arrows.



2. Pull the magnetic holder out of the mount.

For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The Wireless Charging tray enables smartphones to be charged wirelessly.

The maximum charging power is supported on smartphones compatible with Qi 1.3.

If equipped with Wireless Charging tray Plus: The maximum charging power is supported for smartphones with Qi 2.1 standard.

When inserting the smartphone to be charged, make sure that there are no other objects in the Wireless Charging Tray together with the smartphone.

The charging process is shown by the charge indicator on the central display. When charging has started, the charging indicator illuminates briefly on the status bar.

Safety information

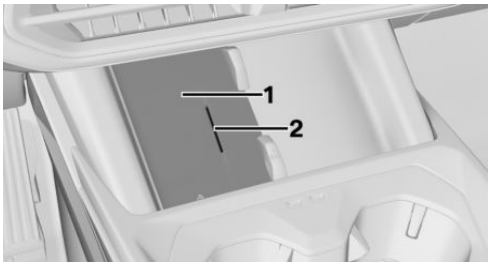
WARNING

When charging a device in the Wireless Charging tray, any metal objects in the tray with this device may become very hot. Storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for transmitting signals, may not function correctly when placed together on the tray with the device. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects on the tray with the device.

Overview

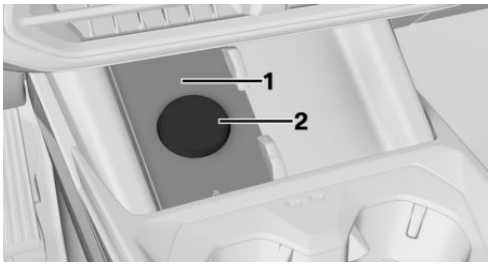
Wireless Charging tray, front

Depending on vehicle equipment, one of the following Wireless Charging trays may be installed. The Wireless Charging tray is located on the left side of the center console.



1 Wireless charging tray

2 Ventilation opening

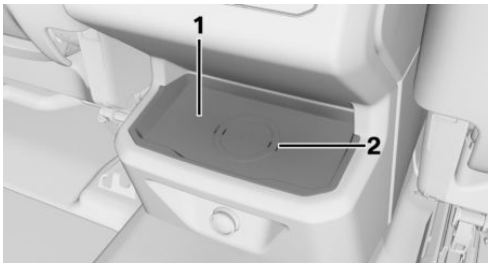


1 Wireless Charging tray Plus

2 Magnetic ring with ventilation opening

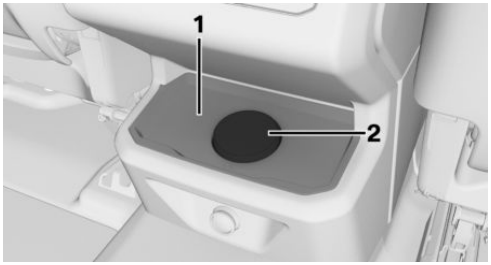
Wireless Charging tray, rear

Depending on vehicle equipment, one of the following Wireless Charging trays may be installed. The Wireless Charging tray is located in the rear center console.



1 Wireless charging tray

2 Ventilation opening



1 Wireless Charging tray Plus

2 Magnetic ring with ventilation opening

Functional requirements

To use the wireless charging tray, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The smartphone to be charged supports wireless charging.
- The vehicle is set to standby.
- Charging is enabled.
- The smartphone does not exceed the maximum dimensions of approx. 6.69 x 3.34 x 0.7 in/170 x 85 x 18 mm.
- The smartphone display is facing up.

Wireless Charging tray, front:

- The smartphone being charged has been placed upright in the center of the Wireless Charging tray
- If equipped with Wireless Charging tray Plus: The protective sleeve of the smartphone being charged supports magnetic charging for Qi 2.0 standard and greater.

Wireless Charging tray, rear:

- The smartphone being charged has been placed in the center of the wireless charging tray.
- If equipped with Wireless Charging tray Plus: The protective sleeve of the smartphone being charged supports magnetic charging for Qi 2.0 standard and greater.

Activating/deactivating charging

1. To activate/deactivate charging, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Connections" / "Wireless charging".
2. Select the desired setting.

Inserting a smartphone

Wireless Charging tray, front

Place the smartphone upright in the center of the Wireless Charging tray with the display facing upward.

If equipped with Wireless Charging tray Plus: Place the smartphone on the magnetic ring in the Wireless Charging tray.

Wireless Charging tray, rear

Place the smartphone in the center of the wireless charging tray, with the display facing up.

If equipped with Wireless Charging tray Plus: Place the smartphone on the magnetic ring in the Wireless Charging tray.

Smartphone reminder

Principle

If a smartphone is detected in the Wireless Charging tray when leaving the vehicle via the driver's door, a message may appear on the central display.

Functional requirements

To use the smartphone reminder, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Charging is enabled.
- The smartphone reminder is activated.

Activating/deactivating the smartphone reminder

1. To activate/deactivate the smartphone reminder, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Connections" / "Wireless charging" /"Smartphone reminder".
2. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The charge current strength may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- Due to excessive temperatures of the wireless charging tray and smartphone.
- If there are objects between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic stripes, or cards for signal transmission, are located between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- Due to a protective sleeve.
- Due to accessories attached to the smartphone, e.g. a smartphone holder.
- Due to settings on the smartphone, e.g. for charging. Follow the notices given on the central display and, as applicable, in the instructions for the smartphone.

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Storage compartments

Principle

The vehicle has various options for storing or stowing objects, e.g., the glove compartment or door storage compartments.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., smartphones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

Breakable objects such as glass bottles or glasses can break in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

WARNING

Open flaps of the storage compartments, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest, protrude into the interior when folded open and may be in the way of an airbag that deploys. In addition, objects in the open storage compartment can be thrown into the vehicle interior during the trip, for instance, in the event of an accident or when braking or making an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Always close storage compartments immediately after use.

WARNING

Anti-slip mats and similar underlays can damage the instrument panel. Attached objects could come loose. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.

WARNING

There is a pinch hazard when moving movable parts, e.g., the glove compartment or center armrest. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path is clear when moving.

Glove compartment

Overview

The glove compartment is located at the bottom of the instrument panel on the front passenger's side.

Opening the glove compartment



To open the glove compartment, press the button next to the glove compartment.

Closing the glove compartment

To close the glove compartment, press the glove compartment lid up until it snaps into place.

Locking the glove compartment

Use the storage compartment lock to lock the glove compartment.

Additional information:

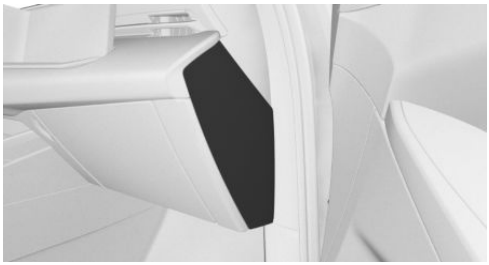
Storage compartment lock, refer to page 124.

Malfunction

The glove compartment is unlocked electrically. The glove compartment can be unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction or during a Software Update, e.g., to obtain an urgently needed item.

To unlock the glove compartment, proceed as follows:

1. Open the front passenger door.
2. Using a suitable blunt object, open and remove the side cover of the instrument panel from bottom to top.



3. Remove the eye from the holder and gently pull it horizontally until the glove compartment opens, arrow.



Proceed in the reverse order to attach.

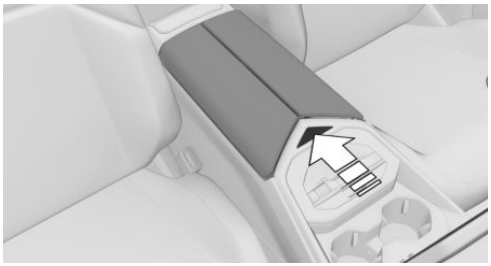
After unlocking manually, have the glove compartment checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front center armrest

Overview

A storage compartment is provided in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening the center armrest



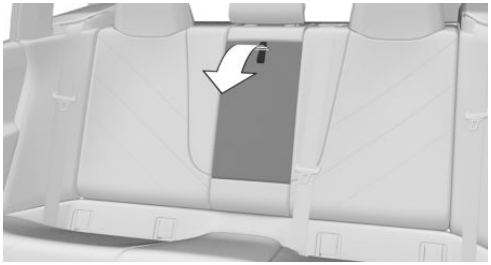
To open the center armrest, press the button on the center armrest.

Closing the center armrest

To close the center armrest, fold the center armrest lid down until it snaps into place.

Rear center armrest

Using the center armrest



To use the center armrest, fold the center armrest forward.

Cushion for rear center armrest

Principle

A cushion can be attached to the center armrest for increased driving comfort.

Using cushions

To attach the cushion to the center armrest, proceed as follows:

1. Fold the center armrest forward.
2. Pull the cushion with the elastic band over the center armrest.

Remove the cushion before folding up the center armrest.

Front cup holder

Safety information

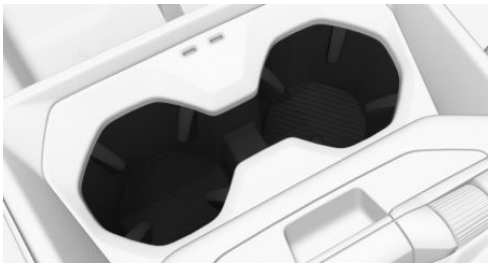
⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding.

There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

Overview



The front center console includes two cup holders.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

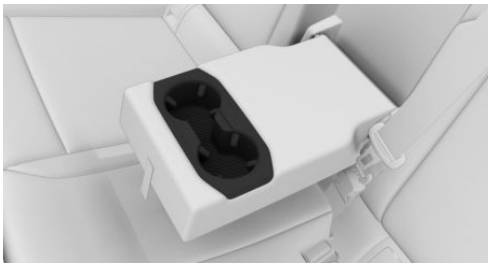
⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding.

There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

Overview



Two cup holders are provided in the rear center armrest.

Before using the cup holder, fold the center armrest forward.

Coat hooks

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Clothing articles on the coat hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. When suspending clothing articles from the coat hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the coat hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the coat hooks.

Overview

The coat hooks are located on the rear grab handles in the headliner and on the rear door pillar.

Cargo area and transport

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Loading

Principle

When loading the vehicle, items and cargo must be stowed and secured properly. Do not exceed the permissible weights and loads.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

High gross vehicle weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing directional stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Note the permissible load-carrying capacity of the tires, and do not exceed the gross vehicle weight.

⚠ WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., smartphones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

⚠ NOTICE

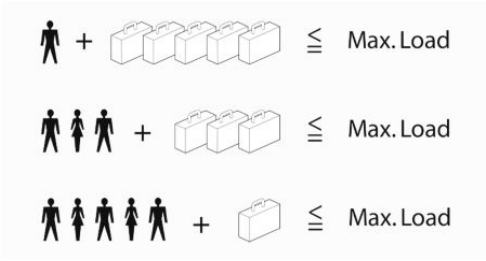
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400–750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Payload



The maximum payload is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

To stow and secure cargo, note the following:

- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the upper edge of the backrests.
- If stowing sufficiently large items in the cargo area, fold down the rear seat backrests completely.
- Fasten straps, etc. for securing the load to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.
- Small, light-weight cargo: Secure with tensioning/draw straps or with a cargo area partition net.
- Larger, heavy cargo: Secure with cargo straps.
- Stow particularly heavy cargo as far forward as possible, directly behind and below the rear seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer seat belts in the opposite buckle.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

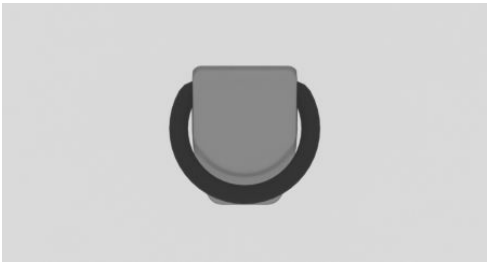
Principle

Lashing eyes are devices used to secure loads. Depending on vehicle equipment, two lashing eyes are provided in the cargo area.

General information

To secure cargo, attach suitable devices, e.g., lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps, or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes.

Overview



The lashing eyes are located on the side panels in the cargo area.

Multifunction hook

Principle

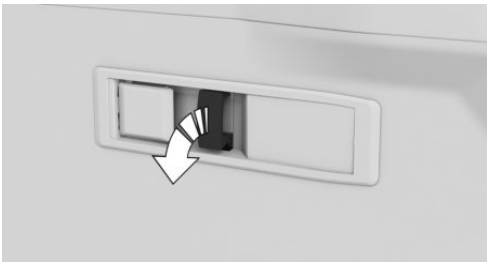
Lightweight objects can be hung on the multifunction hooks in the cargo area.

Safety information

WARNING

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects from the multifunction hooks. Heavy luggage in the cargo area must be properly secured.

Overview



A multifunction hook is provided on the right side of the cargo area.

Fold out the multifunction hook until it audibly engages in the lower position.

Net

Depending on vehicle equipment, there is a net on the left side of the cargo area.

Smaller items can be stored behind the net. To transport larger objects, slide the net down.

Storage compartment on the left side

There is a storage compartment on the left side of the cargo area.

General information

There is a storage compartment on the left side of the cargo area.

Opening the storage compartment

To open the storage compartment, fold the cargo area floor upward.

Cargo area floor

Principle

To stow cargo, a storage compartment is provided under the cargo area floor. The cargo area floor can be opened.

The cargo cover and partition net can be stowed under the cargo area floor.

Safety information

WARNING

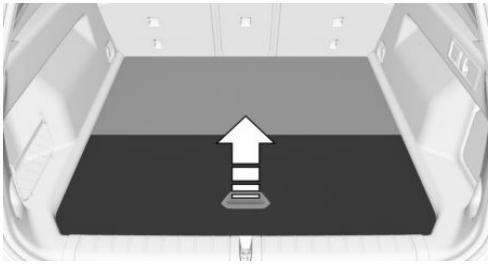
Improper use of the cargo area floor can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

- Do not use the cargo area floor to separate the cargo area and vehicle interior in the sense of a luggage net.
- Only use the cargo area floor in the folded-up position when the rear seat backrests are folded back and locked.
- Fold down the cargo area floor before driving off.
- Always secure cargo against slipping, e.g., using straps, belts, and lashing eyes.

NOTICE

The storage space under the cargo area floor is only suitable for soft objects. Hard objects may result in damage to the vehicle electrical system in the event of an accident. There is a risk of property damage. Only stow soft objects under the cargo area floor.

Opening the storage compartment



To open the storage compartment, use the handle to lift the cargo area floor, then fold it forward.

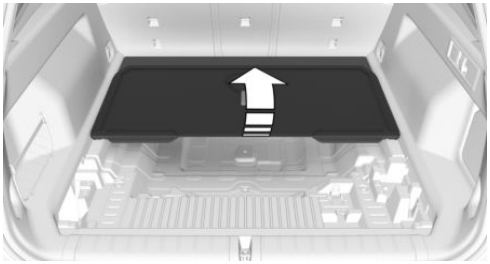
Closing the storage compartment

To close the storage compartment, fold the cargo area floor back.

Fold up the cargo area floor

The cargo area floor can be folded up as follows:

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo area floor forward.
2. Fold up the cargo area floor if it has been folded forward.



Enlarging the cargo area

Principle

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The right rear seat backrest and the center section can be folded down separately. The left rear seat backrest can be folded down together with the center section.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear.

The rear head restraints can be removed when the rear seat backrests are folded down to further increase the size of the cargo area.

Additional information:

Rear head restraints, refer to page 144.

Safety information

WARNING

Vehicle parts can be damaged or body parts jammed when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Before starting a trip, fold back the seat backrest and lock it.

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Folding down the rear seat backrest

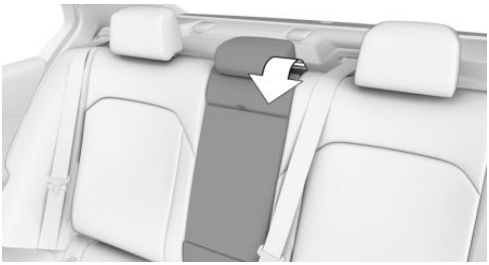
To fold in the rear seat backrests, proceed as follows:



Pull the lever in the recess and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Folding down the center section

To fold down the center section, proceed as follows:



Pull down the sliding button to the right of the head restraint and fold the center section forward.

Cargo cover

Principle

The cargo cover separates the cargo area from the seat rows and is used to secure cargo. The cargo cover can be removed.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., smartphones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

An incorrectly inserted cargo cover can be thrown about the car's interior such as in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure the cargo cover is securely engaged in the brackets.

WARNING

Body parts can become trapped when the folding cargo cover is operated. There is a risk of injury. When operating the folding cargo cover, make sure that the travel path of the cover is clear.

WARNING

A cargo cover that snaps back quickly can jam body parts or cause damage. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not let the cargo cover snap back into place.

Opening the cargo cover

To open the cargo cover, use the handle to pull the cargo cover back and unhook it from the holders on both sides.

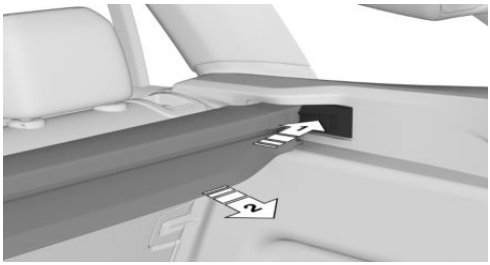
Using the handle, hold the cargo cover firmly and slowly guide it straight forward. The cargo cover is retracted.

Closing the cargo cover



To close the cargo cover, slowly pull the cargo cover out and straight forward, arrow 1, and hook it to the holders on both sides, arrows 2.

Removing the cargo cover



To remove the cargo cover, press the release button, arrow 1, and pull the cargo cover out toward the rear, arrow 2.

The cargo cover can be stowed in the storage compartment under the cargo area floor.

Inserting the cargo cover

To insert the cargo cover, proceed as follows:

1. Place the cargo cover on one side of the side trim panel.
2. Slide the other side forward into the mounts on the side trim panel.

   The cargo cover should engage audibly. The cargo cover is correctly engaged when

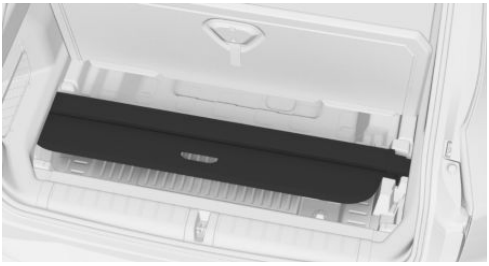
the red marking on the release button is no longer visible.

3. Repeat this process for the other side of the cargo cover.

Stowing the cargo cover

The cargo cover can be stowed under the cargo area floor.

1. Fold the cargo area floor forward.
2. Push the luggage compartment cover under the left-hand side trim panel and place it in the storage compartment.



3. Fold the cargo area floor backward and push it down.

Roof bars

Principle

Roof bars are devices that are mounted on the vehicle to facilitate the transport of luggage.

Roof bars recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle are available as optional accessories.

When driving with a roof bar, various specifications, e.g., correct load, must be followed.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Installation

Roof bars can only be mounted if the vehicle is equipped with roof rails.

Follow the installation instructions for roof bars when installing.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a significant effect on vehicle handling and steering.

When loading and driving, note the following:

- Do not exceed the permissible roof load, axle load, and gross vehicle weight.
- Distribute the roof load evenly.
- The roof load should not extend past the vehicle sides.
- Always place the heaviest items on the bottom.
- Secure roof luggage firmly, for instance using tie-down straps.
- Do not let objects project into the swiveling range of the tailgate.
- Drive carefully. Do not drive off or brake suddenly or take corners at speed.

Trailer and rear carrier

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Using trailers and rear carriers

Principle

The trailer and rear carrier, e.g., rear bicycle rack, can be connected to the vehicle. When driving with a trailer or rear carrier, certain values and specifications for the drawbar nose weight, load, tire pressure, exterior mirrors, and electrical consumption must be followed.

General information

For safe trailer operation, comply with all regulations and the national legal requirements in the respective state.

The permissible trailer load, gross axle weight rating, drawbar nose weight, and gross vehicle weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding or falling below specified limit values, e.g., weight, distance traveled, or speed, can result in damage and malfunctions as well as put health at risk. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Comply with the specified limit values.

Tongue weight

The towing vehicle's maximum payload is reduced by the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight. The tongue weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle.

Loading

To load the trailer, distribute the cargo as evenly as possible over the loading surface.

Stow the cargo as low and close to the trailer axle as possible. A low center of gravity in the trailer increases the driving safety of the entire trailer.

Do not exceed the gross trailer weight and permissible trailer load of the vehicle. The smaller value applies in each case.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, follow the tire pressure specifications for the vehicle and the trailer.

For the vehicle, the tire pressure for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the specifications of the manufacturer apply.

After correcting the tire pressure or connecting or disconnecting a trailer, reinitialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Additional information:

- Tire pressure specifications, refer to page 372.
- Flat tire monitor, refer to page 380.
- Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 376.

Exterior mirrors

Exterior mirrors, which bring both rear edges of the trailer into the driver's field of vision, are available as optional accessories from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electrical consumption

General information

Before the start of a trip, make sure that the trailer lighting is working properly.

To conserve the vehicle battery and reduce electrical consumption, do not keep electrical components on for long periods of time when operating a camper.

Trailer power consumption

The power of the electrical loads in the trailer via unswitched supply must not exceed 140 W.

The power of the trailer lighting must not exceed the following values:

- Turn signals/Brake lights: 54 W per side.
- Tail lights: 100 W total.
- Reversing lights: 54 W in total.

Care for trailer hitch mount

Depending on vehicle equipment, keep the trailer hitch mount clean.

Regularly treat the bearing points and sliding surfaces with resin-free grease or oil.

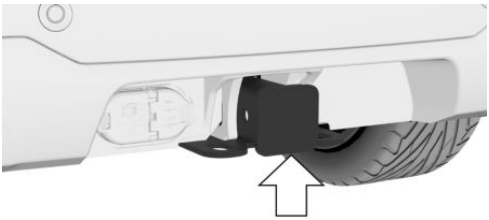
Before using steam/high-pressure cleaners on the vehicle, remove the ball head and insert the cover into the mount.

Mount for trailer hitch

Principle

The trailer hitch mount is located at the rear of the vehicle and is used to mount a trailer hitch.

General information



The mount for the trailer hitch is located on the rear of the vehicle, see arrow.

Information on suitable trailer hitches is provided on the underside of the mount cross member.

Trailers with weight distribution are forbidden.

Follow the instructions for maintaining the trailer hitch mount.

Additional information:

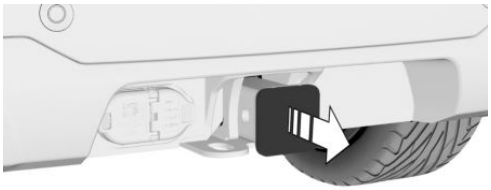
Caring for special components, refer to page 417.

Safety information

WARNING

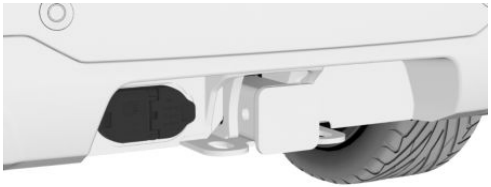
When driving, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., due to the exhaust system, brakes or radiator. Contact with the hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch hot components. Do not perform work in the vicinity of hot components until after they have cooled down.

Removing the cover



Pull the cover to the rear out of the mount and stow it in your vehicle.

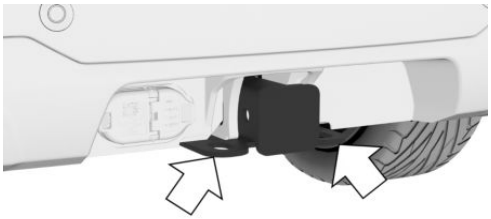
Trailer power socket



The trailer power socket is located to the left of the trailer hitch mount.

Loops for trailer safety chain

General information



Two eyes can be found on the mount for the trailer hitch for attaching the trailer safety chain.

Safety information

WARNING

If the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain is not fastened correctly, the trailer may unintentionally come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before driving with a trailer, correctly couple the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain to the eye of the trailer hitch.

WARNING

If the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain is not fastened correctly, the safety line or safety chain may get caught and cause damage to the vehicle or trailer. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before driving with a trailer, correctly couple the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain to the eye of the trailer hitch. Ensure that the safety line or safety chain can move freely and is not dragging on the ground.

Driving with trailers or rear carriers

Principle

To drive with a trailer or rear carrier, your vehicle must meet certain requirements, e.g., trailer towing is activated. In certain driving situations, you must follow given instructions for correct handling of your trailer or rear carrier, e.g., when driving uphill or downhill.

When driving with a trailer or rear carrier, some driver assistance systems may be restricted or not available. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. The driving stability control systems, e.g., Antilock Braking System, are still available.

Additional information:

- Driver assistance systems, refer to page 184.
- Driving stability control systems, refer to page 319.

Safety information

WARNING

If a trailer hitch is faulty, a trailer cannot be sufficiently secured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving with a faulty trailer hitch.

WARNING

Depending on the design and loading of trailers, they may begin swinging at speeds exceeding approx. 50 mph /80 km/h. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

Adapt your speed when driving with a trailer. Immediately brake in the case of swinging. Apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

The tire pressure must be adjusted to the increased axle load in trailer towing. Driving with too low tire pressure can damage the tires. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 60 mph /100 km/h. Increase the tire pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar/3 psi. Note the maximum possible tire pressure indicated on the tire.

Using a trailer or rear carrier

General information

When the trailer socket is occupied, a menu appears on the central display. The menu can be used to specify whether the vehicle is being driven with a trailer or rear carrier.

Some driver assistance systems may have limited functionality or may malfunction when driving with a trailer or rear carrier, e.g., rear bicycle rack, and an unoccupied trailer power socket. To avoid malfunctions, activate use of the trailer or rear carrier manually.

The maximum permitted speed for the vehicle-trailer combination can be set.

When the trailer socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, some driver assistance systems may be restricted or not available. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Safety information

WARNING

If the settings are configured incorrectly in the menu, some driver assistance systems may have limited functionality or malfunction. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the corresponding setting is enabled when using the trailer or rear carrier.

Activating/deactivating trailer towing manually

Trailer towing can be activated or deactivated manually.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Trailer" / "Type".
2. Select according to operating mode:
   - "No trailer/rear carrier"

     No trailer is connected to the vehicle. No rear carrier is mounted on the vehicle.

     The maximum speed cannot be adjusted.
   - "Rear carrier"

     A rear carrier is mounted on the vehicle.

The maximum speed can be adjusted.

- "Trailer" or "Large trailer"

  A trailer is connected to the vehicle.

  The maximum speed can be adjusted for the selected trailer.

Setting the maximum speed

The permissible maximum speed for the vehicle-trailer combination can be adjusted and is stored for the operating mode selected. Depending on vehicle equipment, this setting is considered by speed limit systems.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Trailer" / "Maximum speed".
2. Select the desired speed.

Additional information:

- Speed Limit Info, refer to page 186.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 190.

Uphill grades

Permissible gradients

Trailer towing is permitted up to gradients of 12 %.

If higher trailer loads are approved at a later point in time, the permitted gradient limit is 8 %.

Driving off on uphill grades

When driving off on gradients with a vehicle-trailer combination, use the parking brake to prevent the vehicle-trailer combination from rolling backwards.

1. Activate Automatic Hold and also apply the parking brake on the central display, as applicable.
2. Step on the accelerator pedal sufficiently to drive off.

   The parking brake releases automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Additional information:

- Automatic Hold, refer to page 158.
- Parking brake, refer to page 159.

Hills

A vehicle-trailer combination tends to sway more on downhill gradients.

Manually downshift to the next-lowest gear before driving on a hill and drive downhill slowly.

Trailer stabilization control

Principle

Trailer stabilization control helps by absorbing the swinging movements of the trailer.

The system detects swinging and automatically brakes the vehicle quickly in order to leave the critical speed range and stabilize the trailer.

General information

If the trailer power socket is occupied but a trailer has not been hitched, the system can also become active in extreme driving situations, e.g., when using a bicycle rack with lighting.

Functional requirements

To use trailer stabilization control, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A trailer is attached.
- The trailer power socket is occupied.
- Vehicle speed must be more than approx. 40 mph /65 km/h.

System limits

The system cannot intervene or not intervene in time in the following situations, for instance:

- If a trailer jackknifes suddenly, for instance on slippery roads or loose surfaces.
- If a trailer with a high center of gravity tilts, before swinging is detected.
- If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or has malfunctioned.
- When the power consumption of a trailer is too low, for instance due to tail lights with LED technology, to be detected by the system.

Brake controller

A brake controller must be installed in order to use a trailer with electric brakes. Electrically controlled trailer brakes do not work without a brake controller.

WARNING

Connecting the brake controller incorrectly can cause the brake controller or trailer lighting to malfunction. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

It is recommended that the work on the Brake Controller, in particular installation, maintenance and repair, is performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends checking the function of the brake controller before each trip. For safe operation, also observe the operating and safety instructions of the manufacturer of the brake controller.

The maximum current of the brake controller must not exceed 16 A. This allows for the operation of trailers with up to two axles.

Rear carriers

Principle

Rear carriers, e.g., rear bicycle racks, are devices that are mounted on the vehicle in order to help transport cargo.

When driving with a rear carrier, you must follow various specifications, e.g., correct load.

General information

Rear carriers recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle are available as optional accessories.

Rear bicycle racks for a maximum of three bicycles can be used.

Only use rear carriers that are mounted directly on the mount for the trailer hitch.

Safety information

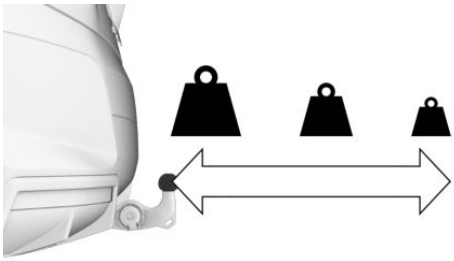
WARNING

Exceeding or falling below specified limit values, e.g., weight, distance traveled, or speed, can result in damage and malfunctions as well as put health at risk. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Comply with the specified limit values.

Installation

Follow the assembly instructions for the rear carrier when installing.

Loading



The gross vehicle weight of the loaded rear carrier depends on how far its center of gravity is from the ball head.

- If the center of gravity is up to 11.8 inches/30 cm from the ball head, the gross weight of the rear carrier must not exceed 165 lbs/75 kg.
- If the center of gravity is 23.5 inches/60 cm from the ball head, the gross weight of the rear carrier must not exceed 77 lbs/35 kg.
- Stow heavy cargo as close as possible to the ball head.
- Fasten cargo securely to the rear carrier, making sure it will not slip.

Before driving

Before starting your trip, make sure that the tail lights on the rear carrier are working.

The maximum output of the rear carrier tail lights should not exceed that of the trailer lighting.

Activate trailer towing when necessary in order to prevent functional limitations or malfunctions of the driver assistance systems.

Additional information:

- Electrical consumption, refer to page 300.
- Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

Driving with a rear carrier

When loaded, rear carriers move the vehicle's center of gravity, which affects how the vehicle handles and steers.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the gross axle weight rating and gross vehicle weight.
- Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking with jerky movements or fast cornering.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

The right place for children

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Turning on standby or drive-ready state.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

A hot vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not leave people, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

WARNING

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

When using a child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, observe the respective national and local regulations.

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Additional information:

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag, refer to page 316.

Safety information

WARNING

If activated, the front passenger airbag can injure children seated in a child restraint systems when deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

When selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems, follow the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

The vehicle is equipped with three-point seat belts on all seats. All compatible child restraint systems can be secured with a seat belt.

Declaration according to FMVSS 210, Seat belt assembly anchorages: Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt.

Safety information

WARNING

Child restraint systems may provide limited protection in the following situations:

- The child restraint systems are not installed correctly.
- Children are not properly secured by a child restraint system.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that child restraint systems are installed correctly in the vehicle and that children are properly secured by the child restraint system.

WARNING

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident may be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or strained by an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbag

WARNING

If activated, the front passenger airbag can injure children seated in a child restraint systems when deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

After mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Additional information:

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag, refer to page 316.

Seat position and height

After mounting a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, to the lowest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

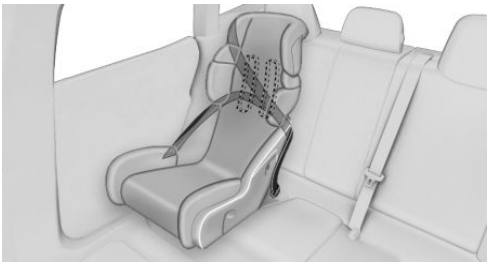
After installing a universal child restraint system, adjust the backrest tilt to achieve the best possible belt routing.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located in front of the seat belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible seat belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: Before installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



To secure child restraint systems, the rear seat belts and front passenger seat belt can be locked to prevent them from being pulled out.

Locking the seat belt

1. Pull out the seat belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to retract, then pull it tight against the child restraint system. The seat belt is locked.

Unlocking the seat belt

1. Open the seat belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to retract completely.

Lower anchors for child restraint systems

Principle

LATCH child restraint systems establish a secure connection to the vehicle in combination with LATCH anchors.

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren.

When selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems, follow the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Mounts for lower anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

WARNING

If the lower anchors on child restraint system are not engaged correctly, the child restraint system will not be able to provide suitable protection. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest.

WARNING

The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

WARNING

Exceeding or falling below specified limit values, e.g., weight, distance traveled, or speed, can result in damage and malfunctions as well as put health at risk. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Comply with the specified limit values.

NOTICE

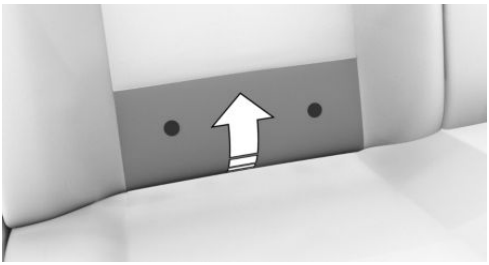
When folded down, the lower anchors cover can be damaged by loads. There is a risk of property damage. Only fold up the cover when attaching a child restraint system on the rear seat. Close the cover again after removing the child restraint system.

Position

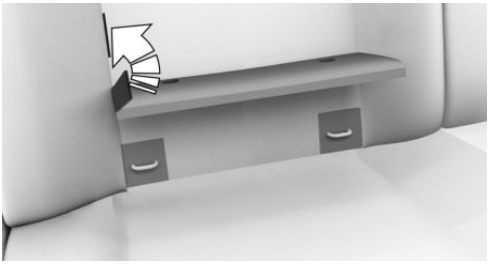
Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair (2) of LATCH icons. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to secure a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

Opening/closing the cover

1. To open the cover, grasp it by the lower edge and fold it upward.



2. Slide the lug on the outside of each backrest into the gap.



1. To close the cover, pull the outer tab out of the gap.
2. Position the tab flat behind the cover.
3. Fold the cover down and secure it.

Before installing child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system, pull the seat belt away from the area of the lower anchors of the child restraint system.

Installing child restraint systems

To install the child restraint system in the vehicle, proceed as follows:

1. Mount the child restraint system in accordance with the instructions from the child seat manufacturer.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system anchors engage correctly on both sides in the lower seat mounts.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

General information

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that the upper retaining strap is guided to the upper attachment point without twisting and not over sharp edges.

WARNING

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or nonexistant. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear seat backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

WARNING

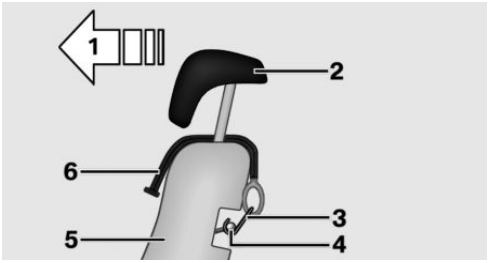
The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

Attachment points for upper retaining strap

Icon	Meaning
	The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap

Rear seat



1 Driving direction
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Attachment point
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

Rear seat

To attach the upper strap to the attachment point, proceed as follows:

1. Raise the head restraint as needed.
2. Guide the upper strap between the head restraint rods, or along both sides of the head restraint rods, to the attachment point.
3. Guide the strap between the backrest and cargo cover, where applicable.
4. Attach the strap's hook to the attachment point.
5. Tighten the strap.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

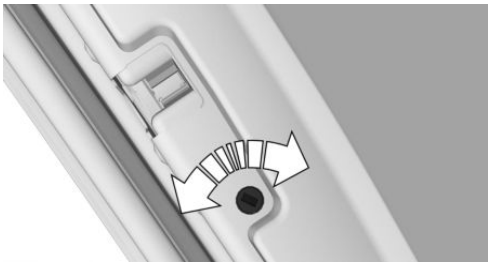
Principle

To prevent the rear doors and windows from being opened from inside the vehicle, there is a switch on the corresponding rear door frame or a safety switch on the driver's door armrest.

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors



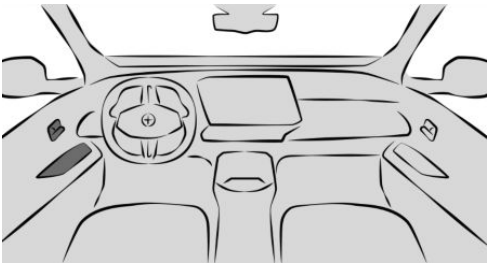
To secure the rear doors, unlock/lock the safety switch on the rear door. To do so, turn the integrated key or a suitable object in the corresponding direction.

Icon	Meaning
	Child safety lock.
	Apply the child safety lock.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

After locking, make sure that the door cannot be opened from the inside.

Rear window safety switch





The safety switch for the rear is located on the driver's door.



To lock rear functions, press the safety switch in the driver's door. The LED is illuminated when the safety function is turned on.

Various functions are locked and cannot be operated in the rear such as the power windows.

Airbag system

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

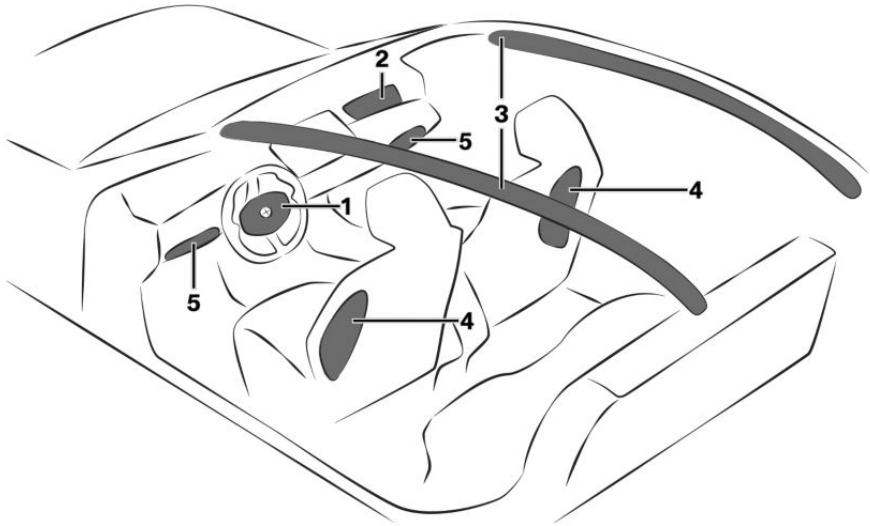
Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Airbags

Principle

The airbag system provides additional protection in the event of an accident, especially if the seat belt is worn correctly.

Overview



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbag

The front airbag helps protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal impact in which the seat belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the sides of the occupants' chest and pelvic area.

Head airbag

In the event of a side collision, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side collision events.

Knee airbag

The availability of the knee airbag depends on the national-market version.

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not deployed in every impact situation, e.g., not in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

⚠ WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect, the seat belts are fastened incorrectly or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to deployment. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

To ensure that the airbag system has the optimal protective effect, note the following:

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Fasten seat belts correctly.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions in order to minimize the risk of hand or arm injury when the airbag deploys.
- Adjust the seat and steering wheel so that hands can reach over the steering wheel diagonally. Configure the settings so that, when grasping the steering wheel, the shoulders rest against the backrest and the upper body is as far away as possible from the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the instrument panel.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Keep the instrument panel and windshield on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover or apply adhesive film, and do not attach holders for, e.g., navigation devices or mobile phones.
- Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them, and do not modify them in any way.
- Do not use the airbag cover on the front passenger side for storage.

- Keep storage compartments near the airbags closed, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions, or other objects on the front seats unless they are specifically designed for seats with integrated airbags.
- Do not hang clothing, e.g., jackets, over the backrests.
- Do not modify individual components or wiring. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the instrument panel, and the seats.
- Do not attach any objects to the steering wheel, e.g., mobile phone holders or trim elements.
- Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when all instructions are followed closely, the airbags may still cause injury upon contact in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may cause short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment for sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Additional warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components can be hot after deployment of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional deployment of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled, and scrapped by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

View on central display



The airbag system warning light on the central display illuminates briefly when drive-ready state is turned on, thus indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners.

Malfunction



- The airbag system warning light on the central display does not illuminate when drive-ready state is turned on.
- The airbag system warning light on the central display illuminates continuously.

The airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Setting the front seat positions

The power that deploys the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function, calibrate the electrical front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the central display.

Additional information:

Seats, refer to page 135.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag automatically

Principle

The automatic front passenger airbag deactivation system can detect if the front passenger seat is occupied.

The front passenger airbag is activated or deactivated accordingly.

The interior camera is part of this system and determines the seat occupancy.

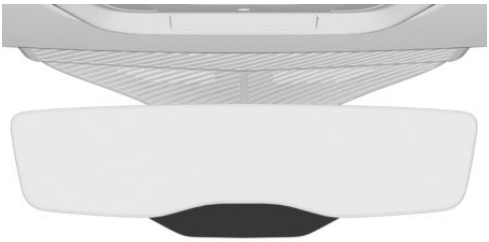
Safety information

WARNING

For the front passenger airbag to function properly, the system must be able to detect whether someone is sitting in the front passenger seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. To detect people on the front passenger seat, ensure that:

- The entire surface of the front passenger seat is occupied.
- The front passenger leaves their feet in the footwell.
- The interior camera is clean and has a clear field of view.

Overview



The interior camera is located at the bottom of the interior mirror.



The indicator light for the front passenger airbag is located in the headliner.

Functional requirements

To ensure that occupants in the front passenger seat are detected properly, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- Sit upright in the seat with the back against the backrest.
- Sit down with your feet touching the floor.
- Make sure that a vehicle occupant or the child restraint system on the front passenger seat is not completely covered, e.g., by a blanket.
- The field of view of the interior camera on the interior mirror must not be obscured, e.g., by a interior mirror tag.

- The interior camera on the interior mirror must not be dirty, fogged, or damaged.
- The interior mirror must be arranged so as not to obstruct the field of view from the front passenger seat.

Additional information:

Interior camera, refer to page 35.

Installing child restraint systems

To ensure that occupants on the front passenger seat are detected properly, note the following:

- When using child restraint systems, pay close attention to the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Make sure that the seat surface of the child restraint system rests as flat as possible on the seat surface.
- Move the head restraint up or remove it to ensure that the child restraint system rests as flat as possible against the rear seat backrest.
- Observe the maximum size of the child restraint system, for example to avoid possibly touching the roof.

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions in the Children on the front passenger seat section.

Additional information:

Installing child restraint systems, refer to page 307.

Indicator light, front passenger airbag



The front passenger airbag indicator light in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbag.

The indicator light shows whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is turned on, the indicator light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

The indicator light is continuously illuminated when the seat is not occupied or when a child is detected on the seat in a provided child restraint system as intended. The airbag on the front passenger's side is not activated.

The indicator light does not illuminate when, for instance, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbag on the front passenger's side is activated.

Check the status of the front passenger airbag using the indicator light in the headliner before and also during the trip, and compare against the following status table.

	Front passenger airbag	
Occupant	**Indicator light**	**Operating state**
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Deactivated
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Deactivated
Adult	OFF: Not illuminated	Enabled

Fault of the automatic deactivation system

For adolescents and adults, the front passenger airbag may deactivate in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbag illuminates in the headliner.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbag activates and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to achieve the desired status of the front passenger airbag, have the respective person or child sit in the rear seat.

Occupancy detection

The occupant detection system satisfies the legal requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard FMVSS 208 and deactivates the front passenger airbag under certain conditions.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Antilock Braking System

Principle

The Antilock Braking System prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

You remain able to steer your vehicle even during full braking, which increases active driving safety.

The Antilock Braking System activates automatically whenever drive-ready state is turned on.

Malfunction



The indicator light for the Antilock Braking System illuminates continuously on the central display if there is a malfunction.



A Check Control message is displayed.

- The Antilock Braking System is not available.
- Steerability is limited during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Brake assistant

The brake assistant automatically applies maximum braking assistance when the brake pedal is depressed quickly. This reduces the braking distance to a minimum for full braking.

To make full use of braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

Dynamic Stability Control helps the driver keep their vehicle safely on the road during critical driving situations. Depending on the situation, the drive power is reduced and wheels can be braked individually. The system can be activated or deactivated on the central display.

Dynamic Stability Control will detect the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- Skidding at the vehicle rear, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready

to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is restricted when accelerating and cornering. To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

1. To activate or deactivate Dynamic Stability Control, through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Chassis" / "Stability control".
2. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic Stability Control deactivates automatically when drive-ready state is turned off. Dynamic Stability Control reactivates when drive-ready state is turned back on.

Dynamic Stability Control can also be activated/deactivated via quick access in the My Vehicle menu.

Displays

General information

Dynamic Stability Control is indicated by various indicator lights on the driver's display and, depending on system status, on the central display.

View on driver's display



If the OFF indicator light for Dynamic Stability Control on the driver's display is illuminated, the system is deactivated.



If the Dynamic Stability Control indicator light on the driver's display flashes, the system is regulating the driving power and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

View on central display



If the Dynamic Stability Control indicator light on the central display illuminates, the system has malfunctioned or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the indicator light illuminates continuously on the central display, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dynamic Traction Control

Principle

The Dynamic Traction Control is a variant of the Driving Stability Control where the drive power is optimized.

Activating Dynamic Traction Control provides maximum traction on loose ground. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when cornering.

A brief activation of the Dynamic Traction Control may be useful in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

The system can be activated or deactivated on the central display.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Activating/deactivating the Dynamic Traction Control

1. To activate or deactivate Dynamic Traction Control, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" / "Chassis" / "Stability control".
2. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic Traction Control deactivates automatically when drive-ready state is turned off. Dynamic Stability Control reactivates when drive-ready state is turned back on.

Dynamic Traction Control can also be activated/deactivated via quick access in the My Vehicle menu.

Views on driver's display





When Dynamic Traction Control is on, the indicator light for traction control and the indicator light for Dynamic Stability Control OFF illuminate on the driver's display.

If Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the vehicle while Traction Control is on, the vehicle indicator light OFF flashes.

Automatic program change

Dynamic Traction Control is automatically deactivated in the following situations, for example:

- When Distance Control is on.
- If the suspension control system fails.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

BMW xDrive

BMW xDrive is the vehicle's intelligent all-wheel-drive system. The interaction between BMW xDrive and other driving dynamics systems further increases traction and driving dynamics.

Servotronic

Servotronic is a speed-dependent steering support.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes parking easier, for example, and makes the steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

The steering force is adapted to the set drive mode to convey a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

Integral Active Steering

Principle

Integral Active Steering increases the maneuverability of the vehicle and makes a more direct steering response possible by also steering the rear wheels.

The steering system combines the steering gear ratio dependent on the steering angle at the front axle with the steered rear wheels.

Steering the rear wheels helps to increase maneuverability at low speeds by slightly turning the rear wheels in the opposite direction to the front wheels. The resulting smaller turning circle helps the driver reduce the required number of steering wheel turns, e.g., when parking.

At higher speeds, the rear wheels are turned in the same direction as the front wheels. This makes lane changes even easier and increases driving stability, for example. The required steering corrections are thus reduced by steering the rear wheels.

In critical driving situations, e.g., oversteering, Integral Active Steering can stabilize the vehicle by automatically steering the rear wheels. The vehicle can also be stabilized with varied road conditions like dry and wet. The vehicle's braking distance on uneven roads can also be shortened by actively countersteering.

Setting

My Modes can be used to select between two steering support settings:

- With comfortable, lower steering forces are required.
- With sporty, higher steering forces are required.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

Using snow chains

In order to ensure wheel clearance when using snow chains, rear-wheel steering must be turned off when snow chains are mounted.

Additional information:

Rear-wheel steering during operation with snow chains, refer to page 372.

Malfunction

Integral Active Steering malfunctions are indicated on the central display as follows:

Icon	Meaning
	Indicator light illuminates yellow: Steering system is deactivated, restricted, or possibly not functional. The steering system may no longer provide assistance. If necessary, view the additional messages on the central display. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
	Warning light illuminates red: Steering system is not functional. If necessary, view the additional messages on the central display. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If Integral Active Steering malfunctions, note the following:

- Multiple steering wheel turns are required at low speeds.
- The response of the vehicle is more sensitive at higher speeds.
- Proceed cautiously and use an anticipatory driving style.

Active safety systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Collision warning systems

Principle

The active safety systems can help prevent an impending collision. To do so, the area around the vehicle is monitored by various sensors.

Certain active safety systems can be activated or deactivated on the central display. Depending on national-market version, some systems automatically become operational after departure.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The active safety systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.
- The interior camera.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Activating saved settings

The personal settings for some active safety systems, which automatically become operational after departure depending on national-market version, are saved to the BMW ID or driver profile.

Saved settings are activated when drive-ready state is turned on again. A prompt appears on the central display.

Resetting saved settings

All personal settings for the active safety systems can be reset to their status at vehicle delivery.

1. To reset the settings, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance".
2. Press and hold the following menu item: "Safety" / "Reset to recommended settings".

Reduce warnings

General information

In the menu for the active safety systems, some warnings and steering interventions can be temporarily disabled at the same time by using a certain mode. This makes it possible to use a sportier, more dynamic driving style.

If any warnings or steering interventions have been temporarily disabled, the driver is responsible for assessing traffic correctly. Disable this mode again as soon as possible.

It is possible to configure which systems are deactivated when reduced warnings mode is activated.

Saved settings for active safety systems are not changed by this mode and are reactivated as soon as this mode is disabled. No changes can be made to saved settings while this mode is enabled.

This mode deactivates automatically at the end of a drive.

Activate/deactivate mode

1. To enable/disable fewer warnings mode, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Reduce warnings".

   A list appears indicating which systems are deactivated when this mode is enabled.
2. Select the desired setting.

This mode can also be activated/deactivated via quick access in the My Vehicle menu.

Configuring modes

1. To set reduced warnings mode, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Reduce warnings" / "Select warnings".
2. Select the desired setting.

Only the selected systems are deactivated when reduced warnings mode is activated.

At least one system must be selected.

System limits

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The detection capability of the active safety systems is restricted.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system. If so, a system response therefore might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

The active safety systems may be restricted by the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.

Forward Collision Mitigation

Principle

Forward Collision Mitigation can help to prevent accidents within a certain speed range. To do so, the area around the vehicle is monitored by various sensors.

If the driver brakes, this system helps to optimize the braking distance. If the driver does not brake hard enough, the system automatically applies the necessary brake power to avoid a collision. When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake power of the vehicle is used. You can cancel automatic brake intervention manually, e.g., by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system warns the driver of a possible collision in two stages. If the driver does not react to warnings from the system, the system can automatically decelerate the vehicle to a standstill.

The system considers the driver's vehicle handling when responding. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions occur less frequently.

Forward Collision Mitigation includes the following functions:

- The rear-end collision warning function.
- The oncoming traffic warning function.
- The oncoming traffic warning function when turning.
- The pedestrian and animal warning function.
- The intersection warning function.

The time of warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Forward Collision Mitigation can be activated or deactivated on the central display.

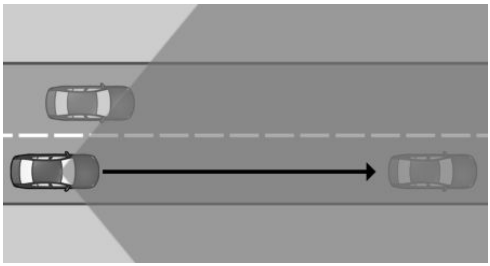
In addition, prewarnings can be activated/deactivated.

Various warning lights are shown on the driver's display depending on the detected risk of collision.

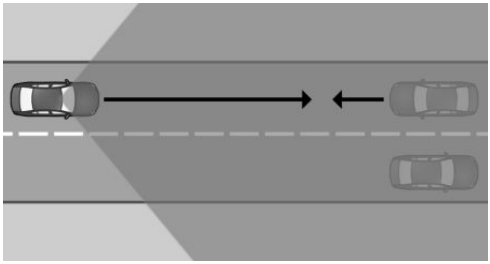
Various indicator lights for the status of the Forward Collision Mitigation system are shown on the central display.

Warning functions

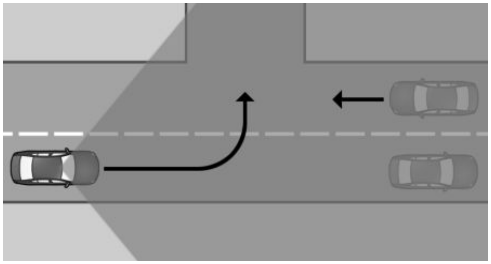
For the warning function of Forward Collision Mitigation, the sensors record the traffic situation in their detection range.



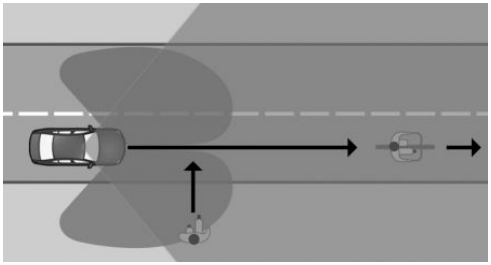
Warning function in rear-end collision situations.



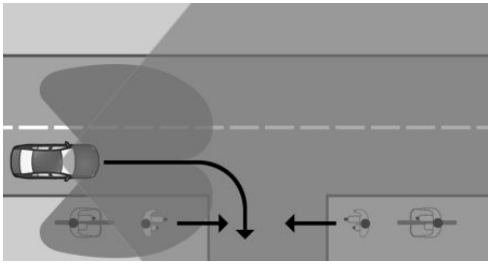
Warning function for oncoming traffic.



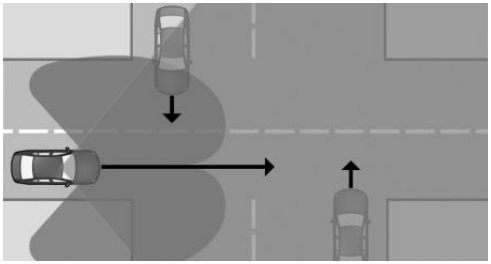
Warning function for turning with oncoming traffic.



Warning function for pedestrians or animals on a straight road.



Warning function for pedestrians when turning.



Warning function at intersections.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

Forward Collision Mitigation is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

Functional requirements

Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Speed range

Forward Collision Mitigation issues a warning for a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 3 mph /5 km/h.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph /250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below this value again.

Some warning functions have a limited speed range, e.g., the warning function when turning. The system is then deactivated earlier.

Activating/deactivating Forward Collision Mitigation

Automatic activation of system

Depending on national-market version, Forward Collision Mitigation automatically becomes operational after departure.

Activating/deactivating this system manually

Manual deactivation of Forward Collision Mitigation is only possible in the speed range close to standstill or when the vehicle is stationary.

1. To activate or deactivate Forward Collision Mitigation manually, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Forward Collision Mitigation".
2. Select the desired setting.



The system can also be activated directly by selecting the gray indicator light OFF on the central display.

Enabling/disabling the prewarning

A Forward Collision Mitigation prewarning can be activated or deactivated.

If prewarnings are deactivated, only acute warnings are issued.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Forward Collision Mitigation" / "Early warning".
2. Select the desired setting.

Displays

Views on driver's display

Prewarnings and acute warnings from the Forward Collision Mitigation system are indicated by various warning lights on the driver's display and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display:

Icon	Meaning
 or  or 	Risk of collision with a pedestrian.
 or  or 	Risk of collision with a cyclist.

Icon	Meaning
 or  or 	Risk of collision with an animal.
	Risk of collision, for instance with an oncoming or a vehicle driving ahead.
 or 	Risk of collision, for instance with a crossing vehicle.
	General risk of collision.

Warning lights may be shown in different ways since the system may have detected multiple objects.

Warning levels

Forward Collision Mitigation issues warnings at various warning levels depending on the respective hazard.

- Prewarning: A red warning light illuminates.

  A hazardous situation has been detected. Increased awareness is required.
- Acute warning: A red warning light flashes and a warning tone sounds.

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.

Automatic brake intervention

If there is a risk of collision, Forward Collision Mitigation can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

A braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal with sufficient force or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Depending on the equipment and situation, the brake intervention can occur up to approx. 155 mph /250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph /210 km/h, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Additional information:

Collision warning systems, refer to page 323.

Detection capability

Depending on the warning function, the corresponding sensors may not be able to detect, at all or with a delay, the following, e.g.:

Forward Collision Warning:

- Preceding vehicle driving slowly and being approached at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with unusual rear designs.

Oncoming Traffic Warning:

- Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- Vehicles with unusual front designs.
- Vehicles that are hidden by other vehicles.

Pedestrian or Animal Warning:

- Partially concealed pedestrians, bicycles, or animals.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- Pedestrians or animals who are too small for the sensors to detect.

Intersection Warning:

- Crossing vehicles when they are hidden, e.g. by buildings.
- Vehicles with unusual side designs.
- Vehicles in highly dynamic driving situations.

Functional limitations

Forward Collision Mitigation may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated.
- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on.

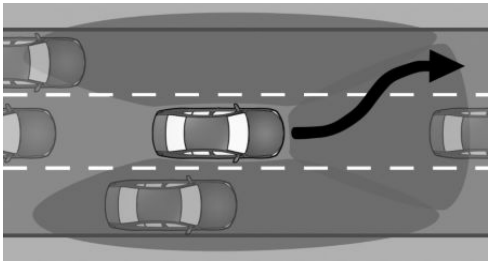
Do not use Forward Collision Mitigation when tow-starting and towing away.

Evasion Assistant

Principle

The Evasion Assistant is an upgraded feature of Forward Collision Mitigation.

This system helps the driver perform evasive maneuvers, e.g., when an obstacle or pedestrian appears suddenly. Assistance is provided when Forward Collision Mitigation issues an acute warning and the driver begins steering actively.



The sensors monitor and detect the gap in front of and next to the vehicle.

If a gap has been detected, this system helps the driver steer their vehicle. This system helps the driver keep their vehicle safely on the road.

The Evasion Assistant activates/deactivates automatically with Forward Collision Mitigation. Depending on national-market version, the Evasion Assistant automatically becomes operational after departure.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust

driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

To use the Evasion Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- An acute warning from Forward Collision Mitigation has been issued.
- The driver has initiated an evasive maneuver by actively steering.
- Sensors have detected sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Speed range

The Evasion Assistant helps the driver when the vehicle speed is between approx. 19 mph / 30 km/h to 100 mph / 160 km/h.

Evasion assistance

If there is an acute risk of collision, the driver is warned of this by the various Forward Collision Mitigation warning lights on the driver's display and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display.

If the driver begins steering actively due to this warning, the Evasion Assistant helps them steer their vehicle. A message on the driver's display indicates that evasion assistance is being provided.

If the driver does not start steering or does not brake, Forward Collision Mitigation helps to prevent an accident.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

System limits

General information

If Forward Collision Mitigation issues an acute warning for an animal, oncoming traffic, or a quickly crossing vehicle, no evasion assistance is provided.

Note the system limits in the Forward Collision Mitigation section.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 325.

Functional limitations

The Evasion Assistant may be limited in the following situations:

- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated.
- This system is deactivated when the trailer socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer.

Exit Warning

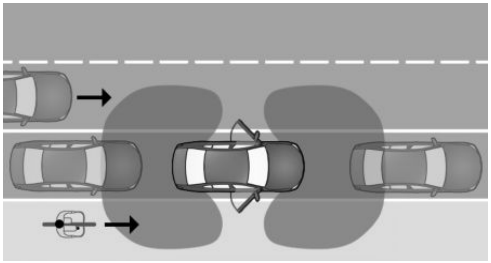
Principle

The Exit Warning helps to avoid accidents.

The system monitors the vehicle's surroundings for a limited time after you get in or park. When opening doors, vehicle occupants are then warned if a risk of collision with an approaching object is detected.

A possible risk of collision is indicated by various warnings, e.g., warning light on the exterior mirror and a warning tone.

The warning light in the exterior mirror gives warnings at different levels.



The sensors monitor the area in front of and behind the vehicle.

The Exit Warning always becomes operational automatically.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Pay attention to surrounding traffic and react accordingly as necessary.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The Exit Warning is controlled by the following sensors:

- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Side radar sensors, front.

Display

Warning light in exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Ambient light

Depending on the equipment, warnings are also indicated by the ambient light in the interior.

Warning levels

Prewarning

In the event of a prewarning for the Exit Warning, the warning light on the exterior mirror illuminates.

An object was detected in the opening area of the doors. Increased awareness is required.

Warning

If the Exit Warning is issued, the warning light on the exterior mirror flashes.

Depending on the equipment, the ambient light also flashes.

There is a risk of collision if the doors are opened further or if the vehicle is exited.

Acute warning

If an acute Exit Warning is issued, the warning light on the exterior mirror flashes. In addition, a warning tone sounds. The doors will not open as long as there is an object in collision range.

On vehicles with automatic doors, the doors stop opening.

Depending on the equipment, the ambient light also flashes.

There is a risk of collision when opening the doors.

To cancel the delay for opening doors, push the button on the door again.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Additional information:

Collision warning systems, refer to page 323.

Detection capability

With the Exit Warning, the following may not be identified in the sensor detection range, e.g.:

- Fully or partially hidden objects.
- Stationary or very slow objects.
- Pedestrians.

Functional limitations

The Exit Warning may be limited in the following situations:

- The speed of an approaching vehicle is too fast or too slow.
- In curves.

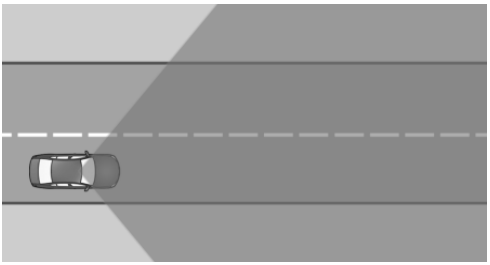
Lane Keeping Assistant

Principle

The Lane Keeping Assistant helps the driver if they unintentionally leave their lane. Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to configure a brief steering intervention or steering wheel vibration for assistance purposes.

If a sufficient gap has been detected, the steering intervention prevents the vehicle from exiting its lane and steers the vehicle parallel to the lane markings.

With steering wheel vibration, the steering wheel vibrates when the vehicle exits the lane instead of a steering intervention being performed.



The sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The Lane Keeping Assistant uses various warning methods depending on the respective situation and vehicle speed:

- Steering intervention or steering wheel vibration, depending on the settings.
- The lane boundary line is shown on the driver's display and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display.
- Indicator lights shown on the central display.
- Warning tone.

The Lane Keeping Assistant can be activated, deactivated, and configured on the central display.

If the turn signal is set in the corresponding direction before leaving a lane, this system does not provide any assistance.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The camera behind the windshield records the traffic situation as a signal for the Lane Keeping Assistant.

Functional requirements

To use the Lane Keeping Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The lane boundary must be detected by the camera behind the windshield.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

Speed range

Depending on national-market version, the Lane Keeping Assistant helps the driver when the vehicle speed is between approx. 40 mph / 60 km/h to 110 mph / 180 km/h.

Activating/deactivating the Lane Keeping Assistant

Automatic activation of system

Depending on national-market version, the Lane Keeping Assistant automatically becomes operational after departure.

Activating/deactivating this system manually

1. To manually enable/disable the Lane Keeping Assistant, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Lane Keeping Assistant".
2. Select the desired setting.

This system can also be activated/deactivated directly by selecting the gray or white indicator lights on the central display.

Configuring the Lane Keeping Assistant

The Lane Keeping Assistant can be configured depending on national-market version. The central display can be used to activate/deactivate steering intervention or steering wheel vibration. It may only be possible to use the steering intervention, depending on national-market version.

1. To configure the Lane Keeping Assistant, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Lane Keeping Assistant".
2. Select the desired setting:

- "Steering intervention"
- "Steering wheel vibration"

Depending on national-market version, the steering intervention automatically becomes operational after departure.

Displays

View on driver's display

Interventions by the Lane Keeping Assistant are shown on the driver's display and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display.



The corresponding lane marking illuminates yellow when the vehicle exits the lane.

Information on this system is shown in Assist View on the central display.

Additional information:

Assist View, refer to page 56.

Views on the central display

The system statuses of the Lane Keeping Assistant are shown on the central display.

Icon	Meaning
	Indicator light illuminates white: System is on. At least one lane boundary has been detected on one side of the vehicle. The system is ready to intervene.
	Indicator light flashes white: System performs a steering intervention or steering wheel vibration, depending on the settings.
	Indicator light illuminates yellow: Functional limitation detected or the system has malfunctioned. You may continue driving. If necessary, view the additional messages on the central display.
	Indicator light illuminates gray: System is on but currently unavailable. At least one functional requirement has not been met, e.g., the minimum speed has not been reached or a functional limitation has been detected.
	Indicator light illuminates gray: System has been deactivated automatically or manually.

The indicator lights on the central display can be operated:

- Yellow indicator light: Selecting this indicator light displays additional information.
- Gray and white indicator lights: Selecting these indicator lights deactivates the system.
- Gray indicator light OFF: Selecting the indicator light OFF activates the system.

Steering intervention, steering wheel vibration

If a lane marking is crossed, a steering intervention is performed or the steering wheel vibrates, depending on the settings. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

The steering intervention and vibration can be felt on the steering wheel.

This assistance system can be manually overridden at any time.

Steering assistance is suppressed in the following situations, for example:

- With hard accelerating or braking.
- When flashing.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- When the driver checks the adjacent lane.
- In driving situation with high driving dynamics.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is limited.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.

Warning signal

An acoustic warning sounds if the driver does not steer themselves after the Lane Keeping Assistant has performed active steering interventions several times within approximately three minutes.

- A short warning tone will sound after the second steering intervention.
- A longer warning tone will sound following the third steering intervention.

A message also appears on the driver's display.

The longer warning tone is stopped if the driver takes control of the steering.

If the driver ignores this warning tone for an extended period of time, an emergency stop triggers automatically.

Additional information:

Fatigue Alert, refer to page 341.

With trailer towing

When the Lane Keeping Assistant is on, this system may be restricted if trailer towing is activated for a trailer.

If using a rear bicycle rack on the trailer hitch, this restriction does not apply when rear carrier towing is activated on the central display.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 301.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Additional information:

Collision warning systems, refer to page 323.

Detection capability

With the Lane Keeping Assistant, the corresponding sensors may not be able to detect, at all or to a limited degree, the following, e.g.:

- Lane boundaries that are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or unclear, e.g, at construction sites.
- Lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt, or water.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- Lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.

Functional limitations

The Lane Keeping Assistant may be limited in the following situations, e.g.:

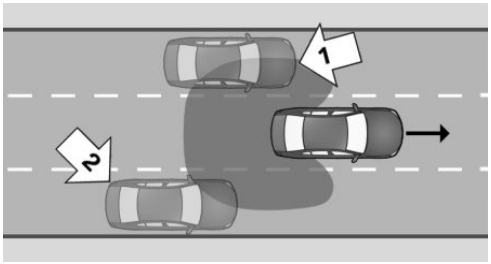
- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is restricted or disabled.
- With trailer towing.

Active Blind Spot Detection

Principle

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the driver's blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in an adjacent lane. There is a risk of collision in this hazard range.

A possible risk of collision is indicated by various warnings, e.g., signaled by warning light on the exterior mirror.



The sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in your blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in an adjacent lane, arrow 2.

Depending on the situation detected, various warning levels are used to warn the driver of a possible collision.

Active Blind Spot Detection can be activated/deactivated from the central display.

It is also possible to activate/deactivate the steering wheel vibration.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

Active Blind Spot Detection is controlled by the side, rear radar sensors.

Speed range

Active Blind Spot Detection becomes operational at the start of a trip.

This system is temporarily deactivated at speeds greater than approx. 155 mph /250 km/h. The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below this value again.

Activating/deactivating the Active Blind Spot Detection

1. To enable/disable Active Blind Spot Detection, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Active Blind Spot Detection".
2. Select the desired setting.

Activating/deactivating the steering wheel vibration

1. To enable/disable the steering wheel vibration for Active Blind Spot Detection, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Active Blind Spot Detection" / "Steering wheel vibration".
2. Select the desired setting.

Displays

Warning light in exterior mirror



At various warning levels, the warning light in the exterior mirror warns the driver of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

View on driver's display

Acute warnings from Active Blind Spot Detection are shown on the driver's display and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display.



If there is a vehicle in the hazard range, the corresponding adjacent lane illuminates yellow.

Information on this system is shown in Assist View on the central display.

Additional information:

Assist View, refer to page 56.

Warning levels

Prewarning

If a prewarning is issued for Active Blind Spot Detection, the warning light in the exterior mirror is dimly illuminated when other vehicles are within the hazard range.

Acute warning

If an acute warning is issued for Active Blind Spot Detection, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes when other vehicles are within the hazard range.

The adjacent lane is also shown on the driver's display and, if necessary, the steering wheel vibrates briefly.

An acute warning is issued if the following conditions are met:

- The turn signal is on.
- Another vehicle is located in the critical area.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the hazard range or the turn signal has been on for some time.

With trailer towing

If the trailer socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, Active Blind Spot Detection does not issue a prewarning. If there is a risk of collision, only an acute warning is issued.

The system may be restricted. Warnings can be displayed late or not at all, e.g., if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher than your own speed. An increased number of unwarranted warnings may occur. A message appears on the central display.

Warning light flashing

As a self-test of Active Blind Spot Detection, the warning light on the exterior mirror flashes briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Additional information:

Collision warning systems, refer to page 323.

Detection capability

The detection capability of Active Blind Spot Detection may be limited in the following situations, e.g.:

- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

Functional limitations

The Active Blind Spot Detection may be restricted in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- With trailer towing.

Emergency steering intervention

Principle

The emergency steering intervention helps the driver to avoid risk of imminent collision.

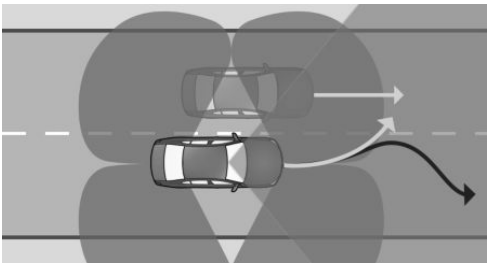
The sensors monitor the area in front of, next to, and behind the vehicle.

This system assists the driver by performing an active steering intervention if a sufficient gap has been detected in the vehicle's lane.

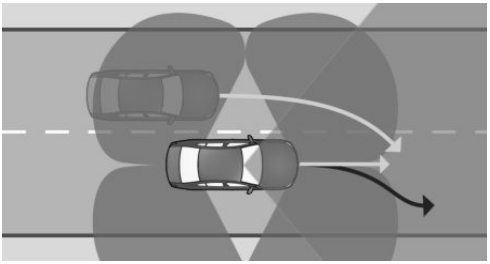
The emergency steering intervention uses various warning methods depending on the respective situation:

- Steering intervention.
- Indicator on driver's display.
- Warning light in exterior mirror.
- Warning tone.

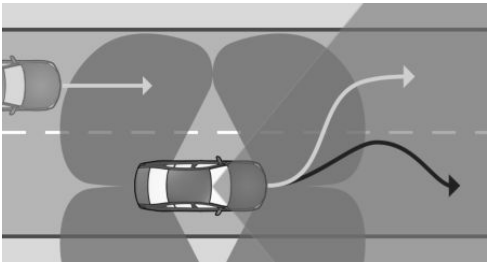
The emergency steering intervention provides assistance in the following situations:



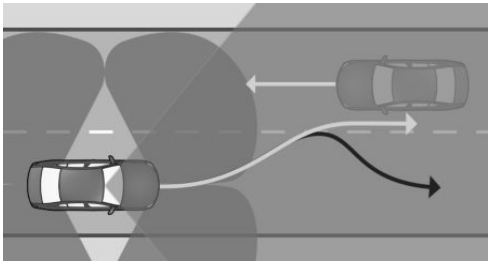
When approaching a vehicle in an adjacent lane from the side.



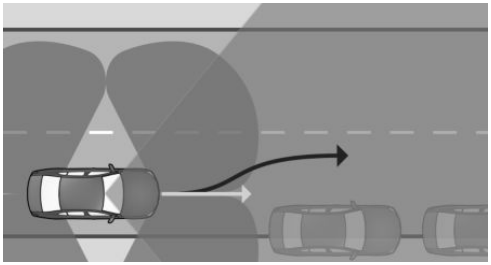
When a vehicle in an adjacent lane is approaching from the side.



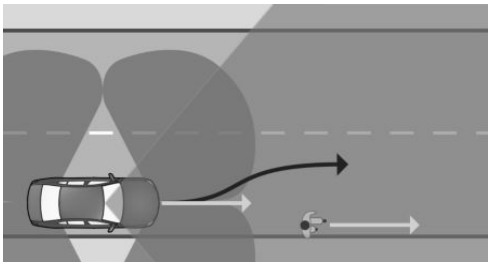
There is a risk of imminent collision with an overtaking vehicle in an adjacent lane.



There is a risk of imminent collision with an oncoming vehicle in an adjacent lane.



A risk of imminent collision with an obstacle in your lane, e.g., with a parking vehicle.



A risk of imminent collision with an obstacle in your lane, e.g., a pedestrian or cyclist.

The emergency steering intervention can be activated/deactivated on the central display.

In addition, steering intervention can be activated/deactivated for situations involving a risk of collision with an obstacle in your lane.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

Emergency steering intervention is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

Functional requirements

To use the emergency steering intervention, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A lane boundary must be detected by the camera.
- The sensors have determined the lane boundaries' locations.
- An object must be detected by the sensors.

Speed range

The emergency steering intervention system helps the driver when the vehicle speed is between approx. 19 mph /30 km/h to 112 mph / 180 km/h.

This speed range may be limited in some situations.

Enabling/disabling the emergency steering intervention

1. To enable/disable the emergency steering intervention, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Emergency steering intervention".
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on national-market version, the emergency steering intervention automatically becomes operational after departure.

Activating/deactivating steering intervention due to obstacles in your lane

1. To enable/disable steering intervention due to obstacles in your lane, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Emergency steering intervention" / "Obstacle in own lane".
2. Select the desired setting.

Displays

Views on driver's display

An emergency steering intervention is indicated by a message on the driver's display.

Depending on the situation, the corresponding lane marking or adjacent lane also illuminates yellow.

If there is a risk of imminent collision with an obstacle in your lane, a red warning light illuminates.

Information on this system is shown in Assist View on the central display.

Additional information:

Assist View, refer to page 56.

Warning light in exterior mirror



The warning light in the exterior mirror illuminates in the following situations, e.g.:

- When approaching too close from the side, or when there is a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- If there is a risk of collision with an overtaking vehicle in an adjacent lane.

Steering intervention

An active steering intervention is performed in order to prevent a collision and keep the vehicle in its lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Warning signal

An emergency steering intervention warning tone sounds in the following situations, e.g.:

- When approaching too close from the side, or when there is a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- If there is a risk of imminent collision with an obstacle in your lane.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Additional information:

Collision warning systems, refer to page 323.

Detection capability

With an emergency steering intervention, the corresponding sensors may not be able to detect, at all or to a limited degree, the following, e.g.:

- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- Lane boundaries that are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or unclear, e.g, at construction sites.
- Lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt, or water.
- Lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.

Functional limitations

The emergency steering intervention may be restricted in the following situations, e.g.:

- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on.
- When the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack.

Fatigue Alert

Principle

The Fatigue Alert can detect when the driver is less alert using various criteria.

The Fatigue Alert includes the following functions:

- Break recommendation.

  This function can detect driver fatigue, e.g., on long, monotonous trips, and recommend that the driver take a break if necessary.

  Depending on national-market version, some active safety systems, e.g., the Lane Keeping Assistant or Forward Collision Mitigation, become more sensitive when fatigue is detected while driving.

  The break recommendation can be adjusted on the central display.
- The Distraction Warning, depending on vehicle equipment.

  The function also detects the driver's attention to the surrounding traffic. The Distraction Warning activates automatically whenever drive-ready state is operational.
- Emergency stop.

  This function assists the driver by automatically initiating an emergency stop if the driver is no longer able to control their vehicle safely. The central display can be used to enable/disable triggering of the emergency stop.

  Depending on national-market version, the emergency stop automatically becomes operational after departure.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Sensors

The Fatigue Alert is controlled by the interior camera.

Enabling/disabling the Fatigue Alert

1. To enable/disable the Fatigue Alert, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Attentiveness assistance".
2. Select the desired setting.

Break recommendation

Function

The break recommendation begins training to the driver once a trip is started, enabling it to detect when the driver is inattentive or fatigued.

This process takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, e.g., steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, e.g., the time or duration of the drive.
- The information from the interior camera.

The detection function for driver fatigue activates at a speed of approx. 43 mph / 70 km/h.

The break recommendation is displayed on the central display.

Setting break recommendation

The sensitivity of the Fatigue Alert break recommendation can be adjusted.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Attentiveness assistance" / "Early break recommendation".
2. Select the desired setting.

View on central display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, the Fatigue Alert break recommendation appears on the central display, recommending that the driver take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

This function is reset approx. 45 minutes after the vehicle is parked. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

Distraction Warning

Function

If, depending on vehicle equipment, the interior camera detects that the driver appears distracted or is not paying attention to surrounding traffic, warnings appear on the driver's display according to the type of distraction detected.

This function activates at speeds greater than approx. 12 mph / 20 km/h.

If the driver assistance systems are turned on, this function may already be active at lower speeds.

The warning disappears when the driver turns their attention back to the traffic.

Deactivating the distraction warning

To deactivate the distraction warning of the Fatigue Alert, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" /

"Attentiveness assistance" / "Distraction warning".

Despite this function being deactivated, some driver assistance systems may issue distraction warnings.

Emergency stop

Function

If the emergency stop triggers automatically, the vehicle is brought to a stop in its own lane by the Lane Keeping Assistant.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, this system can perform a lane change if the situation permits.

The driver can manually cancel the emergency stop at any time.

Functional requirements

To use the emergency stop, the following functional requirements must be met:

- This function is activated on the central display.
- Depending on national-market version, this function activates starting from a speed of approx. 12 mph / 20 km/h or approx. 43 mph / 70 km/h.
- The interior camera monitors the driver's activity.

Activating/deactivating the emergency stop

1. To enable/disable triggering of the emergency stop, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Assistance" / "Safety" / "Attentiveness assistance" / "Emergency stop".
2. Select the desired setting.

Even if this function is deactivated, some driver assistance systems may trigger an emergency stop automatically.

Depending on national-market version, the emergency stop automatically becomes operational after departure.

Emergency stop has triggered

If this function detects that the driver is no longer driving their vehicle safely or is ignoring warnings, an emergency stop is triggered automatically. The driver's display shows when this function has triggered.

An immediate call to the BMW call center can be initiated on the central display, which triggers an emergency call in the event of an emergency.

The following is done automatically when an emergency stop is triggered:

- An indicator appears on the driver's display.
- This function takes control of the vehicle until it has come to a stop.
- The hazard warning system is switched on.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, a call to the BMW call center is initiated when the vehicle is at a standstill.
- The Head-up display may turn off while an emergency call is ongoing.

An emergency stop can also be triggered via voice control.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 80.

Canceling an emergency stop

The driver can cancel an emergency stop at any point by taking active control of driving the vehicle.

This function is stopped by doing the following, e.g.:

- By firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Stopping the function on the central display.
- By operating the turn signal.

- By turning off the hazard warning system.
- By firmly countersteering.
- By changing the selector lever position when the vehicle was already at a standstill.

At standstill

Once the vehicle comes to a stop after an emergency stop has triggered, this function does as follows:

- The vehicle is secured against rolling away.
- The interior lights are switched on.
- The central locking system is unlocked.

View on driver's display



The driver's display indicates when an emergency stop has triggered.

System limits

The Fatigue Alert may be limited and therefore may not issue any warning or may issue an unwarranted warning.

The Fatigue Alert functions may be restricted in the following situations:

- If the time is set incorrectly.
- With a sporty driving style such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road condition is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.
- Depending on national-market version, with restricted functionality of the interior camera.

Additional information:

Interior camera, refer to page 35.

Accident safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Acoustic pedestrian protection

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, acoustic pedestrian protection produces a continuous driving noise on vehicles with electric or electrically-assisted drives.

A speaker system transmits the noise to the vehicle's surroundings. As a result, other road users, for instance pedestrians or cyclists, can better perceive the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The acoustic pedestrian protection system generates driving noise under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is moved off of position P when the vehicle is stationary and drive-ready state is turned on.
- With electric driving up to approx. 20 mph / 30 km/h.

Malfunction

If the acoustic pedestrian protection system fails, exercise greater caution when maneuvering.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If malfunctioning repeatedly, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

PostCrash iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a stop without any need for the driver to intervene. This can reduce the risk of a further collision.

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle deceleration

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a stop more quickly than automatic braking with PostCrash iBrake.

Brake quickly and firmly in order to achieve greater deceleration.

Canceling automatic braking

Automatic braking can be canceled by pressing and holding the accelerator pedal.

BMW Drive Recorder

Principle

The BMW Drive Recorder stores brief recordings of the vehicle surroundings, e.g., to document surrounding traffic.

This system consists of various recorders that store media recordings in the corresponding situation:

- Accident Recorder.

This system saves recordings in the event of an accident when driving.

- Anti-Theft Recorder (external).

  In the event of theft, this system begins recording once the alarm system triggers.

- Parking Collision Recorder.

  Recordings are made when the vehicle is parked and a parking collision has been detected.

This system must be activated on the central display before it can be used for the first time. The system is then permanently activated.

When triggered, media recordings are stored automatically and can be played on the central display. If necessary, recordings can be started and stored manually.

The central display can be used to configure various settings for media recordings, e.g., the recording duration.

Media recordings can be saved directly to a mobile device, e.g., smartphone.

The following driving parameters are saved and shown on the central display:

- Date.
- Time.
- Position finding.
- Speed.
- Position of the accelerator pedal.
- Brake lights.
- Turn signals.

Additional information:

Parking Collision Detection, refer to page 225.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Data protection

The BMW Drive Recorder is permitted to record and evaluate media recordings in accordance with the statutory regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with respective applicable regulations.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you verify there are no statutory or regulatory restrictions on using the system in your region or country prior to initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, you should inform others about the system when giving them the vehicle.

Sensors

BMW Drive Recorder media recordings are made by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

To trigger and save media recordings via the BMW Drive Recorder, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The areas around the sensors are clean and free of obstruction.
- Standby state is switched on.

- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.
- The BMW Drive Recorder is activated.
- The settings for the BMW Drive Recorder have been selected.

To trigger and save media recordings made by the recording function of the Anti-Theft Recorder (external) and the Parking Collision Recorder, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The Privacy Policy in the Privacy menu has been accepted.
- Notifications for a recording by the Parking Collision Recorder and the Anti-Theft Recorder have been enabled in the Drive Recorder menu.
- The recording function of the Anti-Theft Recorder (external) can only be used if vehicle is equipped with an alarm system.
- The My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- The My BMW app is linked to the ConnectedDrive account.
- The settings for the Anti-Theft Recorder (external) and the Parking Collision Recorder have been selected.

Additional information:

- Cameras and sensors, refer to page 34.
- Data protection, refer to page 91.

Activating the BMW Drive Recorder

Before using the BMW Drive Recorder for the first time, the system must be activated once on the central display. Recordings can only be made after the use of cameras and position finding has been confirmed, as well as legal notices on data protection.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Successively confirm the use of cameras and position finding.
3. If necessary, "Use predefined settings"
4. "Confirm"



After successful activation of the system, the icon for the BMW Drive Recorder illuminates on the central display.

Settings

Default settings

1. To configure the default settings for BMW Drive Recorder, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "General"
4. Select the desired settings.

Media recordings

For media recordings, settings can be applied for automatic storage according to the detected situation and the recording duration.

The total length of a media recording is up to 60 seconds.

For the function of the accident recorder, up to 30 seconds before triggering and up to 30 seconds after triggering the media recording are saved.

For the external Anti-Theft Recorder and the Parking Collision Recorder function, recordings are not saved until the recording function is

triggered. Saving before triggering is not possible.

1. To set the media recordings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Recordings"
4. Select the desired settings.

Resetting the settings

The BMW Drive Recorder settings can be reset.

1. To reset the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Data privacy"
4. "Reset Drive Recorder"

To use the BMW Drive Recorder again after resetting, the system must be reactivated.

Media recording in the vehicle

Triggering or saving an automatic media recording

An automatic media recording is triggered and saved in the vehicle if the corresponding vehicle sensors detect an accident or parking collision. In the event of theft, the media recording is saved after the alarm system is triggered.

The duration of the recording corresponds to the selected setting for the media recordings.

After the alarm system is triggered or a parking collision is detected, a notification is sent to the My BMW App.

The media recordings in the event of theft or a parking collision can be transferred to a mobile device once they have been saved in reduced quality.

Rapid acceleration of the vehicle may trigger an automatic media recording even though, for example, no accident occurred.

The media recordings saved by the BMW Drive Recorder are not used for accident analysis. The data recorded by the event data recorder can be used for accident analysis.

Additional information:

Event data recorder, refer to page 14.

Starting or stopping a manual media recording

1.  To start manual media recording in the vehicle, select the icon for the BMW Drive Recorder on the central display or go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Select the recording widget to save in the vehicle.

   The recording dot illuminates red in the icon. The recording duration is also displayed in the widget.

The media recording runs in accordance with the set recording duration. If necessary, the media recording can be stopped manually and saved prematurely by selecting the recording widget again.

Playing and managing media recordings

The media recordings saved by the BMW Drive Recorder can be played back on the central display, transferred to a mobile device, or deleted.

The media recordings can be managed for individual recordings or for all recordings simultaneously.

For your own safety, while the vehicle is in motion, media recordings are only shown on the central display if the vehicle speed is below approx. 2 mph /3 km/h. Depending on

the national-market version, media recordings are only shown while the vehicle is stationary when the parking brake is applied or selector lever position P is engaged.

1. To play back or manage the media recordings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder" / "Available recordings".
2. Select the desired media recordings.

Sending media recordings automatically

General information

In the event of theft or a parking collision, the vehicle can be set to automatically send saved media recordings to a mobile device.

Functional requirements

To send media recordings from the vehicle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The My BMW App is installed on the mobile device.
- The BMW ID is linked to the ConnectedDrive account in the vehicle and on the My BMW App.
- The mobile device is connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi.
- The My BMW App is permitted to access your photo library.
- The mobile device is placed close to the center console.

Additional information:

Connecting devices to the vehicle via Bluetooth or Wi-Fi, refer to page 83.

Activating/deactivating the sending of media recordings

1. To enable/disable automatic sending of media recordings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Data privacy"
4. Select the desired setting.

Media recording on a mobile device

General information

Depending on national-market version, media recordings can be saved to a mobile device.

The recording length that can be stored depends on the mobile device's available storage space.

Functional requirements

To save media recordings to a mobile device, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- The BMW Drive Recorder is activated.

Starting or stopping a manual media recording

1. To start a manual media recording on a mobile device, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Select the recording widget to save in the My BMW App.

   The recording duration is displayed in the widget.

If necessary, the media recording can be stopped manually and saved prematurely by selecting the recording widget again.

Cameras

Different cameras can be selected for media recordings on a mobile device.

1. To select the cameras, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All apps" or "Digital Premium" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Recordings"
4. "Camera selection"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

In the event of serious accidents, the BMW Drive Recorder may not be able to store media recordings if the damage to the vehicle is too great or the power supply was interrupted.

If the accident severity is too low, it may be the case that no media recordings are saved by the BMW Drive Recorder.

In case of theft, a media recording is only stored automatically when the alarm system has been triggered.

The automatic storage of a media recording in the event of a parking collision is only performed when a parking collision is detected.

The transmission of a media recording to a mobile device in the event of theft or a parking collision may be restricted or not available if the Internet connection is weak or not present.

The quality of the Wi-Fi connection affects whether recordings can be saved on a mobile device. This function may be restricted or not available if the connection is weak.

If the mobile device heats up excessively, for instance when charging in the Wireless Charging Tray, the system may be interrupted during manual media recording or during the transmission of a media recording.

There may be restrictions when saving or transferring a media recording to a smartphone depending on the smartphone model or operating system. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Breakdown Assistance

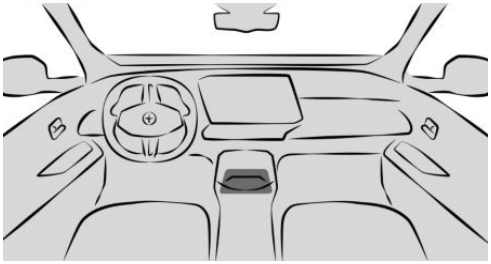
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

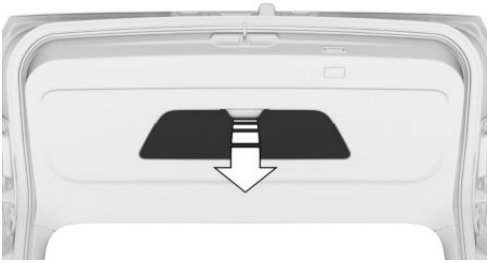
Hazard warning system



The button for the hazard warning system is located on the center console.

The icon and light in the button flash red when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the tailgate.

To remove the warning triangle, fold down the cover in the tailgate and take out the warning triangle.

First-aid kit

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the net on the left side of the cargo area.

Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates for the contents regularly, replacing any expired items promptly.

Emergency call

Principle

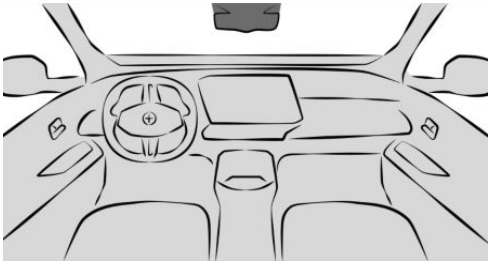
In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

Only press the SOS button in the headliner in an emergency.

If an emergency call is placed, all other signal tones and audio sources such as the Park Distance Control are muted.

For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview





The SOS button is located in the headliner.

Functional requirements

To use the emergency call, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Emergency Call system is functioning correctly.
- The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Intelligent emergency call

The vehicle features an Intelligent Emergency Call system, depending on vehicle equipment.

Intelligent emergency call establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

Intelligent emergency calls are made using a SIM card that is integrated into the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

If an intelligent emergency call is made, the data used to determine necessary rescue measures, e.g., the current vehicle position if it can be determined, is sent to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the driver is unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can, under certain circumstances, initiate steps to provide further assistance.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the emergency call.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for example if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is automatically triggered immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic emergency call is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

To initiate an emergency call manually, proceed as follows:

1. Tap the cover flap of the SOS button to open it.
2. Press and hold the SOS button in the headliner until the LED near the button illuminates green.
   - The LED is illuminated green when an emergency call has been initiated.

     If a cancel prompt appears on the central display, the emergency call can be stopped. If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until the voice connection has been established.
   - The LED flashes green when the connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

Malfunction

If the emergency call system is malfunctioning, the LED near the SOS button illuminates red and stays on. A Check Control message is displayed.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Jump-starting

Principle

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the combustion engine can be started using the battery on another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, spark formation may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

WARNING

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur while jump-starting. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the vehicle battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the vehicle battery.
2. Switch off the engine on the donor vehicle.
3. Switch off any power consumers in both vehicles.

Jump-start terminals

The jump-start terminals are located in the engine compartment.

1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the covers of the jump-start terminals.

Additional information:

- Hood, refer to page 396.
- For an overview, refer to page 395.

Connecting jumper cables

Before beginning with a jump start, turn off all unnecessary consumers on the donor vehicle and the receiving vehicle, e.g., the radio.

1. Open the lid of the jump-start terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second terminal clamp to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal, of the vehicle being started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp on the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine ground or body ground, of the assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine ground or body ground, of the vehicle being started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine on the donor vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.

   If the vehicle to be started has a diesel engine: Let the engine on the donor vehicle run for approx. 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine on the vehicle to be started as usual.

   If the first attempt to start the engine is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables again in the reverse order.

Check the vehicle battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting/towing

Principle

Depending on the vehicle equipment, deactivate the adaptive 2-axle air suspension.

Additional information:

Adaptive 2-axle air suspension, refer to page 255.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

When tow-starting/towing while safety systems or driver assistance systems are activated, the behavior of certain systems may lead to an accident, e.g., due to automatic braking or acceleration. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the corresponding safety systems or driver assistance systems when tow-starting/towing.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding or falling below specified limit values, e.g., weight, distance traveled, or speed, can result in damage and malfunctions as well as put health at risk. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Comply with the specified limit values.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazardous area, it can be pushed for distances of approx. 164 ft / 50 m at a speed of max. 3 mph / 5 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 155.

Transporting the vehicle

Principle

The vehicle must be transported on a loading platform or tow dolly.

The vehicle must be transported by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

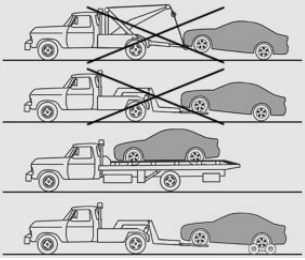
The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

- ▷ Only lift the vehicle using a suitable device.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle on the towing eye, rims, body components, or chassis components.
- ▷ For transport, secure the vehicle by placing special tire straps over the tire tread surfaces in the vehicle's longitudinal direction.

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of property damage. Have vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a tow dolly. Tow dollies must be used under the rear wheels only. Also make sure that no wheel is touching the ground.

Tow truck



Have vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a tow dolly.

When using a tow dolly, make sure that none of the wheels touch the ground. This method should be used for distances of 124 miles/200 km. Follow the instructions, as well as specified loads and speeds, given by the tow dolly manufacturer.

Towing other vehicles

Principle

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle being towed clearly by placing a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the towing eye may shear off or the vehicle may become uncontrollable. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

WARNING

Different levels of braking may occur when tow-starting/towing with Adaptive Recuperation. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Deactivate Adaptive Recuperation before tow-starting/towing.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the towing eye.

Tow bar

The towing eyes used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is not possible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an incline, note the following:

- Free movement will be restricted when cornering.
- The inclination of the tow bar will generate lateral forces.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the attachment of the towing eye and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph /50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When driving off to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Towing eye

Principle

The towing eye is a device that can be screwed onto the vehicle in order to, e.g., secure tow cables or tow rods.

The screw-in towing eye should always be carried in the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the towing eye. There is a risk of property damage. Follow the notes on using the towing eye.

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the towing eye may be stored in a bag as follows:

- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Using the towing eye

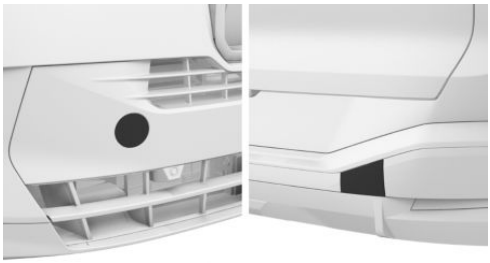


The towing eye can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

When using the towing eye, note the following:

- Use only the towing eye provided with the vehicle.
- Screw in the towing eye, completely and firmly, by turning it at least five turns clockwise. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.
- After use, unscrew the towing eye counterclockwise.
- Use the towing eye for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the towing eye, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the towing eye.
- Check the attachment of the towing eye in regular intervals.

Towing eye thread



The towing eye thread is located behind a cover on the front and rear bumper.

To remove the cover, press the mark on the edge of the cover. To make removal easier, simultaneously pull on the opposite side of the cover.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the cause of starting issues corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 353.

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Observe the following when refueling

General information

Before refueling, note the recommended fuel.

When refueling, hook the fuel pump nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting the pump nozzle while refilling causes a premature shut-off and reduces fuel vapor recirculation.

The fuel tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may illuminate.

Follow safety regulations posted at the filling station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 399.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.

Fuel filler cap

General information

If the fuel filler cap is not fitted correctly, the emissions indicator light illuminates on the driver's display.

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 70.

Safety information

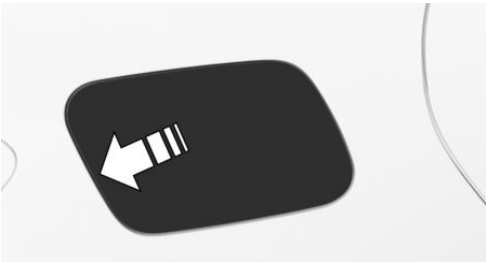
WARNING

The fuel filler cap's retaining strap can become pinched and crushed when the cap is closed. It will then not be possible to close the fuel filler cap correctly. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the

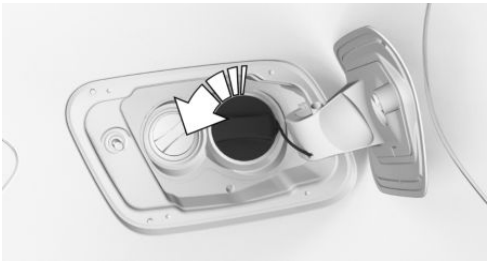
retaining strap does not become pinched or crushed when closing the fuel filler cap.

Opening

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the mount on the fuel filler flap.



Closing

To open the fuel filler cap, proceed as follows:

1. Fit the fuel filler cap and turn it clockwise until it clicks audibly.
2. Press the fuel filler flap in until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, e.g., in the event of an electrical malfunction.

In this case, have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Reducing fuel consumption

Principle

The vehicle features numerous technologies that reduce energy consumption and emission level.

There are some actions you can take to change your fuel consumption and environmental impact:

- Remove unnecessary cargo from the vehicle.
- Remove add-on parts, e.g., a rear carrier, after use.
- Close the windows and glass sunroof while driving.
- Check the tire pressure regularly and increase it as necessary.
- Shut off the engine if the vehicle is to remain stationary for a longer period.
- Select Efficient Mode or Personal Mode.
- Practice anticipatory driving and let the vehicle coast more often.
- Deactivate functions that are not required, e.g., rear window heating.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.

Adaptive recuperation

Principle

Adaptive recuperation supports an anticipatory and comfort-oriented driving style.

The system decides based on the situation if energy is recovered through recuperation or if the vehicle is to coast.

In vehicles with mild hybrid technology, the power of recuperation is adaptive, which causes the vehicle to decelerate to varying degrees when coasting.

Using map data and various sensors, the current driving situation is analyzed, e.g., to determine the distance to preceding vehicles.

Adaptive recuperation is available depending on the equipment and national-market version.

Functional requirements

For Adaptive Recuperation to activate, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The selector lever position D is engaged.
- The brake pedal is not being depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is not being pressed.
- SPORT driving mode is not activated.
- The Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Activating/deactivating adaptive recuperation

Adaptive recuperation can be deactivated/activated for individual drive modes under My Modes.

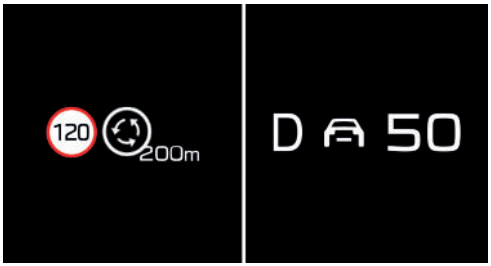
1. To deactivate/activate adaptive recuperation, select the desired drive mode.
2. Select the desired setting.

Adaptive recuperation activates when all functional requirements have been met.

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

View on driver's display



Information about the reason for adaptive recuperation is shown on the driver's display.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the following icons appear as the reason for Adaptive Recuperation, for example.

Icon	Meaning
	A vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle may decelerate to a standstill.
 or 	There is a turn ahead.
	There is a speed limit or city entrance ahead.
	There is a roundabout ahead.
	There is an exit ahead to get off a road outside of city limits.
	There is a curve ahead.
	There is an upcoming red traffic light. The vehicle may decelerate to a standstill.

Additional information:

Views on the driver's display, power gauge, refer to page 59.

System limits

Adaptive recuperation cannot be used, or can only be used to a limited extent, in the following situations:

- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- With country-specific restrictions on map-based route sections.
- With temporary and variable speed limits such as in construction areas.
- When Active Cruise Control is on.
- If driver assistance system sensors are inoperative, dirty, or covered.

Coasting

Principle

The drive system allows the vehicle to coast with reduced consumption and minimal deceleration in selector lever position D. This driving condition is referred to as coasting. This reduces fuel consumption.

Vehicles with mild hybrid technology do not consume fuel when coasting.

An anticipatory driving style helps the driver use the coasting function often while also reducing consumption.

If you can travel a certain distance without any foreseeable need to brake, it is beneficial to coast.

Coasting is suitable in the following driving situations, for example:

- Coasting on a straight downhill gradient with no obstacles.
- Coasting on a distance without obstacles.

To coast efficiently, avoid late or heavy braking.

Coasting is automatically adapted to the respective driving situation.

The distance traveled while coasting can be shown in the trip data on the central display and BMW Panoramic Vision.

Additional information:

- Central display, trip data, refer to page 55.
- BMW Panoramic Vision, trip data, refer to page 62.

Functional requirements

To coast, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The selector lever position D is engaged.
- The brake pedal is not being depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is not being pressed.
- SPORT driving mode is not activated.
- Depending on national-market version: PERSONAL drive mode is not activated.
- The Dynamic Stability Control is activated.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent must be granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., position finding, access to camera or microphone.

This function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph / 25 km/h to 100 mph / 160 km/h.

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the Coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

To activate coasting mode, pull the right shift paddle and hold it briefly.

To deactivate coasting mode, pull the left shift paddle.

System limits

Coasting cannot be used, or can only be used to a limited extent, in the following situations:

- When Active Cruise Control is on.
- If driver assistance system sensors are inoperative, dirty, or covered.

Efficient Mode

Principle

Efficient Mode is a drive mode that ensures consumption-optimized, comfort-oriented vehicle handling and provides an anticipatory display. In Efficient Mode, some vehicle handling characteristics are configured for consumption-optimized operation.

Efficient Mode affects the following, e.g.:

- Climate control functions.
- Vehicle response characteristics to accelerator pedal position.
- Energy recovery settings.

In addition, the efficiency trainer displays situation dependent notes to assist with an efficient driving style.

Depending on national-market version, Efficient Mode can be set to activate every time the vehicle is restarted.

Selecting the driving mode

To select Efficient Mode, go through the menu as follows: My Modes and My Moments menu / "My Modes" / "Efficient".

Additional information:

My Modes, refer to page 162.

Efficiency Coach

Principle

The Efficiency Coach supports an anticipatory driving style that reduces consumption. The Efficiency Coach uses map information and data from the vehicle sensors to detect situations with greater fuel consumption or an upcoming deceleration. As soon as a corresponding situation is detected, the driver is prompted to release the accelerator pedal and, if necessary, coast to a stop.

Functional requirements

To use the Efficiency Coach, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Cruise Control is turned off.
- Selector lever position D is engaged.
- Efficient Mode is activated.
- Adaptive Recuperation must be activated for the full range of functions.

Enabling/disabling the Efficiency Coach

To enable/disable the Efficiency Coach, go through the menu as follows: My Modes and My Moments menu / "My Modes" / "Efficient" / "Configure" / "Efficiency Coach".

Display

Indicator for increased consumption

Notices about increased fuel consumption appear in the following situations, for example:

- Strong acceleration.
- Excessive speed.
- When approaching a vehicle in front.
- If deceleration is imminent, e.g., there is a speed limit.



If a driving situation with increased fuel consumption is detected, an icon appears on the driver's display indicating that the accelerator pedal has been pressed too hard or unnecessarily.

Information about the reason for the deceleration may also appear.



After releasing the accelerator pedal, a check mark appears on the driver's display.

Situation-specific information and the distance to upcoming route segments are shown above the current speed limit on the driver's display.



The upcoming deceleration is shown with a turquoise frame.

The icon indicates the reason for the deceleration, e.g., an upcoming turn.

Icon	Meaning
	There is a turn ahead.
or	
	
	There is a speed limit or city entrance ahead.
	There is a roundabout ahead.
	There is an exit ahead to get off a road outside of city limits.
	There is a curve ahead.
	There is an upcoming red traffic light.
	A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Power gauge

When the Efficiency Coach is on, the power gauge is displayed on BMW Panoramic Vision.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 59.

System limits

The following system limits apply to the Efficiency Coach, for example:

The Efficiency Coach cannot be used with trailer operation.

Deceleration situations may not be detected properly in the following situations:

- The speed limits are temporary and variable, e.g., in construction zones.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In some recuperation settings.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Tire marking

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: Nominal width in mm

45: Tire aspect ratio in %

R: Radial tire code

18: Rim diameter in inches

96: Load index

Y: Speed code letter

ZR tires: Reinforced radial tires for speeds exceeding 150 mph /240 km/h

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	100 mph / 160 km/h
R	106 mph / 170 km/h
S	112 mph / 180 km/h
T	118 mph / 190 km/h
H	131 mph / 210 km/h
V	150 mph / 240 km/h
W	167 mph / 270 km/h
Y	186 mph / 300 km/h
(Y)	over 186 mph / 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0126

xxxx: Manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: Tire size and tire design

0126: Tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Production date

The tire's production date is found on the tire sidewall.

Designation	Production date
DOT ... 0126	1st week 2026

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would under one and a half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. There is a risk of accident, injury and a risk of damage to property.

Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 370, are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.

M+S

Winter tires, as well as all-season tires with better winter performance than summer tires, are indicated by the letters M+S on the tire sidewall.

Tire tread depth

Safety information

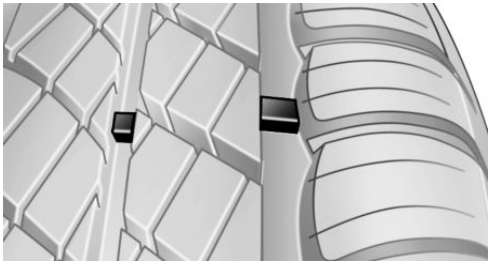
WARNING

If the tire tread depth is too low, driving safety may be limited in critical situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Follow applicable legal requirements for minimum tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

Generally speaking, the legal minimum tread depths may differ for summer tires, winter tires, and all-season tires. To ensure optimum handling, e.g., in wet or snowy conditions, it may be useful to change a tire before it reaches the legal minimum tread depth. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wear indicators



The tire manufacturer's wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference and have a height of at least 0.06 in/1.6 mm.

The wear indicators serve as indicators for the wear of the tire tread.

The locations of the wear indicators are indicated by the letters TWI (tread wear indicator) on the tire sidewall.

Tire damage

General information

Check your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

The following abnormalities may indicate tire damage or a malfunction on the vehicle:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire rolling or running noises.
- Unusual vehicle handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.
- Uneven wear pattern such as increased wear near tire shoulder.

Tire damage can be caused by situations such as the following:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. Drive carefully to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have the vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

WARNING

The wheels, tires and chassis components can become damaged when driving over curbs, road damage, or other obstacles. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over curbs, road damage or other obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Exchanging wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have the wheel mounted and balanced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Suitable wheels and tires

General information

Only certain wheel/tire combinations are suitable, depending on vehicle and equipment. The vehicle manufacturer determines wheel/tire combinations based on the following criteria:

- Tire size, e.g., tire width, aspect ratio.
- Wheel size, e.g., rim diameter, offset.

For more information on wheel/tire combinations and special equipment, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Wheels and tires that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been recommended for the vehicle type.

WARNING

Steel wheels are not suitable for the vehicle and can impair vehicle handling and system functions, e.g., wheel bolts may come loose on their own and the brake disks may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not mount steel wheels.

WARNING

Wheel and tire combinations that are not suitable for the vehicle can affect vehicle handling and a number of system functions, e.g., the Antilock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for the vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

WARNING

Unsuitable wheel studs such as single-section wheel studs may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Use only two-section wheel studs that

are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the respective wheel type.

Recommended tire brands



Tire types are developed for each vehicle and optimized specifically for the individual requirements of that vehicle, e.g.:

- Handling.
- Comfort.
- Noise characteristics.

Specially developed tires are indicated by a star on the tire sidewall. After replacing wheels and tires, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using star-marked tires again. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using tires of the same make and tire tread.

New tires

For technical reasons, new and unused tires do not yet ensure optimum adhesion to the road. The adhesion improves after a short running-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

WARNING

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life may be limited. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Maximum speed

Safety information

WARNING

If the maximum permissible speed of your mounted tires is exceeded, the tires may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of the tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the vehicle's maximum speed is higher than the maximum permissible speed of the winter tires, place a sign indicating the maximum permissible speed in the driver's field of vision. The info label is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Winter tires



Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires are indicated by the mountain/snowflake icon and the letters M+S on the tire sidewall.

So-called all-season tires with the M+S designation but no mountain/snowflake icon perform better in winter than summer tires. As a

rule, all-season tires do not perform the same as winter tires.

Changing run-flat tires

When changing from run-flat tires to standard tires, it must be ensured that the vehicle contains an emergency wheel or tire mobility kit. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel change between axles

WARNING

A wheel change between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not rotate the tires between axles on vehicles with different tire or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Different tread wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even abrasion. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After changing a wheel, check the tire pressure and correct as necessary.

Storing tires

When storing tires, do not exceed the maximum tire pressure specified on the tire sidewall.

When storing tires, note the following:

- Store removed wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Protect tires from coming into contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave the tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from the wheels and tires.

Run-flat tires

Principle

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under limited conditions even in the event of a complete tire pressure loss.

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree and may also include special rims.

The reinforced tire sidewall makes it possible to continue driving to a limited extent if a tire loses pressure.

Follow the instructions for continuing to drive with a flat tire.

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph /80 km/h.

WARNING

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph /60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. If the trailer swings, brake immediately and apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Tire components may come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Reduce your speed and stop. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Identification



Run-flat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.

Snow chains

Safety information

WARNING

Mounting snow chains on unsuitable tires can cause the snow chains to come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only fit snow chains on tires recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for use with snow chains.

WARNING

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

When driving with snow chains, the snow chains and other vehicle components may be damaged if the vehicle speed is too high. The handling characteristics also change, e.g., altered braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive carefully and do not exceed a maximum speed of 30 mph / 50 km/h.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains.

For information on suitable snow chains, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Snow chains can only be used in pairs on rear wheels of the following wheel/tire sizes:

Tire size	Wheel size	Rim offset (IS)
285/45 R21	10.0J x 21	29

Information on the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list may also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information on wheels and tires approved for the vehicle can be requested from an author-

ized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, note the following: Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor when using snow chains, otherwise incorrect values may be displayed.

If your vehicle is equipped with a flat tire monitor, note the following: Do not initialize the flat tire monitor when using snow chains, otherwise incorrect values may be displayed.

When using with snow chains, activate drive-off support to optimize the drive power as necessary.

Rear-wheel steering during operation with snow chains

General information

In order to guarantee free movement of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear-wheel steering must be turned off when snow chains are mounted.

Rear-wheel steering is switched on again automatically when the permitted maximum speed for snow chains is exceeded: 30 mph /50 km/h.

The setting for equipped snow chains can only be used below 30 mph /50 km/h.

Safety information

WARNING

When rear-wheel steering is switched on and snow chains are mounted, there can be contact between snow chains and the body. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. With mounted snow chains, switch off the rear-wheel steering.

Switching off rear-wheel steering

The rear-wheel steering is switched off by specifying that snow chains are installed.

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Driving" /"Chassis".
2. Select the desired setting.

Tire pressure

General information

The tire condition and tire pressure influence the following:

- Tire service life.
- Driving safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

WARNING

A tire with too little or no tire pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Regularly check the tire pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire pressure specifications

In the tire pressure table

The tire pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for given tire sizes at ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications apply to the tire sizes approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle types.

To identify the correct tire pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- Maximum speed for driving.

On the central display

The current tire pressures and the nominal tire pressures for the mounted tires can be shown on the central display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire pressure value is shown on the respective wheel position.

The recommended target tire pressure is also shown.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

The tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Check the tire pressure regularly and correct as necessary.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss. The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Functional requirements

To check tire pressures using the information on the door pillar, the following functional requirements must be met:

Only check the tire pressure when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least two hours after a trip.

In the tire pressure table

To check the tire pressure using the tire pressure specifications in the tire pressure table, proceed as follows:

1. Determine the nominal tire pressure for the vehicle's tires by referring to the information on the driver's door pillar.
2. Check the tire pressure in all four tires, e.g., using a pressure gage.
3. Correct the tire pressure if the current tire pressure deviates from the target tire pressure.
4. Make sure that all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire pressure specifications in the tire pressure table correspond only to cold tires or to tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

If vehicle is equipped with an emergency wheel: Check the tire pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly and correct as necessary.

On the central display

To check the tire pressure using the tire inflation pressure information on the central display, proceed as follows:

1. Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Tire pressure".
2. Check whether the current tire pressures differ from the nominal tire pressure.
3. Correct the tire pressure if the current tire pressure deviates from the target tire pressure.

The specified nominal tire pressures take into account the influence of driving and the outside temperature.

The display of current tire pressure on the central display may be restricted when the vehicle is stationary. The tire pressure will update after a short drive.

After correcting the tire pressure

If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the tire settings are correct. When using tires not found in the tire inflation pressure specifications on the central display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

If your vehicle is equipped with the flat tire monitor, reinitialize it.

Tire pressures up to 100 mph /160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph /160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, follow the tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph /160 km/h.



The tire inflation pressure specifications can also be found on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Tire pressure values up to 100 mph / 160 km/h

X5 40 xDrive

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
Front: 255/50 R 21 109 H XL A/S	2.4 / 35	–
Rear: 285/45 R 21 113 H XL A/S	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 275/40 R 22 107 H XL A/S	2.4 / 35	–
Rear: HL 315/35 R 22 115 H XL A/S	–	2.4 / 35
Front: 255/50 R 21 109 Y XL	2.4 / 35	–
Rear: 285/45 R 21 113 Y XL	–	2.4 / 35
Front: 275/40 R 22 107 Y XL	2.4 / 35	–

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
Rear: HL 315/35 R 22 115 Y XL	–	2.4 / 35
Front: 275/35 R 23 104 Y XL	2.6 / 38	–
Rear: HL 315/30 R 23 111 Y XL	–	2.7 / 39
Front: HL 275/35 R 23 108 Y XL	2.6 / 38	–
Rear: HL 315/30 R 23 111 Y XL	–	2.7 / 39
Front: 255/50 R 21 109 H XL M+S	2.4 / 35	–
Rear: 285/45 R 21 113 H XL M+S	–	2.4 / 35
Front: 275/40 R 22 107 H XL M+S	2.4 / 35	–
Rear: HL 315/35 R 22 115 H XL M+S	–	2.4 / 35
Front: 275/35 R 23 104 H XL M+S	2.6 / 38	–
Rear: HL 315/30 R 23 111 H XL M+S	–	2.7 / 39
Emergency wheel: T 145/85 R 19 112 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire pressures over 100 mph /160 km/h

WARNING

When driving at speeds greater than 100 mph /160 km/h, incorrect tire pressures can negatively affect vehicle handling, e.g., safety or comfort while driving. The tires can become damaged, which may cause an accident. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. To drive at maximum speeds, note the specified tire pressure for driving above 100 mph /160 km/h in the tire inflation pressure table, and adjust as necessary.

Tire pressure values over 100 mph / 160 km/h

X5 40 xDrive

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
Front: 255/50 R 21 109 H XL A/S	2.4 / 35	–
Rear: 285/45 R 21 113 H XL A/S	-	2.8 / 41

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
Front: 275/40 R 22 107 H XL A/S	2.6 / 38	–
Rear: HL 315/35 R 22 115 H XL A/S	–	2.8 / 41
Front: 255/50 R 21 109 Y XL	2.4 / 35	–
Rear: 285/45 R 21 113 Y XL	–	2.8 / 41
Front: 275/40 R 22 107 Y XL	2.6 / 38	–
Rear: HL 315/35 R 22 115 Y XL	–	2.8 / 41
Front: 275/35 R 23 104 Y XL	2.9 / 42	–
Rear: HL 315/30 R 23 111 Y XL	–	3.1 / 45
Front: HL 275/35 R 23 108 Y XL	2.9 / 42	–
Rear: HL 315/30 R 23 111 Y XL	–	3.1 / 45
Front: 255/50 R 21 109 H XL M+S	2.4 / 35	–
Rear: 285/45 R 21 113 H XL M+S	–	2.8 / 41
Front: 275/40 R 22 107 H XL M+S	2.6 / 38	–
Rear: HL 315/35 R 22 115 H XL M+S	–	2.8 / 41
Front: 275/35 R 23 104 H XL M+S	2.9 / 42	–
Rear: HL 315/30 R 23 111 H XL M+S	–	3.1 / 45
Emergency wheel: T 145/85 R 19 112 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire Pressure Monitor

Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

The sensors in the tire valves measure the tire pressure and tire temperature.

Depending on the tires detected or entered, the system shows the specified nominal tire pressures on the central display and compares them with the current tire pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire pressure, refer to page 372.

Safety information

WARNING

The nominal tire pressures shown on the display are not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure specifications of the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to

incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the sizes of your mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the information on the tires and the tire inflation pressure specifications on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To use the Tire Pressure Monitor, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor.
- The mounted tires are recognized by the system, and the tire pressures are shown on the central display.
- After a tire change or wheel change or adjusting the tire settings, the Tire Pressure Monitor activates after driving for several minutes.

Tire settings

General information

This system detects mounted tires automatically, e.g., after a tire change or wheel change. If this system does not detect the mounted tires automatically, the mounted tires can be selected in the tire settings.

Do not adjust the tire settings while the tire pressure is being corrected.

Adjusting the tires

1. To enter information for the mounted tires in the tire settings, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Tire pressure" / "Tire selection" /"Manual" / "Tire type".
2. Select the tire size for the rear axle.

Select the maximum speed to be driven.

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, e.g., whether this system is activated, can be shown on the central display.

Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Tire pressure".

The current status is displayed.

Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire pressures may change while driving or depending on the outside temperature.

Current tire temperature

The current tire temperatures are displayed depending on the model.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the outside temperature.

Nominal tire pressure

The nominal tire pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified nominal tire pressures take into account the influence of driving and the outside temperature. The suitable nominal tire pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather, tire air temperature, and travel times.

The nominal tire pressure shown may change and differ from the tire inflation pressure specifications on the driver's door pillar. The tire pressure can thus be corrected to the nominal tire pressure value shown.

The nominal tire pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load state is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

The tire condition and system status are indicated by the status bars and text in the Tire Pressure Monitor section on the central display.

All status bars green

The system is on and all tire pressures are correct.

Status bar yellow

The tire pressure in the displayed tires is too low.

Status bar red

There is a flat on the tires shown.

Gray status bar

Tire pressure losses may not be detected, e.g., due to a malfunction.

Status bar blue

The system is initializing.

System messages

General information

System messages are organized in three levels:

- Fill prompt.
- Tire pressure low.
- Flat tire.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Tires with emergency running properties can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Fill prompt

Message

An icon and notification appear on the central display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Leak detected on the tire. Low tire pressure due to natural, uniform pressure loss. Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

Low tire pressure

Message



A yellow warning light illuminates on the central display.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the central display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not continue to exceed a speed of 80 mph / 130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

Flat tire

Message



A yellow warning light illuminates on the central display.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the central display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and come to a stop carefully. Avoid sharp braking and steering.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.
3. Follow the instructions for what to do in case of a flat tire.

Additional information:

- Run-flat tires, refer to page 370.
- Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 382.

Tires with special approval

General information

This system cannot automatically detect tires with special approval. The "Other tires" option must be selected in the tire settings. Once the tires have been inflated correctly, a reset must be performed.

Resetting the system

1. To reset tires with special approval, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Tire pressure" / "Tire selection" / "Other tires".
2. Make sure that the tire pressure on all four tires is correct.
3. "Perform reset"
4. Drive off.

The status bars turn blue and the tire pressure is reset.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire pressures.

The status bars on the central display turn green and a message appears.

A reset must be performed whenever a tire or wheel is changed and after adjusting the tire pressures to the correct values. Otherwise, this system may not work correctly, e.g., report a flat tire despite the tire pressures being correct.

System limits

Temperature

The tire pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

If the temperature drops severely, this may cause a warning to be issued due to the specified warning limits.

Temperature-related warnings are canceled after a short journey.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Malfunction

Message



The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

A malfunction can have various causes. Proceed as follows:

- At least one wheel has no tire pressure sensor installed: Have the wheels checked, if necessary.
- Fault caused by systems or devices with the same transmission frequency: The system automatically reactivates after leaving the area of the interference.
- If the Tire Pressure Monitor malfunctions: Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat tire monitor

Principle

The flat tire monitor detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

If a tire loses pressure, the diameter and thus the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

To use the flat tire monitor, the following functional requirements must be met:

To ensure reliable tire pressure loss messages, the system must be initialized. An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After a tire change or wheel change.
- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed on the central display, e.g., to check whether the flat tire monitor is active.

Go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Tire pressure".

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. To initialize the flat tire monitor, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Tire pressure".
2. "Perform reset"
3. Drive off.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

System messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Tires with emergency running properties can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Flat tire

A message appears if there is a flat tire.



A yellow warning light illuminates on the central display.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the central display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and come to a stop carefully. Avoid sharp braking and steering.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.

3. Follow the instructions for what to do in case of a flat tire.

Additional information:

- Run-flat tires, refer to page 370.
- Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 382.

System limits

The system may be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire pressure regularly.
- Sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.

   If no tire damage can be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., using a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Using sealant, e.g., from the tire repair set, may damage the tire pressure sensor. Have the tire pressure sensor replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph /80 km/h.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph /60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. If the trailer swings, brake immediately and apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Tire components may come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Reduce your speed and stop. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Observe the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

- Avoid sharp braking and steering.
- Avoid driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or potholes.

- Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph / 80 km/h.
- Check the tire pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible driving distance with a flat tire

The possible driving distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, outside temperature.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles / 80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Repairing a flat tire

If you get a flat tire, take the following safety precautions:

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Engage the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at a suitable distance.

Repair the flat tire, e.g., using a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Tire repair set Plus

Principle

Minor tire damage can be temporarily sealed using the tire repair set Plus. The battery-operated device is magnetically fitted to the wheel center and pumps tire sealant and air into the tires through a hose, both when stationary and while driving.

The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.

The current tire pressure is shown on the central display in the vehicle.

The tire repair set Plus is only designed to be mounted once to the wheel.

The tire repair set Plus may be ineffective if the tire damage measures more than approx. 0.16 in/4 mm. Remove foreign objects from the tire only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.

Follow the instructions for using the tire repair set Plus on the housing.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

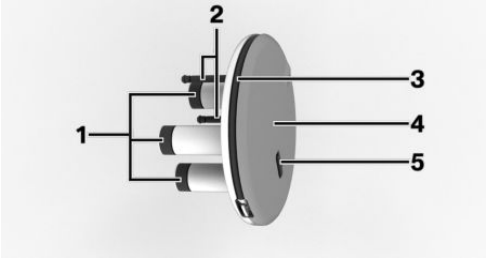
If the tire repair set Plus is not correctly secured to the wheel, the tire repair set Plus may come loose while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only use the tire repair set Plus while driving if the

vehicle is equipped with original wheels and wheel bolts from the vehicle manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

Sealing a tire with the tire repair set can cause the handling characteristics to change, e.g., decreased directional stability during braking, longer braking distances, and altered roll steer. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive carefully and do not exceed a maximum speed of 50 mph / 80 km/h nor a maximum distance of 125 miles / 200 km.

Overview



1 Magnetic feet
2 Guide pins
3 Filler hose
4 Housing/compressor
5 Power switch

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the tire repair set Plus is stored as follows:

- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

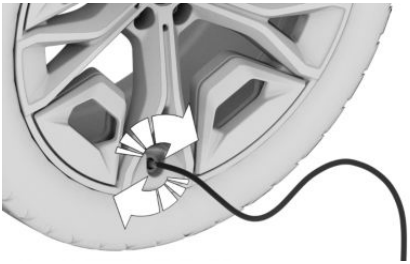
Safety precautions

When using the tire repair set Plus, take the following safety precautions:

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Engage the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at a suitable distance.
- Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the tire repair set Plus and attach it in a visible location in the vehicle interior.

Preparing the tire repair set Plus

1. Unwind the filler hose from the tire repair set Plus.
2. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.
3. Screw the filler hose connector clockwise onto the tire valve.



Operation

1. To attach the tire repair set Plus to the wheel center, insert the magnetic feet into the wheel bolt holes and insert the guide

pins into the small holes between the wheel bolts.



2. Push the device into the holes to the stop, until it magnetically locks to the wheel bolts in an audible manner.
3. Turn on the tire repair set Plus.
4. Read the current tire pressure on the central display in the vehicle. If the tire pressure does not reach min. 1.0 bar/15 psi, it is not possible to continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
5. Do not drive off until a minimum tire pressure of 1.0 bar/15 psi has been reached.

   The tire repair set Plus turns off automatically when the tire pressure reaches 2.0 bar/29 psi. If another tire loses pressure, the tire repair set Plus will inflate the tire automatically.

   Drive carefully and do not exceed a speed of max. 50 mph /80 km/h.
6. Immediately contact an authorized service center, or another qualified service center or repair shop, to have the tire repair set Plus removed and the defective tire replaced.

   Do not exceed the maximum travel distance of 125 miles/200 km.
7. Do not continue driving if the tire pressure drops below 1.0 bar/15 psi. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
8. Replace the tire repair set Plus.

Additional information:

- Flat tire monitor, refer to page 380.
- Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 376.

Operation when stationary

If it is not possible to attach the tire repair set Plus to the wheel, e.g., with snow chains attached, proceed as follows:

1. Once the filler hose is connected to the tire valve, turn on the tire repair set Plus.

   Hold the tire repair set Plus in your hand during the inflation process.
2. The tire repair set Plus turns off automatically when the tire pressure reaches 2.0 bar/29 psi.

   If the tire pressure does not reach 2.0 bar/29 psi after 15 minutes, turn off the device. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
3. Turn off the tire repair set Plus and stow it away.
4. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
5. Drive off.

   Drive carefully and do not exceed a speed of max. 50 mph /80 km/h.
6. After starting a trip, for approx. 15 minutes or 6 miles / 10 km, observe whether the tire pressure drops.

   Do not continue driving if the tire pressure drops below 1.2 bar/18 psi. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replace the faulty tire and the tire repair set Plus.

Change the tires within the next 125 miles/200 km.

Additional information:

- Flat tire monitor, refer to page 380.
- Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 376.

Charging the tire repair set Plus

The integrated battery of the tire repair set Plus is subject to system-related self-discharging, even if the device is not turned on.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends checking the state of charge of the tire repair set Plus regularly, or every two years at least.

To check the state of charge, press the switch next to the USB port on the rear of the device.

The LED integrated into the switch illuminates in the corresponding color:

- The LED illuminates green when the tire repair set Plus is sufficiently charged and ready for use.
- The LED illuminates red when the tire repair set Plus battery has a low state of charge. It may not be fully operational.

To charge the Seal & Drive Tire Kit, connect the device to a suitable charging USB port via USB cable, e.g., in the vehicle.

Malfunction

Using tire sealant can damage the tire pressure sensor on the wheel. If the vehicle is equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor, have the damaged tire pressure sensor replaced.

Tire repair set

Principle

The tire repair set is used to temporarily seal minor tire damage so that it is possible to continue driving.

The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.

The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

The tire repair set may be insufficient if the tire damage measures more than approx. 0.16 in / 4 mm.

General information

- Follow the instructions for using the tire repair set, which are provided on the compressor and sealant bottle.
- Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.

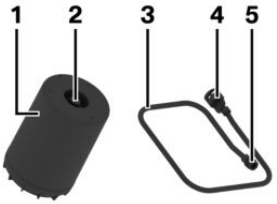
Overview

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the tire repair set is stored as follows:

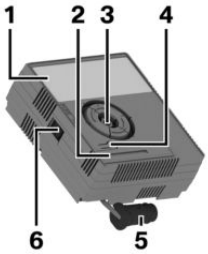
- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Sealant bottle and filler hose



1 Sealant bottle
2 Sealant bottle outlet
3 Filler hose
4 Sealant bottle connection
5 Wheel valve connection

Compressor



1 Compressor
2 Tire pressure display
3 Sealant bottle mount
4 Pressure reducing valve button
5 Connector for socket
6 Power switch

Safety precautions

When using the tire repair set, take the following safety precautions:

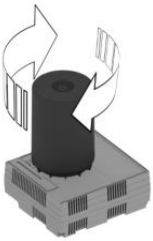
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Engage the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at a suitable distance.
- Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the sealant bottle and attach it in the visible area in the vehicle interior.

Preparing the tire repair set

1. To prepare the tire repair set, place the sealant bottle into the holder on the compressor housing.



2. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.

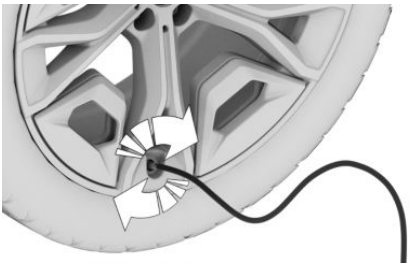


3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.



4. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.

5. Screw the filler hose connector onto the tire valve.



6. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

Sealant

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

1. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

   When adding sealant, the Tire Pressure Monitor may briefly rise up to approx. 6 bar/87 psi before it shows the actual tire pressure again. Do not turn off the compressor at this stage.
2. Switch off the compressor when you reach a tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

To check the tire pressure, read the tire pressure gauge on the compressor. The tire pressure must be at least 2.5 bar/36 psi.

Tire pressure too high

If the tire pressure is too high, reduce the tire pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

Minimum tire pressure not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi is reached. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Minimum tire pressure reached

When the tire pressure is at least 2.5 bar/36 psi, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the hose from the sealant bottle and from the tire valve.
3. Screw the valve cap onto the tire valve.
4. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.
5. Immediately drive 6 miles / 10 km in order to ensure that the tire sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed the speed limit of 50 mph /80 km/h.

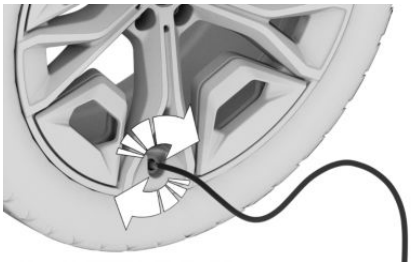
   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph / 20 km/h.

   Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area when you rotate the wheel initially.

Adjusting the tire pressure

To adjust the tire pressure after using the tire repair set, proceed as follows:

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect the filler hose directly to the compressor and turn it 90° clockwise until it engages audibly.
3. Unscrew the valve cap from the wheel and screw the filler hose connector onto the tire valve.



4. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
5. Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor.

   Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 1.3 bar/19 psi is displayed. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
6. Correct the tire pressure to 2.5 bar/36 psi.
   - ▷ To increase the tire pressure when standby or drive-ready state is on: Turn on the compressor and let it run for max. 10 minutes.
   - ▷ To decrease the tire pressure: Press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

Removing and stowing the tire repair set

To remove and stow the tire repair set, proceed as follows:

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Disconnect the hose from the compressor and from the tire valve.
4. Screw the valve cap onto the tire valve.
5. Stow the tire repair set together with the hose in the cargo area.

Continuing the trip

Continue driving immediately once finished with the tire repair set.

Do not exceed the speed limit of 50 mph /80 km/h.

Do not exceed the maximum travel distance of 125 miles/200 km.

Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Replace the faulty tire and the sealant bottle from the tire repair set as soon as possible.

Additional information:

- ▷ Flat tire monitor, refer to page 380.
- ▷ Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 376.

System limits

If the tires cannot be made ready to drive, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, note the following: Using tire sealant can damage the tire pressure sensor. If the tire pressure sensor is damaged, have it replaced at the next opportunity.

Emergency wheel

Principle

In the event of a flat tire, one emergency spare wheel maximum can be used as a replacement for defective tires. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the faulty tire/wheel has been replaced.

Also check the tire pressure of the spare wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct as necessary.

Safety information

WARNING

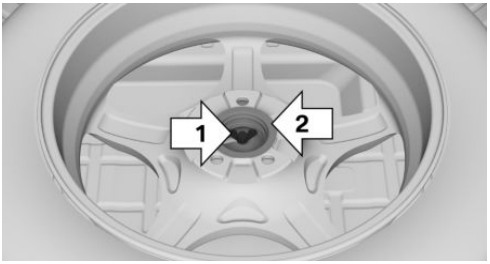
The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed handling characteristics may occur, for instance reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed roll steer in the stability limit. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph /80 km/h.

Overview

The emergency wheel and wheel change set are located in the cargo area under the cargo area floor.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Fold up the cargo area floor.
2. Remove the tool holder from the emergency wheel.
3. Unscrew the wing screw, arrow 1.



4. Remove the holder, arrow 2.
5. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage tray.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Fold up the cargo area floor.
2. Place the emergency wheel in the storage tray.
3. Position the holder.
4. Screw on and tighten the wing screw.
5. Insert the tool holder.
6. Push the cargo area floor downward.

Changing wheels/tires

Principle

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately in case of a breakdown when there is a tire pressure loss due to a flat tire.

If necessary, a suitable wheel change tool, e.g., a jack, is available as an accessory from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

The jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety precautions are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling if the jack tips over. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

WARNING

Placing supports, e.g., wooden blocks or similar, under the jack may reduce its ability to bear weight because of the limited height. The load-carrying capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded and the vehicle may tip over. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use, e.g., changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

WARNING

The jack may slip on soft, uneven, or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, slip-resistant surface.

WARNING

The jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the jack.

WARNING

When the jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cranking up the jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel well.

WARNING

A vehicle that is raised on a jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral effort on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Using an impact wrench to loosen or tighten the wheel lock bolt can damage the wheel lock bolt. There is a risk of property damage. Only use a lug wrench to loosen and tighten the lug bolt lock.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away when changing a wheel, in addition to engaging the parking brake.

On a level surface



Place chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel being changed.

On a slight downhill gradient



Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects, e.g., rocks, under the wheels of the front axle and rear axle, opposite the rolling direction.

Lug bolt lock

Principle

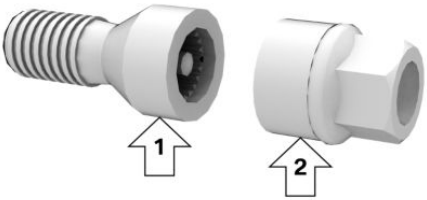
The wheel bolt lock offers effective protection against wheel theft.

The locking lug bolts are specifically coded. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

Depending on vehicle equipment, store the lug bolt lock adapter as follows:

- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.



- Locking lug bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing the locking lug bolt

1. To unscrew the locking lug bolt, place the adapter onto the wheel lock.
2. Unscrew the locking lug bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on the locking lug bolt

1. To screw on the locking lug bolt, place the adapter onto the locking lug bolt. Turn the adapter as necessary until it fits onto the locking lug bolt.
2. Screw on the locking lug bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
3. After screwing on, remove the adapter again.

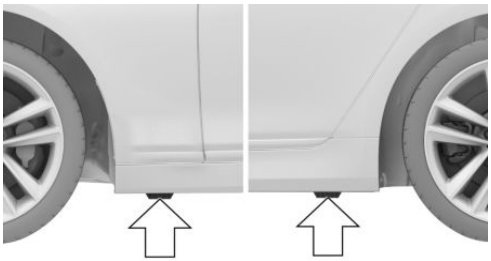
Safety precautions

Take the following safety measures when changing a wheel:

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Engage the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Engage a gear or selector lever position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at a suitable distance.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, remove the wheel change set and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- Secure the vehicle so that it does not roll away.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.
- For air suspension: Disable the air suspension level adjustment.

  Adaptive 2-axle air suspension, refer to page 255.

Jacking points



The jacking points are located at the indicated positions.

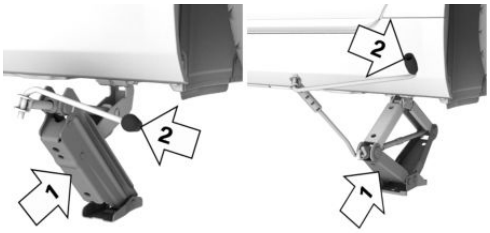
Jacking up the vehicle

WARNING

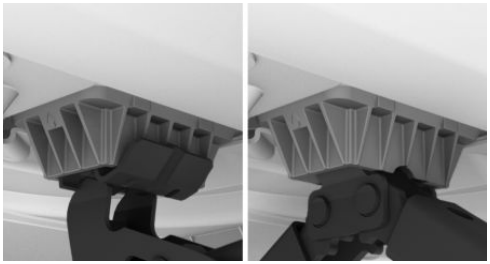
Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the jack.

To raise the vehicle so that you can change a wheel, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrows 1. With the other hand, grip the jack crank handle or the lever, arrows 2.



2. Insert the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



3. Extend the jack by turning the jack crank handle or lever clockwise.



4. Remove your hand from the jack as soon as it is under load and continue turning the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the jack foot is extended vertically and that the jack's entire face is on the ground.



6. Extend the jack until the corresponding wheel is raised max. 1.2 in / 3 cm from the ground.

Mounting a wheel

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable wheel studs such as single-section wheel studs may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Use only two-section wheel studs that are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the respective wheel type.

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

To change a wheel, proceed as follows:

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When the vehicle is fitted with non-original light-alloy wheels from the vehicle manufacturer, it may also be necessary to use the accompanying lug bolts.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

After changing the wheel, do the following:

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
3. Check the tire pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, then have the damaged tire replaced.

Hood

Vehicle features and options

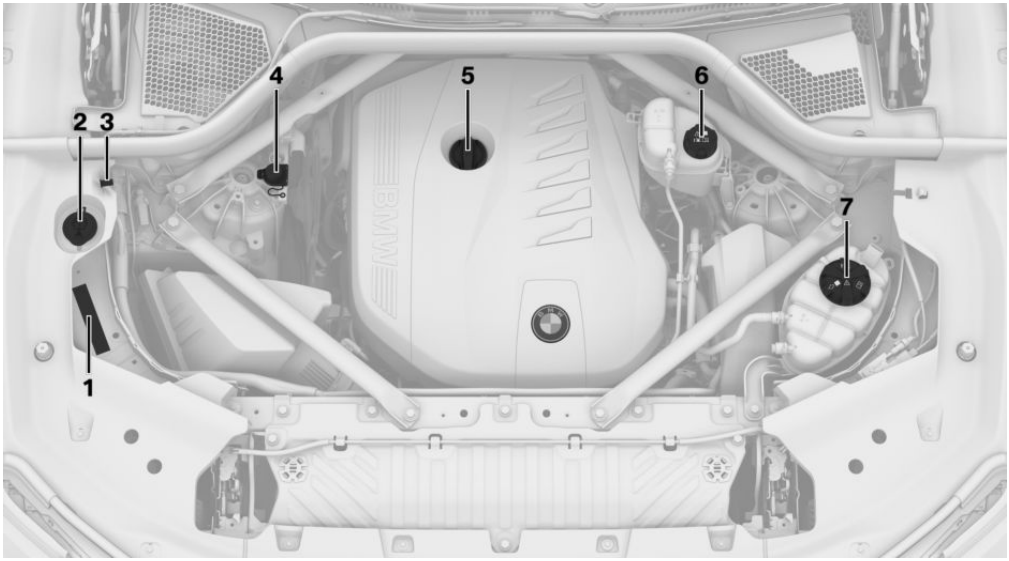
This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Overview

6-cylinder engine



1 Vehicle identification number
2 Filler neck for washer fluid
3 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
4 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
5 Oil filler neck
6 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
7 Coolant reservoir, engine

Hood

Safety information

WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the hood is clear while opening and closing.

WARNING

Improperly executed work under the hood can damage components and lead to a safety hazard. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends having work under the hood performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hooks, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

WARNING

There are moving components under the hood. Certain components under the hood can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

NOTICE

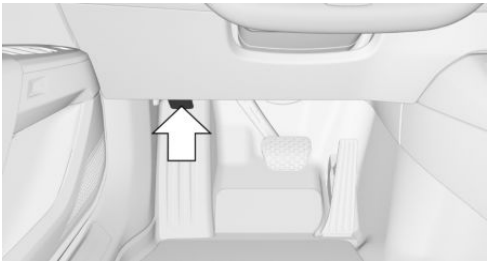
Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When closed, the hood must engage fully. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of property damage. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening hood

To open the hood completely, pull the lever in the driver's footwell twice.



The unlock lever for the hood is located in the driver's footwell.

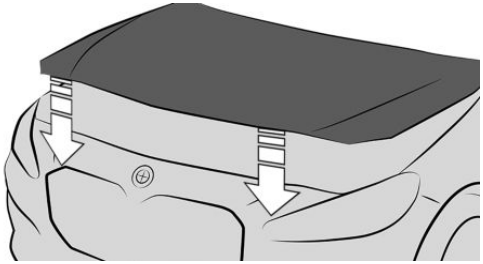
1. In the driver's footwell, pull the lever to open the hood, arrow 1.

The hood is unlocked.



2. Release the lever and pull it again, arrow 2.
   The hood can be opened.
3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing the hood



Close the hood with force if it is open by more than approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage completely.

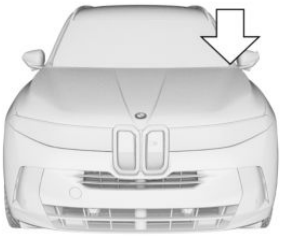
Hood emergency release

Principle

If the vehicle battery is completely discharged, the vehicle doors can no longer be opened electrically. In this situation, the hood can be opened via an emergency release in order to reach the jump start terminal in the engine compartment.

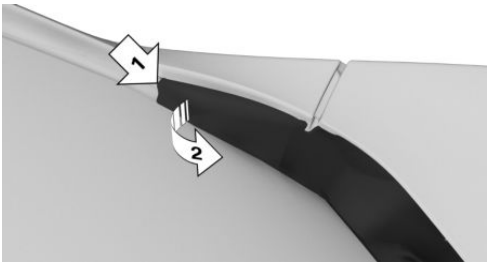
The emergency release is only active when the 12 V battery is discharged.

Performing emergency release of the hood



The emergency release is located under the windshield panel on the driver's side.

Removing the windshield panel



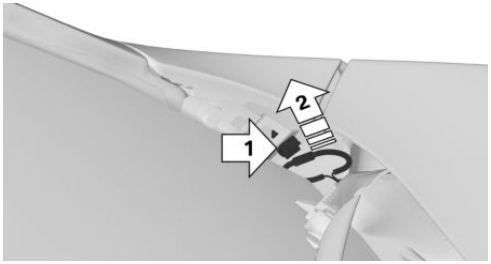
To loosen the windshield panel, proceed as follows:

1. Grasp the edge of the windshield panel, arrow 1.
2. Unhook and pull out the windshield panel, arrow 2.
3. Carefully bend the windshield panel to the side.

Operating the emergency release

To release the hood, pull the emergency release three times.

To do so, proceed as follows:



1. Unclip the loop from the holder, arrow 1.
2. Pull and release the loop, arrow 2.
   The emergency release is activated.
3. Pull and release the loop again.
   The hood is unlocked.
4. Pull and release the loop again.
   The hood can be opened.
5. Clip the loop back into the holder, arrow 1.

Reposition and hook in the windshield panel.

Operating fluids

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, gasoline should be sulfur-free or have a low sulfur content.

Do not use any fuels that contain metal, as indicated by the label on the gas pump.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 15 %, i.e., E10 or E15, may be used for refueling.

The power and consumption specifications correspond to operation with 98 RON E10 fuel.



Knocking noises, strange sounds, and driving issues may occur when using fuel with an ethanol content of 10 % to max. 15 %. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

Caution

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for additional maintenance.

WARNING

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter can be permanently damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property

damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not turn on standby after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

87 AKI fuel or lower can cause the engine to malfunction or become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not refuel with 87 AKI fuel or lower.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use fuels with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended gas quality

91 AKI.

M Performance model:

93 AKI.

Minimum fuel grade

87 AKI.

Using fuel with this minimum AKI rating may result in driving issues and strange sounds. Knocking noises may occur, especially when starting the engine at high temperatures. This has no effect on engine service life.

BMW recommends Shell quality fuels.

Engine oil

Principle

The engine oil consumption and engine oil properties depend on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine's oil consumption may increase in situations like the following:

- Using a sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idle operation of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are not recommended.

Different Check Control messages appear on the central display depending on the engine oil level and engine oil properties.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having engine oil changed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

Principle

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

Perform a detailed measurement regularly if making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, e.g., cornering at speed.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the central display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

To perform the electronic oil measurement, the following functional requirement must be met:

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

To view the engine oil level on the central display, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Engine oil level".

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

During a detailed measurement, the engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed on a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message appears on the central display.

General information

The idle speed increases slightly while the engine oil level is measured.

Functional requirements

The following functional requirements apply for detailed measurement:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Drive-ready state is turned on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- The engine is at operating temperature.
- Selector lever is in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Performing a detailed measurement

To perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level, go through the menu as follows: My Vehicle menu / "Status" / "Engine oil level" / "Oil level check" / "Start measurement".

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

Principle

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed on the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is indicated in the message shown on the central display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and turn off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Operating fluids, e.g., oil, grease, coolant, fuel, may contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with your clothing, skin, or eyes. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

⚠ NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 395.

Adding engine oil

To top up the engine oil, proceed as follows:

1. Opening the hood.
2. Turn the lock in the engine compartment counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the cap in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Opening the hood, refer to page 396.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil grade is critical for the service life of the engine.

Only add with the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil specification.

Suitable engine oil types

When topping up engine oil, the following oil specification applies:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-22 FE++.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil specification
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has a suitable viscosity grade. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

More information about suitable oil specifications and engine oil viscosity grades can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

The coolant consists of water and a coolant additive.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixture ratio of 50:50. For information on suitable additives, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

WARNING

Additives are harmful to health. Using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

NOTICE

Too much water reduces the coolant's frost protection and corrosion protection. There is a risk of property damage. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the drive variant, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check coolant levels on a regular basis and refill as necessary.

The coolant reservoir may be overfilled with coolant when the vehicle is delivered from the factory or following maintenance measures. The specified coolant level is achieved with longer operating periods.

The nominal coolant level is indicated by the maximum mark in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 395.

Checking the coolant level

To check the coolant level, proceed as follows.

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
3. Opening the hood.
4. Turn the coolant reservoir cap slightly counterclockwise until the excess pressure dissipates.
5. Open the coolant reservoir cap.
6. The coolant level is correct when it is just below the max. level mark on the filler neck.

   This can be found on the filler neck or on the outside of transparent coolant tanks.
7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Additional information:

- Climate control, refer to page 260.
- Opening the hood, refer to page 396.

Adding coolant

To refill the coolant, proceed as follows:

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
3. Opening the hood.
4. Turn the coolant reservoir cap slightly counterclockwise until the excess pressure dissipates.
5. Open the coolant reservoir cap.
6. If necessary, slowly add coolant up to the specified fill level. Be careful not to spill coolant.
7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Additional information:

- Climate control, refer to page 260.
- Opening the hood, refer to page 396.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

Principle

Washer fluid is used to clean the windshields and sensors. All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

The recommended minimum fill quantity is 0.5 US gal/2 liters.

Safety information

WARNING

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-based additives in the washer fluid, which are used to repel water on window glass, can cause damage to the car wash. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washer system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not mix different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

Overview



The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment on the right side of the vehicle.

Refilling washer fluid

To refill the washer fluid, proceed as follows:

1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the cap and refill the washer fluid.
3. Close the cover.

Additional information:

Opening the hood, refer to page 396.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer fluid concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5°F/-15°C.

Preventive maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Maintenance system

Principle

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the operating conditions of the vehicle.

Information about service notifications can be shown on the central display.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are taken into account.

Some maintenance measures are time-dependent, e.g., replacing equipment. Have this maintenance work updated by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Diagnostic socket

Principle

Using the diagnostic socket, the vehicle owner can have data saved to the vehicle read out by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

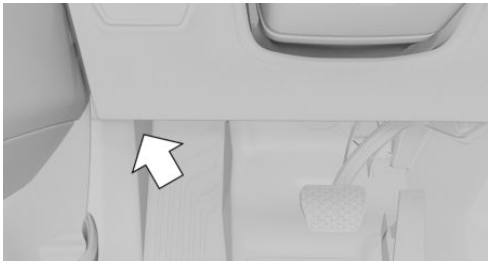
Disconnect devices from the diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle or starting a software update.

Safety information

NOTICE

The diagnostic socket is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the diagnostic socket, or contact with the diagnostic socket for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, it is strongly recommended that access to the diagnostic socket is limited to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the diagnostic socket.

Overview



The diagnostic socket for reading out vehicle data is located in the footwell on the driver's side.

Pollutant emissions



▷ The warning light illuminates:

The exhaust gas quality is declining, e.g., because the fuel filler cap is fitted incorrectly. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Taking the vehicle out of service

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, some special measures are necessary. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Deep sleep mode, refer to page 45.

Replacing components

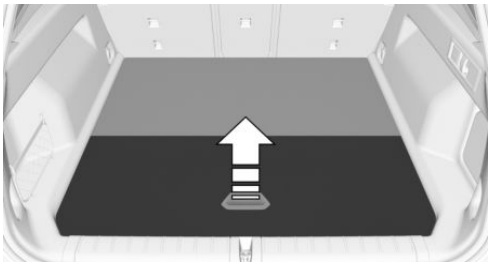
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo area floor.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window glass may be damaged if the wiper is set onto it without a wiper blade. There is a risk of property damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

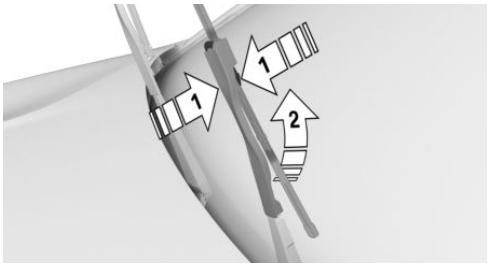
NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing the front wiper blades

To replace the wiper blades, proceed as follows:

1. Move the wipers to the fold-out position.
2. Fold out the wiper arm and hold it firmly.
3. Squeeze the retaining spring, arrows 1, and fold out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Pull the wiper blade forward and away from the catch mechanism.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in the reverse order to removal until it snaps into place.
6. Fold in the wipers.

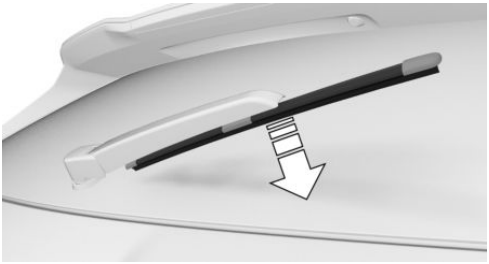
Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 182.

Replacing the rear wiper blade

The rear wiper blade is engaged on the end of the wiper arm. To replace the wiper blade, proceed as follows:

1. Lift the wiper slightly and pull off the wiper blade, arrow.



2. Attach the new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
3. Fold in the wiper.

Bulbs and lights

Principle

The bulbs and lights contribute significantly to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are designed using LED technology at least.

In the event that they are no longer operating properly, have the headlights and lights checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Intense brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass may fog up in cool or damp weather. Condensation will disappear after a short time when driving with the lights on. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If, despite driving with the headlights on, moisture such as water droplets continues to condense on the lights, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

Principle

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free.

If the vehicle battery is not operational, it is recommended to have any corresponding work, for instance, replacing the vehicle battery, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

More information on the vehicle battery can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

WARNING

Vehicle batteries that are not recommended can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use vehicle batteries recommended by the vehicle manufacturer. For information on suitable vehicle batteries, contact an authorized service cen-

ter or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Registering the vehicle battery in the vehicle

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Hazard icons

The following hazard symbols can be found on the vehicle battery:

Icon	Meaning
	No smoking, no open flames, no sparks.
	Wear safety goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of chemical burn: Wear gloves, do not tilt battery.
	Flush acid splashes with water immediately. In the event of contact with the eyes or swallowing, seek a physician immediately.
	No direct daylight, no frost.

Icon	Meaning
	Follow the operating instructions.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not close any openings of the battery.

Charging the vehicle battery

Principle

Make sure that the vehicle battery is always sufficiently charged to ensure that the vehicle battery can be used for its entire service life.



A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the vehicle battery when the drive-off power is insufficient.

The following circumstances can negatively affect the vehicle battery's performance:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- Stationary periods of more than one month.

Safety information

WARNING

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery from sockets in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the vehicle battery

To charge the vehicle battery, first switch off the combustion engine, then use the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

With mild hybrid technology: Open the hood before charging the vehicle battery.

Additional information:

Jump-start terminals, refer to page 353.

Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- Initialize the parking brake.
- With memory function: Save the positions again.
- Time: Update.
- Date: Update.
- With glass sunroof: Initialize system.

Additional information:

Initialize the parking brake after a power interruption, refer to page 161.

Deep sleep mode

Use deep sleep mode as necessary for long stationary periods.

Additional information:

Deep sleep mode, refer to page 45.

Mild Hybrid technology

Principle

Mild hybrid technology helps to reduce fuel consumption. The mild hybrid technology includes a battery with a voltage of 48 V.

The battery for mild hybrid technology is located below the cargo area floor.

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Notice

Do not exchange or work on the battery for the Mild Hybrid technology.

Disposing of old batteries



Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Transport and store full vehicle batteries in an upright position. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.



Batteries contain harmful chemicals. Disposing of batteries with household waste is prohibited by law.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Information on the fuse layout and the positions of the fuse boxes is available on the Internet: fusecard.bmw.com.

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components and lead to fire. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the fuses replaced by an authorized service

center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic fuses, eFuse

Some electrical circuits use so-called eFuses instead of lead fuses. An eFuse is an electronic fuse that interrupts the respective electrical circuit in the event of a malfunction. Unlike a lead fuse, an eFuse does not need to be replaced. In the event of a temporary malfunction, the electrical circuit can be closed again after the vehicle is restarted. If an eFuse trips repeatedly or the malfunction cannot be rectified, the electrical circuit remains open. In this case, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Vehicle care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Washing the vehicle

General information

The vehicle must be washed more frequently, especially in the winter.

Foreign objects, e.g. leaves or snow, must be removed from the area below the windshield on a regular basis. The wipers can be folded down in order to clean the windshield completely.

Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 182.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., due to the exhaust system, brakes or radiator. Contact with the hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch hot components. Do not perform work in the vicinity of hot components until after they have cooled down.

NOTICE

When washing with an open fuel filler flap, damage may occur. There is a risk of property damage. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Clean dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

Steam-jet cleaner and high pressure cleaner

Safety information

NOTICE

When using high-pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or high temperatures or because an insufficient distance was maintained. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that sufficient distance is maintained. Do not spray continuously on one spot. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

Distances and temperature

When cleaning with a steam/high-pressure cleaner, make sure to use the specified temperatures and distances.

Maximum temperature: 140°F/60°C.

Minimum distance of 12 in/30 cm to the following components:

- Sensors.
- Cameras.
- Seals.
- Lights.
- Air inlets in front of vehicle.
- Cables.

- Plug connectors.
- Charging flap.
- Electric door handles.

Automatic car washes or tunnel car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic car washes or tunnel car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Observe the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Note the permissible vehicle dimensions for the tunnel car wash or car wash.
- Do not drive through a car wash or tunnel car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.
- Take off all removable attachments, e.g., antennas.

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a tunnel car wash.

Driving into a tunnel car wash

In a tunnel car wash, the vehicle must be able to coast freely. To do so, selector lever position N must be engaged. The parking brake must not be engaged.

Some tunnel car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 155.

Driving out of a tunnel car wash

When exiting a tunnel car wash, make sure that the vehicle key or a digital key is in the vehicle.

Turn on the drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 46.

Lights

If wet, only clean the lights with a damp sponge and a mild cleaner. Do not use abrasive, alcohol-based, or corrosive cleaners. Soak the area soiled by insects with an insect remover and rinse with water. Thaw ice with de-icing spray, do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes to dry them. To do so, move the vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal. The heat generated while driving dries the brake disks and brake pads, protecting them from corrosion.

After washing the vehicle, completely remove all wax residue on the window glass in order to ensure sufficient visibility and to reduce wiper noise and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

The manufacturer recommends using cleaning agents and care products from the vehicle manufacturer. Suitable vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use cleaning agents that are intended for cleaning the respective component. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants can affect the vehicle paintwork. Environmental influences include tree resin or pollen, for example.

To prevent paint alteration and discoloration, remove corrosive substances immediately. Corrosive substances include spilled fuel, oil, grease, or bird droppings, for example.

Matte paintwork

Use only cleaning agents and care products that are suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

Plastic wrap

Use only cleaning agents and care products that are suitable for vehicles with a plastic wrap.

Do not use wax or polish on the film. Remove wax on the surface with an all-purpose cleaner.

To refresh the gloss, clean the film with isopropyl alcohol and water at a mixture ratio of 2:1.

Leather care

Leather is a natural product. It has natural surface properties, e.g., differences in structure or slight color nuances. These surface characteristics are a special feature of leather and not material defects. In addition, leather undergoes a natural aging process in which the surface characteristics change. Use leather care products to preserve the protective coating of the leather. Do not wet the leather to clean it and do not use microfiber cloths; use cotton cloths or open-pore sponges instead.

Dust and crumbs can work into pores and folds, causing heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

Clean leather regularly with a damp cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Certain clothes and other influences can cause discoloration of the leather. To prevent discoloration, clean and maintain the leather approx. every two months.

Clean light-colored leather, e.g., light-colored seats, light-colored steering wheel, more frequently as soiling is far more visible on it.

Use leather care products to preserve the protective coating of the leather.

To prevent changes to the surface and structure, and discoloration of the material, remove corrosive substances immediately. Corrosive substances include sunscreen, for example.

Caring for artificial leather

Dust and crumbs can chafe in pores and folds, causing heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the material surface.

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Certain clothing and other influences may result in discoloration of the artificial leather. To prevent discoloration, clean and care for the artificial leather approx. every two months.

Clean light-colored artificial leather, e.g., light-colored seats more frequently as soiling is far more visible on it.

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

To prevent changes to and discoloration of the material surface, remove corrosive substances immediately. Corrosive substances include sunscreen, for example.

Fabric care

General information

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

To prevent material alteration and discoloration, remove corrosive substances immediately. Corrosive substances include sunscreen, for example.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners, zippers, or applications, e.g., studs on clothing can damage the seat covers and the other fabric and leather covers in the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the fasteners are closed.

Upholstery material

Vacuum the cushions regularly with a vacuum cleaner. Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Textile/fabric

Use microfiber cloth soaked with water to clean minor soiling.

Velours

Use microfiber cloth soaked with water to clean minor soiling. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Alcantara

Use microfiber cloth soaked with water to clean minor soiling. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Caring for special components

Displays, operating elements, and projection screen of the Head-up display

NOTICE

Surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g., by using chemical cleaners, or from moisture or liquid of any kind. There is a risk of property damage.

- ▷ Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.
- ▷ Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth for cleaning displays.
- ▷ Clean the operating elements and, depending on vehicle equipment, the protective glass of the Head-up display with a damp microfiber cloth and standard household dish soap.

Light-alloy wheels

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can damage the rim surface and the protec-

tive layer on adjacent components, e.g., the brakes.

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam-jet cleaners above 140°F/60°C. Follow instructions given by the manufacturer.

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes to dry them. To do so, move the vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal. The heat generated while driving dries the brake disks and brake pads, protecting them from corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean chrome-like surfaces, especially if exposed to road salt, using plenty of water and adding auto shampoo as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of shine. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. To avoid damage or noise, use care products containing silicone to maintain the profile seals.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the window washer system.

To prevent a reduction in wiper quality, avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually unless necessary.

Door windows

If noise is heard when the door windows are opened and closed, e.g. squeaking, proceed as follows:

1. Clean the inside and outside of the door windows with a damp cloth and conventional dish soap.
2. While wet, open and close the door windows several times so that the window cavity cover also becomes wet.
3. Rub the door windows dry.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Solvent cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents such as lacquer thinners, cold cleaning agents, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Moisten the cloth lightly with water if necessary.

When cleaning plastic parts, make sure that no fabric parts, e.g., the headliner, become wet.

Cushion for center armrest and rear head restraint

Use microfiber cloth soaked with water to clean minor soiling. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Cover must be washed by hand.

Inner cushions are not washable.

Carbon parts

For easy cleaning of carbon parts, use a microfiber cloth, water, and silicone-free cleaner to remove everyday soiling.

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can alter the surface.

If necessary, have carbon parts removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Seat belts

WARNING

Chemical solvent cleaners can destroy the fabric of the seat belts and lead to seat belts no longer having their protective effect. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the seat belts.

The seat belts should be cleaned for safety reasons. Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus should be avoided for safety reasons.

Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Seat belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Floor mats and carpets

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

- ▷ Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell.
- ▷ Use (carpet) floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely attached to the floor.
- ▷ Do not use loose floor mats, and do not layer multiple floor mats on top of one another.
- ▷ Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals.
- ▷ Make sure that floor mats are securely reattached after removing them, e.g., when cleaning.

Floor mats and carpets can be removed to enable cleaning of the vehicle interior.

If the carpets are heavily soiled, clean them with a microfiber cloth and water or a fabric cleaner. Rub back and forth in the direction of travel to prevent the carpet from becoming matted.

Slate

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can alter the surface.

Use microfiber cloth soaked with water to clean minor soiling. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, available for a limited time, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-specific measuring process. More specific values can be obtained in approval documents, on the vehicle info label, or from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

Detailed technical data

BMW X5 **Dimensions**		
Width with mirrors	in	87.2
	mm	2,216
Width without mirrors	in	78.7
	mm	2,000
Height	in	68.9
	mm	1,751
Height	in	68.3
with 2-axle air suspension	mm	1,736
Length	in	197.2
	mm	5,010
Wheelbase	in	119.5

BMW X5 Dimensions		
	mm	3,035
Turning circle Ø	ft	42.0
	m	12.8
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal	21.9
	Liters	83

BMW X5 40 xDrive Weight		
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1,349
	kg	612
Maximum permissible total weight	lb	6,614
	kg	3,000
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	3,075
	kg	1,395
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	3,803
	kg	1,725

BMW X5 40 xDrive Trailer towing		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1,650
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	7,710
	kg	3,500
Maximum permissible drawbar nose weight	lb	771
	kg	350

BMW X5 40 xDrive Trailer towing		
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	3,803
	kg	1,725
Maximum permissible total weight, towing vehicle	lb	6,614
	kg	3,000
Maximum permitted gross train weight, 12% gradient	lb	13,260
	kg	6,019

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Everything from A to Z

Index

0–9

2-axle air suspension 255
3D Head-Up Display, see BMW 3D Head-Up Display 66
3D view 220
48-volt technology, see Mild Hybrid technology 412

A

ABS, see Antilock Braking System 319
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 162
Acceleration sensor, see G-Meter 63
Accessories and parts 10
Accident safety 345
Acoustic pedestrian protection 345
Activated-charcoal filter, see Air quality 273
Activation points, panorama view 223
Activation points, tunnel car wash view 223
Activation, trailer operation, see Operation with trailer or rear carrier 302
Activation word 81
Active Blind Spot Detection 336
Active Cruise Control, Distance Control, details 194
Active Cruise Control, Distance Control, see Driver assistance systems 184
Active damping control, see Adaptive M suspension 255
Active noise reduction 259
Active Park Distance Control, see Reverse Collision Mitigation 238
Active Park Distance Control with Side Protection, see Automatic camera perspective 219
Active safety systems 323
Active seat ventilation in rear 270
Active Steering, integral 322
Adapting the speed to the route 192
Adaptive 2-axle air suspension 255
Adaptive lighting functions 177
Adaptive M suspension 255
Adaptive recuperation 360
Adaptive suspension 255
Adding engine oil types 403
Additional camera views 216
Additives, engine oil types 403
Adjusting driving dynamics, see My Modes 162
Adjusting start mode, see My Modes 162
Adjusting the airflow direction, see Ventilation 265
Adjusting the location-based height level 257
Adjusting the seat position automatically 138
Adjusting the steering wheel 149
Advanced Real Time Traffic Information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
After run of fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 166
Airbags 313
Airbags, warning light, see Operational readiness of airbag system 315
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 268
Air cleaning, see Air quality 273
Air conditioning, climate 268
Air conditioning, seat occupancy, see Comfort functions 263
Air conditioning system 260
Air distribution, manual 267
Air drying, see Air conditioning 268
Air flow, air conditioning system 266
Air outlets, see Ventilation 265
Air pressure, tires 372
Air quality, vehicle interior 273
Air recirculation filter, see Air quality 273
Air suspension 255
Air vents, see Ventilation 265
Alarm, avoiding 126

Alarm system 125
All-season tires, see Winter tires 369
All-season tires, tread, see Tire tread depth 367
All-wheel drive, see BMW xDrive 321
Amazon Alexa Integration 83
Ambient light 179
Android Auto, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Animal Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 405
Antilock Braking System 319
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 392
Anti-trap mechanism, glass sunroof 132
Anti-trap mechanism, windows 129
Apple CarPlay, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Applications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Armrest heating 270
Artificial engine noise, see Acoustic pedestrian protection 345
Assistance, parking, see Parking assistance 234
Assistance with breakdown 351
Assistance with camera views 213
Assistance with driving 184
Assistance with driving off on inclines, see Drive-off assistant 158
Assist View 56
Attention assist, see Fatigue Alert 341
Attention camera, driver, see Driver activity monitoring with the interior camera 37
Audio player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H, see Automatic Hold 158
Automated window opener, see Opening the windows automatically 129
Automatic camera perspective 219
Automatic car wash, see Washing the vehicle 414
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 148
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 316
Automatic dimming, see High Beam Assistant 171
Automatic doors 113
Automatic driving lights control 174
Automatic emergency braking, see PostCrash-iBrake 345
Automatic headlight control, see Automatic driving lights control 174
Automatic Hold 158
Automatic Park Assistant 241
Automatic Parking Assistant, see Maneuver Assistant 249
Automatic transmission 154
Automatic wiper system, see Rain sensor 181
AUTO program, climate control 263
Auto Start/Stop function 151
Average consumption, see Trip data 62

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 137
Backrest, seats, front seats 135
Backrest tilt, adjusting 136
Backrest width, adjusting 136
Back Up Assistant 246
Ball head, removable 300
Bandages, see First-aid kit 351
Bar for tow-starting/towing 355
Battery, disposal 412
Battery, vehicle 410
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 354
Belts, see Seat belts 139
Beverage holder, front 290
Beverage holder, rear 291
Blind spot collision warning 336
Blocking, power windows, see Safety switch 134
Blower, see Air flow 266
Bluetooth audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Bluetooth connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

BMW 3D Head-Up Display 66
BMW app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW ConnectedDrive Upgrades, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6
BMW Digital Key 103
BMW Digital Premium, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
BMW Digital Premium, see Remote 3D View 224
BMW Drive Recorder 345
BMW Iconic Glow 177
BMW ID 92
BMW iDrive 48
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 80
BMW maintenance system, see Maintenance system 407
BMW Panoramic iDrive, see BMW iDrive 48
BMW Passenger Screen 68
BMW xDrive 321
Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front 290
Bottle holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 291
Brake assistant 319
Brake Controller 304
Brake disks, see Brake system 165
Brake function during parking, see Reverse Collision Mitigation 238
Brake pads, see Brake system 165
Brake system 165
Braking, information 167
Breakdown assistance 351
Breakdown, see Wheel change 390
Break-in 164
Break-in procedure 164
Break recommendation, see Fatigue Alert 341
Bright interior, reflection 168
Brightness, displays 50
Bulbs and lights 410
Button, central locking system 123
Buttons on steering wheel, see Driver assistance systems 184
Buttons on the steering wheel 30
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 352
Button, Start/Stop, see Start/Stop button 151
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 353

C

Calibration of the front seats 137
California Proposition 65 Warning 10
Camera behind windshield, see Cameras 34
Camera cleaning, parking view 43
Camera, interior mirror, see Interior camera 35
Camera perspective, automatic 219
Camera perspective, semi-automatic 219
Camera, Rear View Camera 218
Cameras 34
Cameras and sensors 34
Camera view aid lines, see Additional views 216
Camera views, assistance, see Assistance with camera views. 213
Camera views, parking 213
Car battery, see Vehicle battery 410
Care, displays, screens 417
Care, Head-up display 417
Care, light-alloy wheels 417
Care, vehicle 416
Cargo area and transportation 292
Cargo area, enlarging 295
Cargo cover 296
Cargo, see Loading 292
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 293
Car key, see Vehicle key 100
Carpet, care 419
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 306
Car washes, automatic, see Washing the vehicle 414
Car wash, see Washing the vehicle 414
Car wash view 221
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 165
CBS, see Condition Based Service 407
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Center armrest, front 289
Center armrest, rear 290
Center console 32
Central display 50
Central locking switch, see Buttons for central locking system 123
Central locking system 123
Central screen, see Central display 50
Change background image, see Setting My Modes 163
Changes, technical, see For your own safety 9
Changing parts 409
Changing, wheels and tires, see Replacing wheels and tires 368
Charging cell phones, see Wireless Charging tray 285
Charging mobile phones, see Wireless Charging tray 285
Charging smartphones, see Wireless Charging tray 285
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 14
Check Control 69
Checking the engine oil level, electronic 401
Checking the oil level, electronic 401
Child presence detection, see Presence Detection 141
Children, seating position 306
Children, transporting safely 306
Child restraint seats 306
Child restraint system LATCH 309
Child restraint systems, mounting 307
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 306
Child safety lock, see Securing rear doors and windows 312
Child seat installation 307
Child seat, mounting 307
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 306
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 418
Chrome surfaces, care 418
Cleaning, see Vehicle care 416
Cleaning the front camera 43
Cleaning the Rear View Camera 43
Closing the cargo area, see Access to the cargo area 118
Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 103
Clothes hooks, see Coat hooks 291
Coasting 361
Coasting with idling engine 361
Coat hooks 291
Collision warning systems 323
Comfort Access, see Accessing the vehicle interior 108
Comfort Entry 139
Comfort exit 139
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 390
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 49
Completion of trip menu, see Goodbye screen 57
Compressor 387
Condensation, see Defrost function, condensation, windshield, see Defrost function, condensation 272
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 168
Condition Based Service 407
Confirmation signals 110
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle 83
Connecting, see Connecting to the vehicle 83
Connection, electrical devices, see Sockets 281
Consumption, see Trip data 62
Contactless trunk opening/closing 120
Contacts, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continuing driving with flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 380
Continuing driving with flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Control by voice, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 80
Control systems, driving stability 319
Coolant 403

Coolant level 404
Cooling, maximum 268
Cooling system 403
Cornering light 177
Corrosion, brake disks 168
Cosmetic mirror 281
Cross Traffic Warning 230
Cruise Control, details 188
Cruise Control, see Driver assistance systems 184
Cup holder, front 290
Cup holder, rear 291
Curb view 222
Current system software, see Version history 87
Cushion for head restraints in the rear 146
Cushions for rear head restraints, care 418
Customer support, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tires 367
Damping control, active, see Adaptive M suspension 255
Dashboard 30
Dash cam, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
Data memory 11
Data protection, settings 91
Data, see Personal data, deleting 91
Data, technical 420
Date, see Date and time 57
Daytime driving lights 176
Daytime running lights 176
Deactivation position, Reverse Collision Mitigation, see Deactivate emergency brake intervention automatically 240
Deactivation, Presence Detection 141
Deep sleep mode 45
Defrost function, see Defrost function, condensation 272
Defrosting the windshield, see Defrost function, condensation 272
Defrosting windows, see Defrost function, condensation 272
Defrost, windshield, see Defrost function, condensation 272
Deleting, personal data 91
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 274
Departure time, pre-conditioning via Remote Engine Start 277
Departure time, pre-ventilation 275
Destination input 6
Detection of parking collisions 225
Diagnostic socket 407
Digital Key 103
Digital key, see BMW Digital Key 103
Dimmable interior mirror 149
Dimming exterior mirrors, see Automatic dimming 148
Direct access buttons 49
Direct dial buttons, see Shortcuts 53
Display and operating concept 48
Display, BMW iDrive 49
Displaying Driver Assistance information, see Assist View 56
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 178
Displays 55
Displays and icons 8
Displays for the vehicle, see Live Vehicle 55
Disposal, coolant 405
Disposal, vehicle battery 412
Distance Control, details 194
Distance Control, see Driver assistance systems 184
Distance, see Driver assistance systems 184
Distance Warning, see Park Distance Control 227
Distraction Warning, see Fatigue Alert 341
Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights 175
Door opening angle, additional camera view displays 216
Downhill assistance, see Hill Descent Control 211
Drive mode, see My Modes 162
Drive-off assistant 158
Drive-Off Monitoring 232
Drive power reduced, see Power gauge 59
Driver activity monitoring with the interior camera 37

Driver Assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 234
Driver assistance systems 184
Drive-ready state, see Operating state 44
Drive Recorder 345
Driver profiles, see BMW ID 92
Driver profiles, welcome screen, see Welcome screen 92
Driving 151
Driving, assistance, see Assistance with driving 184
Driving comfort 255
Driving Experience Control, see My Modes 162
Driving lights control, automatic, see Automatic driving lights control 174
Driving lights mode 177
Driving noise, artificial, see Acoustic pedestrian protection 345
Driving notes, see Break-in procedure 164
Driving on poor roads 168
Driving sound 259
Driving stability control systems 319
Driving through water 166
Driving tips, see General driving notes 165
DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control 319
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M suspension 255
Dynamic shock absorber, see Adaptive suspension 255
Dynamic Stability Control 319
Dynamic Traction Control 320

E

ECO air conditioning for short distances, see Efficient air conditioning 274
ECO air conditioning, see Efficient air conditioning 274
EDR, see Event data recorder 14
Effects, see Welcome and farewell 98
Efficiency Coach 363
Efficient air conditioning 274
Efficient drive mode 362
Efficient Mode 362
Efficient Mode, see My Modes 162
eFuse, see Electronic fuses 413
Electromechanical parking brake 159
Electronic oil measurement 401
Electronic stability program, see Dynamic Stability Control 319
Emergency braking, see Fatigue Alert 341
Emergency call 351
Emergency detection, vehicle key 102
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 359
Emergency release, parking lock 156
Emergency start function, engine start 102
Emergency steering intervention 338
Emergency Stop Assistant, see Fatigue Alert 341
Emergency wheel 390
Emissions, see Pollutant emissions 408
Engine, Auto Start/Stop function 151
Engine compartment, see Hood 395
Engine hood, see Hood 395
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 361
Engine noise, artificial, see Acoustic pedestrian protection 345
Engine oil filler neck 402
Engine oil, refilling 402
Engine oil types to add 403
Engine start in the event of a fault, see Emergency detection of the vehicle key 102
Engine start, see Jump-starting 353
Engine start, see Operating state 44
Engine stop, see Operating state 44
Entering a destination, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entry assistance, exit assistance, see Comfort Exit 139
Entry comparison 49
Error indicators, see Check Control 69
ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control 319
Evasion Assistant 329
Evasion Assistant, functional enhancement of Forward Collision Mitigation 325
Event data recorder 14

Exhaust emissions, see Pollutant emissions 408
Exhaust gas particulate filter 166
Exhaust, see Exhaust system 165
Exhaust system 165
Exit Warning 330
Exterior lighting 173
Exterior lighting, locked vehicle, see Welcome light 176
Exterior mirror 147
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 148
Exterior mirror cameras, see Cameras 34
External Anti-Theft Recorder, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
External start, see Jump-starting 353
Eye for towing 356
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 293

F

Fabric care 417
Factory settings, see Vehicle data, resetting 92
Failure message, see Check Control 69
Fan after run, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 166
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 139
Fatigue Alert 341
Fault indicators, see Check Control 69
Filler neck for engine oil 402
Filling pressure, tires 372
Filter, see Air quality 273
First-aid kit 351
Fittings for trailer safety chain, trailer towing 301
Flat tire, continuing driving, see Flat tire monitor 380
Flat tire, continuing driving, see Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Flat tire monitor 380
Flat tire notification, see Flat tire monitor 380
Flat tire notification, see Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Flat tire, repairing 383
Flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 380
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Flat tire warning light, see Flat tire monitor 380
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Flooding, see Driving through flood 166
Floor carpet, care, see Floor mats and carpets 419
Floor mats, care 419
Fold-away position, wiper 182
Folding down the rear seat backrests, see Enlarging the cargo area 295
Fold-out position 182
Foot brake, see Braking safely 167
For updates after the editorial deadline, see Version status of the Owner's Manual 9
Forward Collision Mitigation 325
Forward Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325
For your own safety 9
Front airbags 314
Front camera, see Cameras 34
Front Collision Mitigation, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325
Front lights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 410
Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 148
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 316
Front passenger display, see BMW Passenger Screen 68
Front radar sensor, see Radar sensors 39
Front-seat passenger airbag, indicator light 317
Front seats 135
Fuel 399
Fuel filler cap 358
Fuel filler flap 358
Fuel gauge 61
Fuel quality 399
Fuel recommendation 399
Fuses 412

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 279
Gasoline 399
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 166
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust particulate filter 166
Gasoline quality 400
General driving notes 165
Glare shield, see Sun visor 281
Glass sunroof 130
Glass sunroof, initializing the glass sunroof and sun protection 133
Glove compartment 289
G-Meter 63
Goodbye screen 57
GPS navigation, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Guest profile, see BMW ID 92

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 159
Hands-free device, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hands-free system 6
Hazard warning system 351
HDC, see Hill Descent Control 211
Head airbag 314
Headlight flasher 170
Headlight glass 410
Headlights, care, see Lights, care 415
Headlights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 410
Headlights, turning up, dimming, see High Beam Assistant 171
Headliner 33
Head restraint cushion, rear 146
Head restraint cushions, care 418
Head restraints and seats, see Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 135
Head restraints, front 143
Head restraints, rear 144
Head-up display, care 417
Head-Up Display, see BMW 3D Head-Up Display 66
Head-up display, store position, see Memory function 150
Heated steering wheel 271
Heavy cargo, stowing 293
High Beam Assistant 171
High-beam headlights 170
Highway Assistant, details 208
Highway Assistant, see Driver assistance systems 184
Hill Ascent Control, see Drive-off assistant 158
Hills 168
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 279
Homepage, see Internet 8
Hood 395
Horn 30
Hot exhaust system 165

I

iBrake, automatic brake intervention, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325
Ice warning, see Outside temperature 57
Icons and displays 8
Identification marks, tires 365
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 14
Idle state, see Operating state 44
iDrive 48
Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 317
Indicator lights 70
Individual air distribution 267
Individual settings, see BMW ID 92
Information 6
Input, BMW iDrive 49
Inserts, see Supplementary documentation 8
Installation of child restraint systems 307
Instrument lighting 178
Integral Active Steering 322
Integrated key 102
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 7
Integrated Universal Remote Control 279

Intelligent emergency call 352
Intelligent Personal Assistant 80
Intelligent Safety, see Collision warning systems 323
Intended use 9
Interior air, see Air quality 273
Interior camera 35
Interior equipment 279
Interior filter, see Air quality 273
Interior filter status display, see Air quality 273
Interior light, locked vehicle, see Welcome light 176
Interior lights 178
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 149
Interior motion sensor 126
Internet page 8
Intersection Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325

J

Jacking points 393
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 393
Jump-starting 353
Jump-starting terminals 353
Jump-start terminals 353

K

Key Card, see Service Card 105
Key, mechanical, see Integrated key 102
Key, see Vehicle key 100
Knee airbag 314

L

Labeling 365
Lane Change Assistant 205
Lane Departure Warning, see Lane Keeping Assistant 332
Lane Keeping Assistant 332
Lane keeping, Steering Assistance, details 200
Lane keeping, steering assistance, see Driver assistance systems 184
Lane lines, additional camera view displays 216
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 293
LATCH child restraint system 309
Launch Control 162
Leather care 416
LED headlights, changing, see Bulbs and lights 410
Left Turn Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325
Letters and numbers, entering 49
Light-alloy wheels, care 417
Light carpet, see Welcome Light Carpet 175
Light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 336
Light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 230
Light in exterior mirror, see Emergency steering intervention 338
Light in exterior mirror, see Exit Warning 330
Lighting, see Exterior lighting 173
Light replacement, see Bulbs and lights 410
Lights 170
Lights, care 415
Light switch, see Exterior lighting 173
Live Vehicle 55
Load 293
Loading 292
Loading the cargo area, see Loading 292
Location-based height adjustment, air suspension 257
Locking, see Accessing the vehicle interior 108
Locking, see Opening and Closing 100
Locking, settings 109
Locking the rear air conditioning 262
Lock, lug bolts 392
Long stationary periods, see Deep sleep mode 45
Loop, see Towing eye 356
Low-beam headlights 174
Lower back support, see Lumbar support 137
Lug bolt lock 392
luggage compartment, see Cargo area and transportation 292
Luggage rack, see Roof bars 298
Luggage straps 293

Lumbar massage, see Seat massage 137
Lumbar support 137

M

Magnetic holder 284
Maintenance 407
Maintenance recommendation, see Condition Based Service 407
Maintenance system 407
Make-up mirror, see Vanity mirror 281
Malfunction, vehicle key 103
Maneuver Assistant 249
Manual mode, transmission 157
Map, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Map update, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Marking, run-flat tire 370
Matte paintwork 416
Matt paint, care 416
Maximum cooling 268
Maximum speed range, driving at high speeds 165
Maximum speed, winter tires 369
Max Range, see Efficient air conditioning 274
Media recording, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 351
Memory function 150
Messages, see Check Control 69
Messages, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Microfilter, see Air quality 273
Mild Hybrid technology 412
Mileage, real, see Trip data 62
Minimum tread depth, tires 367
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobility system, see Tire repair set 386
Mobility system, see Tire repair set Plus 383
Modifications, technical, see For your own safety 9
Moisture in headlight, see Headlight glass 410
Monitor, see Central display 50
Motorsport, see Driving on a race track 169
Mount for trailer hitch, care 300
Mounting of child restraint systems 307
M suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M suspension 255
Mug holder, front, see Cup holder, front 290
Mug holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 291
Multifunction hook 293
Multi-function steering wheel 30
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 30
My BMW app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
My Modes 162
My Moments 164

N

Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints, front 143
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints, rear 144
Net, cargo area 294
Neutral cleaner, light-alloy wheels, see Care 417
Noise reduction, active 259
Notifications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate 120
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 356

O

OBD, see Diagnostic socket 407
Obstacle marking, additional camera view displays 216
Octane number, see Gasoline quality 400
Odometer reading, see Trip data 62
Odometer, see Trip data 62
Off-road driving, see Driving on poor roads 168
Oil filler neck 402
Oil, refilling 402
Oil types to add, engine 403
Old battery 412
On-board computer, see Trip data 62

On-board diagnostics, see Diagnostic socket 407
On-board monitor, see Central display 50
Onboard toolkit 409
Oncoming Traffic Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325
One-touch signaling 170
Opening and closing 100
Opening and closing the cargo area hands-free 120
Opening and closing the cargo area, see Access to the cargo area 118
Opening and closing the tailgate, see Access to the cargo area 118
Opening and closing the trunk hands-free 120
Opening the cargo area, see Access to the cargo area 118
Opening the vehicle from the inside, see Buttons for central locking system 123
Opening the vehicle from the outside, see Access to vehicle interior 108
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 103
Operating fluids 399
Operating state 44
Operation, BMW iDrive 48
Operation via touchscreen 49
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 9
Outside air quality display, see Air quality 273
Outside temperature 57
Over-the-Air Software Updates, see Software Updates 85
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 408

P

Paint, vehicle care 416
Paintwork 416
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 126
Panic mode 126
Panorama View 222
Panorama View, see Panorama View 222
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 130
Parallel parking assistance, see Automatic camera perspective 219
Park Distance Control 227
Parking aid lines, additional camera views 216
Parking assistance 234
Parking assistance systems 234
Parking assistant 241
Parking Assistant, see Park Distance Control 227
Parking brake 159
Parking Collision Detection 225
Parking collision notification, see Parking Collision Detection 225
Parking Collision Recorder, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
Parking lights 175
Parking lines, see Automatic Park Assistant 241
Parking with Automatic Hold 158
Particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 166
Parts and accessories 10
Pathway lighting 176
Pathway lighting, turning on 176
Payload 293
PDC, see Park Distance Control 227
Pedestrian protection, acoustic 345
Pedestrian Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325
Performing initialization 381
Personal Assistant 80
Personal data, deleting 91
Personal Mode, see My Modes 162
Personal profile, see BMW ID 92
Personal settings 91
Physical units, see Setting units of measurement 55
Plastic parts, care 418
Pollutant emissions 408
PostCrash-iBrake 345
Power failure 412
Power gauge, driver's display 59
Power interruption 412
Power meter, see Power gauge 59
Power windows, see Windows 127

Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start 275
Presence Detection 141
Pressure monitor, tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Pressure, tires, see Tire inflation pressure 372
Pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 380
Pressure warning, see Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Pre-ventilation 274
Preventive maintenance 407
Primary user, see BMW ID 94
Programs for My Modes, see My Moments 164
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Anti-trap mechanism 132
Protective function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism 129

R

Race track 169
Radar sensors 39
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 166
Radiator fluid 403
Radio information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Radio stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rain sensor 181
Rain sensor mode 181
Rear air conditioning, see Climate control 260
Rear carrier 304
Rear light, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 410
Rear-mounted luggage rack, see Rear carrier 304
Rear View Camera 218
Rear View Camera, see Cameras 34
Rear-view mirror, exterior 147
Rear-wheel steering, see Integral Active Steering 322
Rear window defroster 272
Rear window wiper, operation 182
Rear wiper 182
Recirculated-air mode 268
Recommended tire brands 369
Recuperation, adaptive 360
Reduced drive power, see Power gauge 59
Reduce warnings 324
Reflection in bright interior 168
Refreshing the air, see Air quality 273
Refueling 358
Release fuel filler flap, manual 359
Releasing the parking lock, electronically 156
Remote 360, see Remote 3D View 224
Remote 3D View 224
Remote control, see Remote Control Parking 252
Remote control, see Vehicle key 100
Remote control, universal 279
Remote Engine Start, see Pre-conditioning 275
Remote parking 252
Remote Parking Collision Recorder, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
Remote services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade, see Software Updates 85
Remote Theft Recorder, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
Replacement, wheels and tires, see Replacing wheels and tires 368
Replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 410
Replacing light-emitting diodes, see Bulbs and lights 410
Replacing parts 409
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 101
Replacing wheels and tires 368
Reporting safety defects 15
Reserve warning, see Fuel gauge 61
Reservoir, washer fluid 405
Resetting, vehicle data 92
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 379
Reset, vehicle settings 92
Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key 103
Retreaded tires 369
Reverse Collision Mitigation 238

Reverse Collision Mitigation, Cross Traffic Warning 230
Reversing Assistant 246
Risk of collision when exiting, see Exit Warning 330
Roadside parking lights 175
Rollback Prevention, see Drive-off assistant 158
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 130
Rolling to a stop with engine decoupled, see Coasting 361
RON, see Gasoline quality 400
Roof bars 298
Roofliner 33
Roof luggage rack, see Roof bars 298
Rope for tow-starting/towing 356
Rough roads, see Driving on poor roads 168
Route, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Route Speed Control 192
RSC, see Run-flat tires 370
Rubber components, care 418
Run-flat tires 370
Run-flat tires, see Tires with emergency running properties 370

S

Safe braking 167
Safe Exit, see Exit Warning 330
Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key 103
Safety and warning, see Collision warning systems 323
Safety switch, windows 134
Safety systems, see Airbags 313
Safety systems, see Collision warning systems 323
Satellite radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Saved stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Screen for front passenger, see BMW Passenger Screen 68
Screen, see Central display 50
Sealant, see Tire repair set 386
Sealant, see Tire repair set Plus 383
Seamless mode change, see Remote Control Parking 252
Seat belt reminder, see Seat belt warning 140
Seat belts 139
Seat belts, care 419
Seat belt warning 140
Seat calibration 137
Seat, comfort functions 263
Seat-dependent air conditioning, see Comfort functions 263
Seat heating 269
Seating position for children 306
Seat massage 137
Seats and head restraints, see Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 135
Seats, front 135
Securing, cargo 293
Securing, doors and windows 312
Securing vehicle to prevent rolling away, see Parking brake 159
Security Assistant, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
Security Assistant, see Remote 3D View 224
Selecting the ventilation mode, see Ventilation 265
Self-leveling suspension, see Adaptive 2-axle air suspension 255
Semi-automatic camera perspective 219
Sensors, see Cameras and sensors 34
Service and warranty 11
Service Card 105
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service 407
Servotronic 321
Setting the time, see Date and time 57
Setting units of measurement 55
Setup Card 103
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 157
Shortcuts, iDrive 53
Side airbag 314
Side Collision Protection, see Emergency steering intervention 338
Side protection, see Automatic camera perspective 219
Side radar sensors, front, see Radar sensors 39

Side radar sensors, rear, see Radar sensors 39
Signaling, horn 30
Silent Mode, see My Modes 162
Sitting safely 135
Slate, care, see Care of special parts 419
Slipperiness, see Outside temperature 57
Slippery road, see Outside temperature 57
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice control 83
Snapshot camera, see Interior camera 35
Snow chains 371
Socket for on-board diagnosis, see Diagnostic socket 407
Sockets, electrical devices 281
Soft-close automatic, doors 124
Soft-close automatic function 124
Software Updates 85
Software Upgrade, see Software Updates 85
Software version, see Software Updates 85
Soot particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 166
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 352
Sound settings, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 390
Speed control, Cruise Control, see Driver assistance systems 184
Speed Limit Assist 190
Speed Limit Assistant 190
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info 186
Speed Limit Info 186
Speed warning 187
Sport Mode, see My Modes 162
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension 255
Stability control, see Dynamic Stability Control 319
Stability control systems 319
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 9
Standard view, camera views 218
Standby state, see Operating state 44
Start/Stop, automatic, see Auto Start/Stop function 151
Start/Stop button 151
Start function in the event of a fault, see Emergency detection of the vehicle key 102
Starting aid terminals 353
Starting, see Operating state 44
Starting the engine, see Operating state 44
Starting the vehicle, see Start/Stop button 151
Stationary periods, see Deep sleep mode 45
Stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 378
Status information, cameras and sensors 42
Status information, iDrive 52
Status of Owner's Manual 9
Status, vehicle 55
Steering Assistance, lane keeping, details 200
Steering assistance, lane keeping, see Driver assistance systems 184
Steering column adjustment, see Steering wheel 149
Steering, see Integral Active Steering 322
Steering support, see Servotronic 321
Steering wheel, buttons 30
Steering wheel heating 271
Stopping the engine, see Operating state 44
Storage compartment, cargo area 294
Storage compartment lock 124
Storage compartments 288
Storage, tires 370
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 150
Store seat position, see Memory function 150
Storing the vehicle 408
Stowage, cargo 293
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 293
Summer tires, tread, see Tire tread depth 367
Sun visor 281
Supplementary documentation 8
Supplementary Owner's Manuals, see Supplementary documentation 8
Suspension, adaptive 255
Swinging of trailer, see Trailer stabilization control 303
Switches, see Dashboard 30
SYNC program, Climate control 271

T

Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 120
Tailgate, see Accessing the cargo area 118
Taillights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 410
Taking the vehicle out of service 408
Technical changes, see For your own safety 9
Technical data 420
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Teleservices, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, air conditioning system 264
Temperature display, see Outside temperature 57
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 125
Thigh support 137
Tilt alarm sensor 126
Tilt, backrest 136
Tilting down, front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 148
Time settings, see Date and time 57
Tire brands, recommendation 369
Tire change, see Wheel change 390
Tire damage 367
Tire identification marks 365
Tire inflation pressure 372
Tire marking 365
Tire pressure 372
Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Tire pressure monitoring, see Tire Pressure Monitor 376
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 379
Tire Pressure Monitor, see Flat tire monitor 380
Tire pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 380
Tire repair set 386
Tire repair set Plus 383
Tire replacement, see Replacing wheels and tires 368
Tires and wheels 365
Tire sealant, see Tire repair set 386
Tire sealant, see Tire repair set Plus 383
Tire settings 377
Tires, run-flat 370
Tire tread 367
Tools 409
Total distance, see Trip data 62
Total range, see Fuel gauge 61
Touch gesture control 53
Touchpad, see Operating elements on the steering wheel 48
Touchscreen 49
Tow bar 355
Towing 354
Towing eye 356
Tow rope 356
Tow-starting 354
Traction control, see Dynamic Traction Control 320
Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability Control 319
Traction, see Dynamic Traction Control 320
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Trailer hitch, ball head, removable 300
Trailer hitch, care 300
Trailer hitch, mount for 300
Trailer hitch view 221
Trailer operation, activation, see Operation with trailer or rear carrier 302
Trailer stabilization control 303
Trailer towing 299
Trailer view 220
Transmission, see Automatic transmission 154
Transporting children safely 306
Travel & Comfort System 284
Tread, tires 367
Trip data 62
Trip odometer, see Trip data 62
Tunnel car wash, see Washing the vehicle 414
Turn indicators, see Turn signals 170
Turning circle lines, additional camera view displays 216
Turning on camera cleaning manually 43
Turning with oncoming traffic, see Forward Collision Mitigation 325
Turn signal, indicator light 76

Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 410
Turn signals 170
Two-axle air suspension 255

U

Ultra Short Range Radar, see Side radar sensors 39
Ultrasonic sensors 41
Unintended alarm, see Unintentional alarm, avoiding 126
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 126
Units, see Setting units of measurement 55
Universal remote control 279
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 100
Unlocking, settings 109
Unpaved roads, see Driving on poor roads 168
Updating software, see Software Updates 85
Upgrade, see Software Updates 85
Upholstery material care, see Fabric care 417
Upload personal background image, see Setting My Modes 163
Upper retaining strap, top tether 310
USB audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
USB port, position in vehicle 282
Used battery, disposing of 412
Use, intended 9
User, see BMW ID 92
Using menus, see BMW iDrive 48
USRR, Ultra Short Range Radar, see Side radar sensors 39

V

Vanity mirror 281
Variable steering, see Integral Active Steering 322
Vehicle battery 410
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 351
Vehicle care 416
Vehicle care products 416
Vehicle data, resetting 92
Vehicle equipment 9
Vehicle identification number 14
Vehicle issues 351
Vehicle key 100
Vehicle key, additional 101
Vehicle key, loss 101
Vehicle paint, care 416
Vehicle paintwork 416
Vehicle rolling away, see Parking brake 159
Vehicle sound, see Driving sound 259
Vehicle starting, see Start/Stop button 151
Vehicle status 55
Vehicle storage 408
Ventilation 265
Ventilation, front 265
Ventilation, rear 265
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 274
Video recording, see BMW Drive Recorder 345
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 14
Voice activation system, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 80
Voice command, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 80
Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 80
Voice recognition, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 80
Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

W

Wake word 81
Warning for crossing traffic, see Cross Traffic Warning 230
Warning for exiting, see Exit Warning 330
Warning for opening doors, see Exit Warning 330
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 336
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 230
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Emergency steering intervention 338
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Exit Warning 330

Warning lights 70
Warning messages, see Check Control 69
Warning systems for collisions, see Collision warning systems 323
Warning triangle 351
Warranty 10
Warranty Booklet, see Warranty 10
Washer fluid 405
Washing the vehicle 414
Washing, vehicle 414
Water on road 166
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 168
Website, see Internet 8
Welcome and farewell 98
Welcome Light Carpet, see Welcome light 175
Welcome lights 175
Welcome screen, driver profiles 92
Welcome screen, driver profiles, see Welcome screen 92
Wheel change 390
Wheels and tires 365
Widgets, iDrive 52
Wi-Fi connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Windows 127
Windshield camera, camera behind the windshield, see Cameras 34
Windshield cleaning system, see Wiper system 180
Windshield, defrost, see Defrost function, condensation 272
Windshield, remove condensation, see Defrost function, condensation 272
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 405
Windshield wipers, see Wiper system 180
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 408
Winter tires 369
Winter tires, tread, see Tire tread depth 367
Wiper blades, replacing 409
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 405
Wiper, fold-away position 182
Wipers, see Wiper system 180
Wiper system 180
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless Charging tray 285
Wireless Charging tray 285
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 49

X

xDrive 321



01405B9DF56 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B9DF56 - VI/26

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app explains the equipment of your vehicle and offers further scopes and functions:



- All information surrounding navigation, entertainment and communication
- Photorealistic animations for various vehicle functions
- Keyword search
- 360° view: Explore your vehicle interactively inside and out
- Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons in the vehicle
- Available in more than 30 languages
- Can be used offline after download

01405B9DF56 ue

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B9DF56 - VI/26